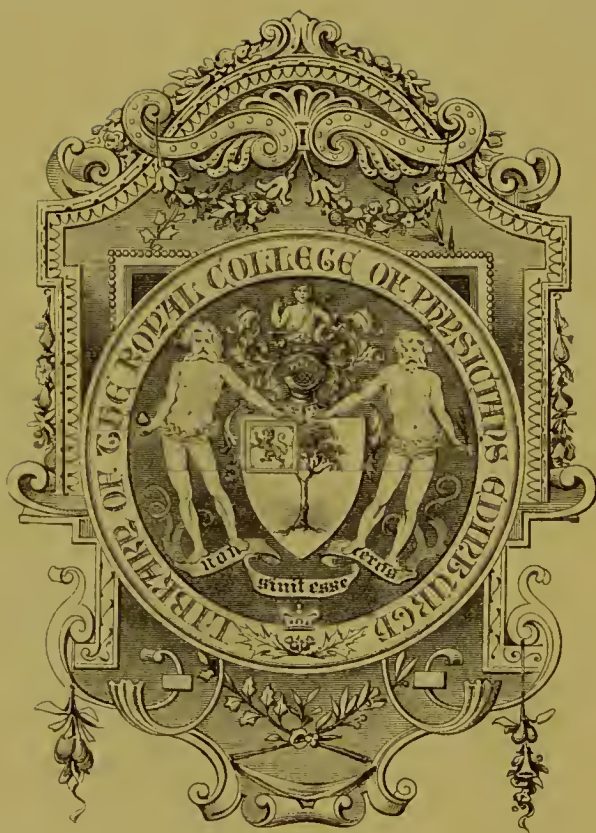


THE CHEMISTRY OF
SYNTHETIC DRUGS

PERCY MAY



PRESS MARK

Press No.Fb.....
Shelf No.7.....
Book No.66.....

R39170

TEXT-BOOKS OF PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY.

Edited by Sir WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S., D.Sc. Crown 8vo.

STOICHIOMETRY. By SYDNEY YOUNG, D.Sc., F.R.S.; together with AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY by Sir WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S. 7s. 6d.

CHEMICAL STATICS AND DYNAMICS, including the Theories of Chemical Change, Catalysis and Explosions. By J. W. MELLOR, D.Sc., B.Sc. 7s. 6d.

THE PHASE RULE AND ITS APPLICATIONS. By ALEX. FINDLAY, M.A., Ph.D., D.Sc. With 134 Figures in the Text. 5s.

SPECTROSCOPY. By E. C. C. BALY, F.I.C. With 163 Illustrations. 10s. 6d.

THERMOCHEMISTRY. By JULIUS THOMSEN. Translated by KATHARINE A. BURKE, B.Sc. (Lond.). 9s.

ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. Part I. General Theory. By R. A. LEHFELDT, D.Sc. Including a Chapter on the Relation of Chemical Constitution to Conductivity. By T. S. MOORE, B.A., B.Sc. 5s.

ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. Part II. Applications to Electrolysis, Primary and Secondary Batteries, etc. By N. T. M. WILSMORE, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

STEREOCHEMISTRY. By A. W. STEWART, D.Sc. With 87 Illustrations. 10s. 6d.

THE THEORY OF VALENCY. By J. NEWTON FRIEND, Ph.D., M.Sc. 5s.

METALLOGRAPHY. By CECIL H. DESCH, D.Sc. (Lond.), Ph.D. (Würzb.). With 14 Plates and 108 Diagrams in the Text. 9s.

THE RELATIONS BETWEEN CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION AND SOME PHYSICAL PROPERTIES. By SAMUEL SMILES, D.Sc. 14s.

THERMODYNAMICS. By F. G. DONNAN, M.A., Ph.D. [*In preparation.*]

ACTINOCHEMISTRY. By S. E. SHEPPARD, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

PRACTICAL SPECTROGRAPHIC ANALYSIS. By J. H. POLLOK, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

MONOGRAPHS ON BIOCHEMISTRY.

Edited by R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc., and F. G. HOPKINS, M.A., M.B., D.Sc., F.R.S. Royal 8vo.

THE DEVELOPMENT AND PRESENT POSITION OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By F. GOWLAND HOPKINS, D.Sc., F.R.S. [*In preparation.*]

THE NATURE OF ENZYME ACTION. By W. M. BAYLISS, D.Sc., F.R.S. 3s. 6d. net.

THE CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION OF THE PROTEINS. By R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc. In Two Parts. Part I., 3s. net; Part II., 2s. 6d. net.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERS OF THE PROTEINS. By S. B. SCHRYVER, Ph.D., D.Sc. 2s. 6d. net.

THE VEGETABLE PROTEINS. By THOMAS B. OSBORNE, Ph.D. 3s. 6d. net.

THE SIMPLE CARBOHYDRATES AND THE GLUCOSIDES. By E. FRANKLAND ARMSTRONG, D.Sc., Ph.D., Associate of the City and Guilds of London Institute. 3s. 6d. net.

THE FATS. By J. B. LEATHES, D.Sc. 4s. net.

ALCOHOLIC FERMENTATION. By A. HARDEN, D.Sc., F.R.S. 4s. net.

THE POLYSACCHARIDES. By ARTHUR R. LING, F.I.C. [*In preparation.*]

PROTEIN METABOLISM. By E. P. CATHCART, M.D. [*In preparation.*]

COLLOIDS. By W. B. HARDY, M.A., F.R.S. [*In preparation.*]

PROBLEMS IN AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY. By E. J. RUSSELL, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

OXIDATION AND REDUCTION. By H. D. DARKIN, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

LONGMANS, GREEN & CO., 39 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

NEW MEDICAL AND SCIENTIFIC BOOKS.

THE PRINCIPLES OF GYNAECOLOGY. By W. BLAIR BELL, B.S., M.D., Assistant Gynaecological Surgeon, Royal Infirmary, Liverpool. With 6 Coloured Plates (4 by A. K. MAXWELL), and over 350 other Illustrations. 8vo. 21s. net.

THE ESSENTIALS OF HISTOLOGY: DESCRIPTIVE AND PRACTICAL. By E. A. SCHÄFER, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S. Professor of Physiology in the University of Edinburgh. EIGHTH EDITION, ENLARGED. With 645 Illustrations, some of which are coloured. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.

URINARY SURGERY: A REVIEW. By FRANK KIDD, M.B., B.C. (Cantab.), F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon to the London Hospital. 8vo. 7s. 6d. net.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF REPRODUCTION. By FRANCIS H. A. MARSHALL, M.A. (Cantab.), D.Sc. (Edin.), Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge, and University Lecturer in Agricultural Physiology. With Preface by Professor E. A. SCHÄFER, Sc.D., LL.D., F.R.S., and Contributions by WILLIAM CRAMER, Ph.D., D.Sc., and JAMES LOCHHEAD, M.A., M.D., B.Sc., F.R.C.S.E. With 154 Illustrations. 8vo. 21s. net.

DENTAL SURGERY AND PATHOLOGY. By J. F. COLYER, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., L.D.S., Dental Surgeon to Charing Cross Hospital and the Royal Dental Hospital. Being the THIRD EDITION of "Diseases and Injuries of the Teeth," by MORTON SMALE and J. F. COLYER. With 890 Illustrations. 8vo. 25s. net.

NEW IDEAS ON INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. Translated, with the Author's sanction, from the second German edition, by EDGAR PERCY HEDLEY, Ph.D., A.R.C.Se.I. By DR. A. WERNER, Professor of Chemistry in the University of Zurich. 8vo.

NEW REDUCTION METHODS IN VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS: A MONOGRAPH. By EDMUND KNECHT, Ph.D., M.Sc.Tech., F.I.C., Professor of Technological Chemistry at the Victoria University of Manchester, and EVA HIBBERT, Demonstrator in Chemistry, Municipal School of Technology, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 3s. net.

PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc., Assistant Professor of Physiological Chemistry, University College, London. 8vo. 6s. net.

A HISTORY OF THE CAVENDISH LABORATORY, 1871-1910. With 3 Portraits in Collotype and 8 other Illustrations. 8vo. 7s. 6d. net.

This volume is intended to commemorate the 25th anniversary of the election of Sir J. J. Thomson to the Cavendish Professorship of Experimental Physics. Among the contributors are: Dr. Schuster, Dr. R. T. Glazebrook, Sir J. J. Thomson, Prof. H. F. Newall, Prof. G. Rutherford, and Prof. Wilberforce.

The final chapter of the book is devoted to a bibliography and biography of those who have done research work at the Laboratory since its foundation.

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND EXTENDED.

THE PRINCIPLES OF ELECTRIC WAVE TELEGRAPHY AND TELEPHONY. By J. A. FLEMING, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S., Pender Professor of Electrical Engineering in the University of London, &c. With 7 Plates and numerous other Illustrations. 8vo. 28s. net.

DUBLIN UNIVERSITY PRESS SERIES.

A HISTORY OF THE THEORIES OF AETHER AND ELECTRICITY, from the Age of Descartes to the Close of the Nineteenth Century. By E. T. WHITTAKER, Hon. Sc.D. (Dublin), F.R.S., Royal Astronomer of Ireland. 8vo. 12s. 6d. net.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO., 39 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

THE CHEMISTRY OF SYNTHETIC DRUGS

THE CHEMISTRY OF SYNTHETIC DRUGS

BY
PERCY MAY, B.Sc. (LOND.)



LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK, BOMBAY, AND CALCUTTA

1911

All rights reserved

BIBLIOTHECA
COLL. REG.
MED. EDIN.

PREFACE

THE chief object in writing this book has been to give an account of the main facts concerning synthetic drugs, and the guiding principles which are used in their production. Almost every week, new drugs appear on the market, and although many of them are well known and widely used, their chemical nature is often unknown even to chemists possessing a good knowledge of general organic chemistry. For this reason there appears to be some need for an attempt to increase the interest of chemists in a branch of their subject which is very interesting in itself, and which also has the advantage of affording scope for commercial application. The manufacture of synthetic drugs is at present practically confined to Germany, but the alteration of the British patent laws may help to lead to a development of this branch of applied chemistry in Great Britain, although it is too much to hope that the ground already lost may be recovered.

The book contains more than a mere description of the chemical nature and mode of preparation of many synthetic drugs. For a scientific understanding of the subject it is necessary to pay considerable attention to the reactions taking place between the drug and the organism wherever these can be traced, and to the relation between the chemical character of a substance and its action, even though this relation is neither so complete nor so simple as might be wished for, and is

confined to only a few of the numerous chemical compounds that are used as drugs.

It has been thought desirable to mention briefly the therapeutic effect of most of the drugs, so that readers may gain some idea of their relative values, but it has been neither possible nor desirable to mention all or nearly all of the drugs that have been prepared in recent years, as many of them possess neither scientific nor practical value.

Besides the practical importance and the inherent interest of the subject itself, it may also be of great value as a means of opening up new channels of research and of discovering new types of compounds. It is a well-known fact that the discovery of the coal tar colours gave an enormous stimulus to the study of the derivatives of benzene, naphthalene, and anthracene, and it is to be hoped that the efforts to produce new drugs may lead to an increased knowledge of certain types of compounds, particularly those containing carbon united to "inorganic" elements, such as arsenic and antimony.

Further, it is hoped that this volume may prove of interest to those medical men who may desire to obtain fuller information concerning the application of chemistry to therapeutics and pharmacology than can be obtained from a perusal of the countless trade circulars with which they are inundated.

Special attention has been given to recent developments of the subject, and it is believed that much of the matter included in the sections on Isoquinoline Alkaloids, Organic Arsenic Compounds, and Adrenaline and allied Compounds, has never before been collected into one volume.

Wherever possible, reference has been made to the original papers, and some hitherto unpublished observations of the author are also included. I wish to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. Fraenkel's great treatise on "*Arzneimittelsynthese*," and to express the hope that the present volume may be the means of making that work better known to English readers. Valuable help in obtaining information on

the therapeutic application of many compounds has been received from Merck's Annual Reports, and I also desire to thank the numerous firms of manufacturing chemists who have kindly supplied me with information concerning their products, especially Messrs. Burroughs Wellcome & Co., W. H. Martindale, and the Hoffmann-LaRoche Chemical Works.

In general, trade names are spelt with a capital letter, except in cases, such as phenacetin, where they have passed into general chemical use.

I wish to express my most grateful thanks to Prof. J. N. Collie, F.R.S., for valuable advice and criticism while the book was passing through the press, to Dr. J. C. Cain for his kindness in helping me in the proof correction, to Dr. G. Barger who has read part of the manuscript, and to Mr. H. J. Page and Mr. E. de Barry Barnett for assistance in correcting the proofs.

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON,
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE,
February, 1911.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
CHAPTER I	
INTRODUCTION—THEORIES OF THE ACTION OF SYNTHETIC DRUGS . . .	1
CHAPTER II	
THE EFFECT OF VARIOUS ELEMENTS AND RADICLES	16
Inorganic Elements	16
Radicles and Elements in Organic Compounds	17
CHAPTER III	
THE CHEMICAL CHANGES OF DRUGS IN THE ORGANISM	36
CHAPTER IV	
NARCOTICS AND GENERAL ANÆSTHETICS	44
CHAPTER V	
ANTIPYRETICS AND ANALGESICS. (DERIVATIVES OF ANILINE AND PHENYLHYDRAZINE)	63
CHAPTER VI	
ALKALOIDS	78
General Properties—Quinine and its Derivatives	78
CHAPTER VII	
ATROPINE AND THE TROPEÏNES—COCAINE AND THE LOCAL ANÆS- THETICS	86
CHAPTER VIII	
MORPHINE GROUP OF ALKALOIDS AND ISOQUINOLINE GROUP OF ALKA- LOIDS	103
(1) Morphine, Codeine, Thebaine, and their Derivatives	103
(2) Papaverine, Narcotine, Laudanosine, Hydrastine, etc., and their Derivatives	115
CHAPTER IX	
ADRENALINE AND OTHER DERIVATIVES OF ETHYLAMINE	127
Adrenaline, the Alkaloids of Ergot, Pressor Substances derived from the Putrefaction of Amino Acids, etc.	127

CHAPTER X		PAGE
DERIVATIVES OF PHENOL (ANTISEPTICS)		151
(1) The Phenols		151
(2) Salicylic Acid and Salols		155
(3) Guaiacol, Creosoto, and their Derivatives		162
CHAPTER XI		
OTHER ORGANIC ANTISEPTICS, EXCLUDING IODINE COMPOUNDS		168
(1) Naphthalene, Pyridine, and Quinoline Derivatives		168
(2) Formaldehyde		169
(3) Tannic and Gallic Acids		170
CHAPTER XII		
iodoform AND ITS SUBSTITUTES—OTHER IODINE AND BROMINE		
COMPOUNDS		172
(1) Iodoform and its Substitutes		172
(2) Substitutes for Alkaline Iodides		176
(3) Bromine Derivatives		178
CHAPTER XIII		
INORGANIC ANTISEPTICS AND METALLIC COMPOUNDS		180
(1) Non-metallic Compounds		180
(2) Derivatives of Mercury, Silver, Zinc, Aluminium, and Iron . .		180
CHAPTER XIV		
ARSENIC AND ANTIMONY COMPOUNDS		186
General Introduction		186
Arsenic Compounds		188
Antimony Compounds		200
CHAPTER XV		
PURINE DERIVATIVES (DIURETICS) AND URIC-ACID SOLVENTS		203
Purine Derivatives		203
Uric-acid Solvents		205
CHAPTER XVI		
PURGATIVES AND OTHER SUBSTANCES ACTING ON THE GASTRO-INTESTINAL		
TRACT		209
Anthraquinone Derivatives, Drastic Purgatives, Orexin		209
CHAPTER XVII		
VARIOUS OTHER COMPOUNDS OF INTEREST		216
Glucosides (Digitalis, Strophanthin, etc.)		216
Camphor and the Terpenes		216
Glycerophosphates		219

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

USED FOR TITLES OF JOURNALS, ETC.

- A. e. P. P.*.—Archiv für experimentelle Pathologie und Pharmakologie.
Amer. Journ. Pharm..—American Journal of Pharmacy.
Amer. Journ. Physiol..—American Journal of Physiology.
Annalen..—Justus Liebig's Annalen der Chemie.
A. Pharm..—Archiv der Pharmacie.
Apoth. Ztg..—Apotheker-Zeitung.
Beitr. Chem. Physiol. Path..—Hofmeister's Beiträge zur chemischen Physiologie und Pathologie.
Ber..—Berichte der Deutschen chemischen Gesellschaft.
Ber. klin. W..—Berliner klinische Wochenschrift.
Berz. Jahresb..—Berzelius' Jahresbericht über die Fortschritte der Chemie.
B. M. J..—British Medical Journal.
Bul..—Bulletin de la Société chimique de Paris.
Bull. Coll. Agr. Tokyo..—Bulletin of the College of Agriculture, Imperial University, Tokyo.
C. R..—Comptes rendus hebdomadaires de l'Académie des Sciences. (Paris.)
Chemik. Ztg..—Chemiker-Zeitung. (Cöthen.)
Deut. med. W..—Deutsche medizinische Wochenschrift.
D. R. P..—Deutsches Reichs Patent.*
Fortschr..—Friedländer, Fortschritte der Teerfarbenfabrikation.
J. C. S..—Journal of the Chemical Society (London), Transactions.
Journ. of Physiol..—Journal of Physiology. (London).
Journ. prakt. Chem..—Journal für praktische Chemie.
Merck's Jahresb..—Merck's Jahresbericht. (Since 1894 an English edition has been published under the title "Merck's Annual Report.")
Monatsh..—Monatshefte für Chemie und verwandte Theile anderer Wissenschaften. (Sitzungsberichte der k. Akademie zu Wien.)
Monatsh. f. pr. Derm..—Monatshefte für praktische Dermatologie.
Münchener med. W..—Münchener medizinische Wochenschrift.
Pflügers Archiv..—Archiv für die gesammte Physiologie des Menschen und der Thiere, herausgegeben von E. F. W. Pflüger.
Pharm. Ztg..—Pharmazeutische Zeitung.
Proc. Chem. Soc..—Proceedings of the Chemical Society. (London).
Proc. Amer. Physiol. Soc..—Proceedings of the American Physiological Society.
Proc. Roy. Soc..—Proceedings of the Royal Society. (London).
Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinb..—Proceedings of the Royal Society of Edinburgh.
Proc. Roy. Soc. Med..—Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine. (London).
Rec. Trav. Chim..—Receuil des travaux chimiques des Pays-Bas et de la Belgique.
Trans. Roy. Soc. Ed..—Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh.
Zeit. physiol. Chem..—Hoppe-Seyler's Zeitschrift für physiologische Chemie.

* Descriptions of these German patents are given in Friedländer's "Fortschritte der Teerfarbenfabrikation," and abstracts of the more recent ones also in the Journal of the Chemical Society (London) Abstracts, and in the Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry.

GLOSSARY

OF CERTAIN CHEMICAL AND MEDICAL TERMS

MEDICAL.

Analgesic = diminishing pain.

Antipyretic = causing fall of body-temperature in fever.

Hypnotic = sleep producing.

Narcotic = producing marked diminution of mental activity tending to unconsciousness.

Pressor = causing rise of arterial pressure, usually by constriction of the arterioles.

Styptic = checking or arresting bleeding.

CHEMICAL.

Acyl is a term used to denote an acidic organic radicle derived from an organic acid by removal of the hydroxyl (OH) group from the groups, ($-\text{CO}-\text{OH}$) or ($-\text{SO}_2-\text{OH}$), containing the acidic hydrogen.

E.g. Acetyl, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}-$, from acetic acid, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{OH}$.

Benzoyl, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO}-$, from benzoic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{OH}$.

Lactyl, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}-$, from lactic acid $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{OH}$.

Phthalyl, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \swarrow \text{CO}- \\ \searrow \text{CO}- \end{smallmatrix}$, from phthalic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \swarrow \text{CO} \cdot \text{OH} \\ \searrow \text{CO} \cdot \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$.

Benzene-sulphonyl, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{SO}_2-$, from benzene-sulphonic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$.

Alkamine esters have the general formula $\text{R}-\text{CO}-\text{O}-[\text{CR}_1\text{R}_2]_x-\text{NR}_3\text{R}_4$; they are formed by the esterification of an acid with an alcohol containing an amino-group.

Alkyl is a term used to denote an organic radicle derived from a simple aliphatic hydrocarbon by removal of one hydrogen atom.

E.g. Methyl, CH_3 , from methane, CH_4 ; ethyl, C_2H_5 , from ethane, C_2H_6 .

Aryl is a term used to denote an organic radicle derived from an aromatic hydrocarbon, by the removal of a hydrogen atom from the aromatic nucleus.

E.g. Phenyl, C_6H_5- , from benzene, C_6H_6 ; tolyl, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4-$, from toluene, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$. Groups such as benzyl, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2-$, obtained by removal of a hydrogen atom from the side-chain, must be regarded as mixed alkyl and aryl groups.

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION—THE THEORY OF THE ACTION OF SYNTHETIC DRUGS

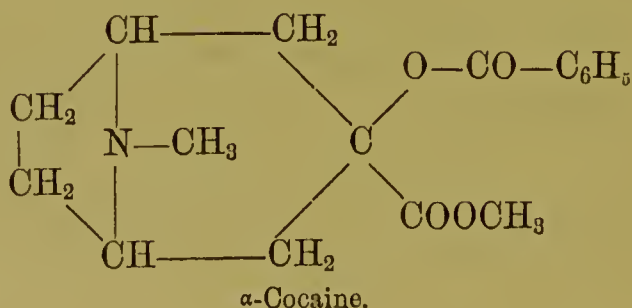
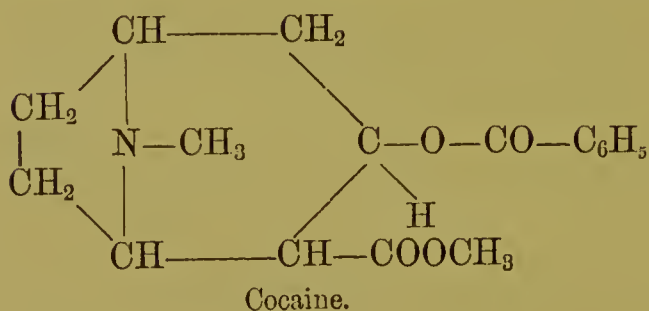
IN bygone years Pharmacology was an empirical collection of recipes, hardly deserving the name of a science; but a new era was begun with the investigation of medicinal substances by chemists in the early years of the nineteenth century. These researches soon bore fruit in the isolation of the active principles of many vegetable drugs, and it was found in many cases that the active compound was a nitrogenous substance of basic character, and to this class of substance the name *alkaloid* was given.

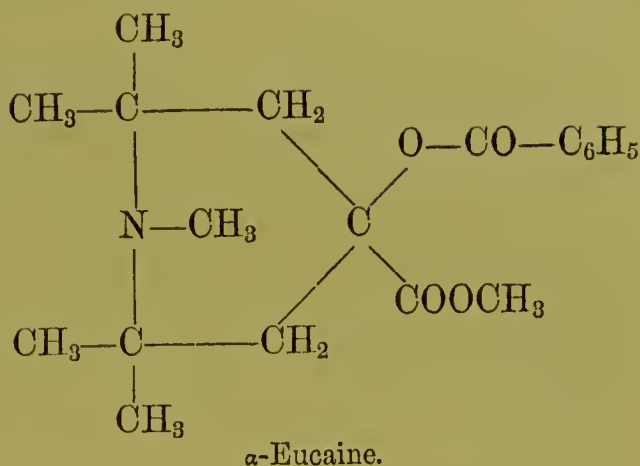
Although all vegetable drugs do not contain alkaloids, nevertheless in the majority of cases definite chemical compounds, to the presence of which the action of the drug is due, have been isolated. These non-alkaloidal active principles include a large number of different types of chemical compound, but the class of substances known as glucosides (substances readily hydrolyzed by dilute acids or by ferments into a sugar and another constituent which is generally physiologically active) is especially well represented.

The isolation of the pure active compounds was of very great importance, as it opened up the possibility of an accurate study of the effect of dosage, and, as time went on, enabled quantitative measurements of the physiological effect of the drug to be made. Such progress was obviously impossible as long as investigators were compelled to deal with a crude drug of unknown strength and composition. By this means, also, secondary by-effects, often unpleasant and harmful, could be got rid of in those cases where they were due to the presence of substances other than the desired active principle.

The study of the constitution of the active principles led to attempts at their synthetic production. For a long time, however, synthetic chemistry was not far enough advanced to succeed in the synthesis of such complex substances, and efforts were therefore made to find which portion of the molecule gave rise to the physiological effect in order that simpler analogous compounds might be prepared possessing the characteristic action of the drug.

In this way it was found that the physiological action of the drug was in general dependent on its chemical nature, although naturally modified by differences in physical properties, such as solubility, volatility, etc. For instance, certain types of compounds often possess a characteristic action, *e.g.* the quaternary ammonium compounds have a paralytic action on the motor nerves. On the other hand, in the majority of cases the relation between chemical constitution and physiological action is extremely obscure, and is usually to be found only within very narrow limits, outside which any generalizations that may have been made are apt to break down. Thus a very small change in the chemical constitution of a compound is often accompanied by a complete change in its physiological action, as in the case of cocaine, α -cocaine, and α -eucaine,





the first of which has a strong local anæsthetic action, whilst the second has no local anæsthetic action whatever, and the third—which resembles α -cocaine in its chemical constitution more than it does cocaine—has a marked local anæsthetic action, just like cocaine itself. In this connection mention should be made of the fact that a very considerable difference in physiological action is often shown by stereo-isomerides, as in the case of *d*- and *l*-nicotine, *d*- and *l*-hyoscyamine, pilocarpine, and isopilocarpine, etc.

At this point it may be advisable to indicate the relation between the chemical composition and the physical properties of a substance. It is held by some pharmacologists that the physiological action of a drug is conditioned solely by its physical properties, but even if this were always the case, it would not exclude a connection between the physiological action and the chemical constitution. It *may* be that the effect of some drugs is due to a subtle combination of various physical properties; these cannot, however, be readily ascertained in the majority of cases, but we can endeavour to correlate the chemical constitution—which is the foundation of these properties—with the physiological action. Another point on which misconception seems to have arisen, is the question of whether a difference in properties between two substances is to be attributed to chemical or purely physical causes. The following quotation from a leading text-book of pharmacology will serve to illustrate this: “Yellow phosphorus, given by the mouth, is a violent poison, but red phosphorus, which only differs from it in its physical properties, is comparatively innocuous. Yet were the two differently constituted chemically, the difference in their

action would, no doubt, be referred to this fact." Now, according to all modern views, there is a considerable difference in the chemical constitution of the molecules of the two different kinds of phosphorus, a difference which is manifested in the great difference of their reactivity and of their toxic action. There is probably as great a chemical difference between yellow and red phosphorus as between acetylene, $(\text{CH})_2$, and benzene, $(\text{CH})_6$, but at present we have no means of accurately investigating the molecular complexity of the two solid varieties of phosphorus.

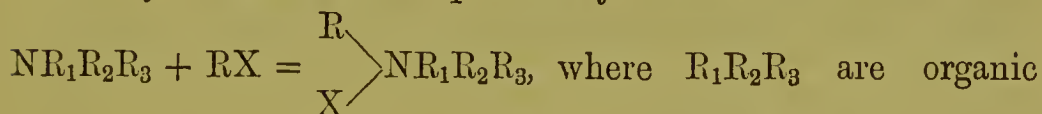
Although the action of some drugs may be conditioned chiefly by their physical properties, yet there are others in which it is undoubtedly due to their chemical character (*e.g.* organic arsenic derivatives certainly owe their trypanocidal and anti-syphilitic action to the presence of the arsenic). The term chemical "character" rather than "constitution" is used deliberately, as in many cases the physiological action of a substance may be traced to some specific chemical property, which is not necessarily closely connected with its constitution. For example, the poisonous character of oxalic acid and its soluble salts could hardly be deduced from its structural formula, but its toxicity is sufficiently explained by the fact that it forms an insoluble calcium salt, a sufficient quantity of calcium in solution being essential for the welfare of the organism.* The higher members of this series of dibasic acids, having more soluble calcium salts, are proportionately less toxic. In other cases, however, some kind of relation has been traced between the presence of certain groupings in the molecule and the appearance of certain more or less characteristic physiological effects. These relations may be used in attempting to prepare new synthetic drugs, but it is impossible to forecast the action of *any* new substance with certainty, and careful pharmacological experiments must be made before a new compound can be introduced as a drug.

Guidance in our efforts to obtain synthetic drugs may also be obtained from a study of the changes undergone by compounds in the organism. These changes are usually in the

* This accounts for the toxicity of the salts and dilute solutions of the acid; strong solutions of the acid are poisonous in the same way as other acids; *i.e.* on account of their corrosive action.

direction of the transformation of an active and poisonous substance into a less active and less harmful one. Thus, in order to replace a drug by a new product in which harmful by-effects are eliminated, we can often attain the desired object by studying the changes undergone by the former in the organism, and by taking for the starting-point of the new drug the product of the metabolism of the original drug. For example, it was found that aniline is oxidized by the body into para amino-phenol, and this observation led to the introduction into medicine of a large number of derivatives of para amino-phenol, of which phenacetin is the best-known example.

The theories that have been advanced to explain the action of various drugs are chiefly concerned with carbon compounds, as the latter offer practically the only means of comparing substances possessing definite structural relationships with one another. The influence of the chemical constitution of a substance on its physiological effect can be seen from the fact that definite changes in the chemical constitution of substances belonging to the same class, are usually accompanied by definite changes in the physiological effect, and further that the addition of certain molecular groups to differently acting substances can change them into similarly acting or equally inactive bodies. As an instance of this point, mention may be made of the discovery of Crum Brown and Fraser,¹ that various alkaloids possessing the most diverse physiological actions, on combination with alkyl halides to form quaternary ammonium derivatives—



radicles of any complexity, and RX stands for an alkyl halide such as methyl iodide, CH_3I , ethyl bromide, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$, etc.—yield substances which in almost every case possess the property of paralyzing the motor-nerve endings in the same manner as curare. In this way, by the process of methylation, one can obtain from all tertiary bases ($\text{NR}_1\text{R}_2\text{R}_3$), quaternary ammonium

compounds, $\begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{R} \diagup \end{array} \text{NR}_1\text{R}_2\text{R}_3$, which are very, and often disproportionately, poisonous compared with the original bases. Curare

¹ Crum Brown and Fraser, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Ed.*, 25 (1868), 707; Crum Brown and Fraser, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Ed.*, 6 (1869), 560.

itself contains a tertiary base, eurine, which is not very poisonous, as well as the far more poisonous ammonium base, curarine. The former on methylation yields the latter, which is 226 times as poisonous as the original substance.

On the other hand, the following examples may be quoted to show that the addition of particular groups to certain substances may weaken or destroy their action. This is well illustrated by the effect of the entrance of acidic groups into the molecule, thus substances containing an hydroxyl group, on combination with sulphuric acid, lose their toxic properties. For instance, phenol is very poisonous, but phenyl-sulphuric acid, in the form of its sodium salt, $C_6H_5-O-SO_2-ONa$, is harmless. Morphine, $C_{17}H_{17}NO(OH)_2$, is an extremely powerful and poisonous drug, but morphine-sulphuric acid, $C_{17}H_{17}NO(OH).O.SO_2.OH$, is practically inert, and can be given in doses of 5 grams without any harm. This fact should be borne in mind in considering the attempts that are often made of introducing the sulphonic acids of various drugs into medicine, as in nearly every case these are bound to be useless. The effect of introducing the carboxylic acid group ($CO-OH$) is often the same as that of introducing the sulphonic acid group ($-SO_2-OH$). For example, the toxic substance methylamine, NH_2-CH_3 , is thus changed into the harmless glycine, NH_2-CH_2-COOH . The mere addition of acid radicles, such as acetyl, $-CO-CH_3$, without actually converting the substance into an acid may often be sufficient; thus acetamide, $NH_2-CO-CH_3$, is practically harmless, but ammonia, NH_3 , is poisonous; acetanilide, $C_6H_5.NH.CO.CH_3$, is less poisonous than aniline, $C_6H_5.NH_2$.

An example of an opposite kind is furnished by the effect of the addition of hydrogen to cyclic bases, which is almost invariably to increase their activity, and also their toxic properties. Other examples of this kind will be adduced later, but sufficient have been mentioned to indicate that similar alterations of differently acting compounds often produce similar or identical alterations in the physiological effect.

Ehrlich¹ considers that the selective action of a compound for certain cells depends on the coming together of particular groups in the molecule in some sort of chemical connection

¹ "Deut. med. W." (1898), p. 1052.

with the cell substance. It is only when the compound is held to the tissues ("anchored") by these groups, that the whole complex molecule can take effect and exert its characteristic physiological action. If, therefore, the character of these special "anchoring" groups be altered, the substance can no longer exert its action on these particular cells, but it may happen that the alteration of the "anchoring" group causes the substance to become "anchored" to a different set of cells, and so to produce a different physiological effect. Examples of this type will be quoted subsequently.

These views may be more readily understood by analogy with Witt's theory of dyeing, according to which the colour of a substance is due to the presence of certain "chromophore" groups, such as the azo group, —N=N— , while, for the coloured substance to have dyeing properties, it is necessary for another, salt-forming, group to be present, by which it can be held fast to the fibre. A dye, therefore, must contain both a chromophore group and a salt-forming group, and in the same way, a drug is supposed, besides containing an active group, the "pharmacophore," corresponding to the chromophore, to contain also an anchoring group, corresponding to the salt-forming group.

This analogy may be extended, and the phenomena observed in staining nerve tissues may be compared with the biochemical processes which take place between poisons and the living tissue.

According to Ehrlich, the process of dyeing is similar to that which takes place when a poison is injected into the body. Thus, if a wool fibre be immersed in a dilute solution of picric acid, the colour is withdrawn from the solution and enters the fibre. The fibres of an animal tissue are regarded, in the same way, as withdrawing the dyestuff from the solution, and fixing it, if it is more soluble in them than in the original solution. If the dyestuff is more soluble in another solvent, *e.g.* alcohol, than in the tissue, then the latter can be again decolorized by shaking it in alcohol.


Now, all dyes capable of dyeing nerve cells lose this property if a sulphonic acid group is introduced into the molecule. The bulk of nerve-dyes can be extracted from their aqueous solutions with ether, but the sulphonic acids cannot owing to their greater solubility in water. It is therefore supposed that there are certain substances in the nerve tissues

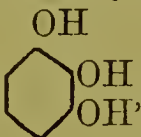
which act like ether does in the test-tube, so that the strong action of certain poisons on the brain and nervous tissues is due to their being extracted in the same way as they can be extracted with ether.

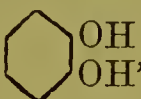

Although possibly it does not give a true picture of the actual processes taking place, this theory is nevertheless very useful as a mnemonic and in co-ordinating many of the observed facts.

A theory of the action of poisons, in which the subject is regarded from a different, and more chemical, point of view, is that due to Loew.¹ It states that all substances which are capable of acting on aldehyde or amino groups, even when in dilute solution, must be poisons for living tissue, on which they will exert a substituting action. The greater the reactivity of a substance for aldehyde (CHO) or amino (NH₂) groups, the greater will be its physiological effect and its toxicity. For example, phenyl-hydrazine, C₆H₅.NH.NH₂, and hydroxylamine, NH₂.OH, which are so reactive to ketone and aldehyde groups, are strong poisons, both to plants and animals. Aniline, C₆H₅.NH₂, which reacts less readily with aldehydes than does phenyl-hydrazine, is less poisonous; and similarly ammonia, NH₃, is less poisonous than hydrazine, H₂N—NH₂. Substances containing tertiary combined nitrogen are usually less toxic than the corresponding substance where the nitrogen is present in the more reactive form of a secondary imino (NH) group. This is exemplified by the fact that if the hydrogen of the NH group in many alkaloids is replaced by a methyl group, the resulting tertiary base is far less poisonous than the original alkaloid. In the same way, if one of the hydrogen atoms of the NH₂ group in aniline is replaced by an alkyl group, the toxicity is diminished, as the substance reacts less readily with aldehydes. A similar explanation is offered of the fact that piperidine is far more toxic than pyridine, and tetrahydroquinoline far more toxic than quinoline, namely, that the reduced compounds, which contain secondary nitrogen in the place of tertiary, have a greater reactivity with protoplasm. This view is supported by the fact that the toxicity of substances with labile amino groups is increased by the addition of a second amino group, but is lessened when an amino group is changed

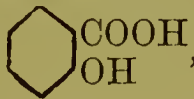
¹ "Natürliches System der Giftwirkung." München, 1893.


into an imino, NH, group. Thus, para-phenylene-diamine, NH_2  NH_2 , is more toxic than aniline. In general, if the chemical character of a poison is made more labile by any change in the character of the molecule, then it becomes more toxic, and *vice versa*. An example of this is shown by the hydroxybenzenes, in which the increased reactivity due to the entrance of hydroxyl groups into the benzene ring is accompanied by an increase in the toxicity of the substance.

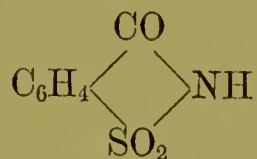
Thus, trihydroxy-benzene, pyrogallol, , is more poisonous

than catechol, , which contains only two hydroxyl groups, and this in turn is more poisonous than phenol (monohydroxybenzene), .

The labile substance, ammonium sulphocyanide, is toxic to plants, but the more stable isomer, thio-urea, is not. Substances with carbon atoms united by "double bonds" are generally more reactive and more toxic than closely related compounds with simple linkage. Neurine is more poisonous than choline, and other instances of this kind are mentioned in the next chapter. The toxicity of phenols is attributed to their reactivity, especially with aldehydes. This reactivity is diminished by the entrance of acid groups, such as the carboxyl, COOH , and the sulphonic acid group, $\text{SO}_2\text{—OH}$, and this diminution in the reactivity is accompanied by a diminution of their toxic power. For

example, salicylic acid, , is less poisonous than

phenol, . In the same way, saccharin,



is not at all poisonous, as the presence of the carboxyl and the sulphonic acid groups so much diminishes the reactivity of the imino group.

These views of Loew, which are both simple and very suggestive, can nevertheless only be applied to certain groups of substances which react with aldehyde and amino groups. They offer no explanation of the selective action of different tissues for various drugs, as they are applied simply to protoplasm, and the protoplasm of any and every tissue has labile aldehyde and amino groups, which, according to this view, should react with the drug. Nevertheless, the theory is of value in co-ordinating the action of the various members of certain classes of compounds.

A physical theory of the action of various hypnotics will be discussed in the chapter dealing with the hypnotics.

To return to Ehrlich's theory of "anchoring" groups, many examples may be given to illustrate the application of the theory. In general it is supposed that there are two kinds of groups in the molecule of an active substance, necessary for the action to appear, but in some cases the active group and the anchoring group may be one and the same. If the anchoring group is altered or removed, then a different physiological effect from the original may become apparent if there is present a second possible anchoring group, which can now manifest itself more strongly. As these other anchoring groups may effect different tissues from those affected by the original anchoring groups, so a different physiological effect may be produced, or one of the special physiological effects of the substance may become enhanced. In the first place, the most chemically reactive anchoring group dominates the situation.

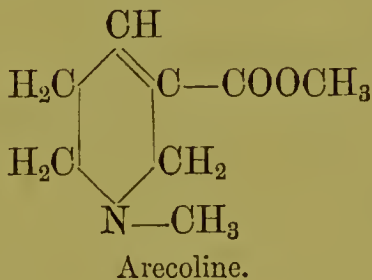
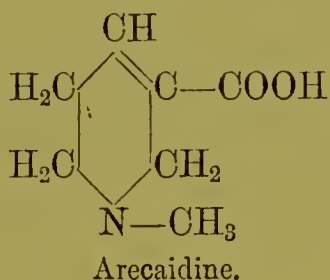
For example, morphine has a strong hypnotic effect, and the anchoring group is probably one of the hydroxyl groups. If these are combined with sulphuric acid, then the morphine cannot become "anchored" to the nerve tissues¹ of the central nervous system, and the resulting substance has no effect at all. If the hydroxyl is only altered by the entrance of an organic radicle, with the formation of substances such as methyl, ethyl, or acetyl derivatives, then the hypnotic effect is thrust into the background, while the action on the respiratory

¹ It should be pointed out that the loss of the physiological activity of morphine on sulphonation can be accounted for, from the physical point of view, by reason of the change of its solubility. The more soluble substance cannot become "anchored" to the tissues. These two points of view are not, however, antagonistic, and are merely different methods of viewing the same experimental facts.

centres, produced by morphine to a slight extent, becomes much enhanced and dominates the physiological effect (codeine, heroin, etc.).

In those cases where the presence of an acid group prevents the substance from acting on certain tissues in spite of the presence of an anchoring group, the esterification of the acid group causes the physiological action to appear. To illustrate this, the esterifying group must of itself play no part in the physiological effect, which must reside solely in the original substance, but only be hindered from appearing by the presence of the acid group.

For example, arecaidine has no action at all on animals, but arecoline, its methyl ester, is poisonous, and has physiological



effects similar to those of pilocarpine and muscarine. The ethyl ester acts similarly to the methyl ester.

A precisely similar example is furnished by cocaine, which is the methyl ester of benzoylecgonine. Benzoylecgonine itself is far less active, and is twenty times less toxic than cocaine, owing to the presence of the carboxyl group. It is only when this group is esterified, that the typical action of cocaine appears, and it is immaterial by which alcohol the ester formation is accomplished. In every case the typical action of cocaine appears when the carboxyl group is masked, and therefore it is not the alkyl group which is active, but its presence simply serves to destroy the effect of the group which is inhibiting the characteristic action of the drug. When this group is masked, then the typical "anchoring" group can take effect. Thus it may *possibly* be that for cocaine to act as a local

anæsthetic, it must be anchored to the tissues by the $\text{N} - \text{CH}_3$ group, or at any rate by some portion of the molecule other than

the carboxyl group, but that if a free carboxyl group be present, it becomes anchored by this instead, and so fails to produce its characteristic action.

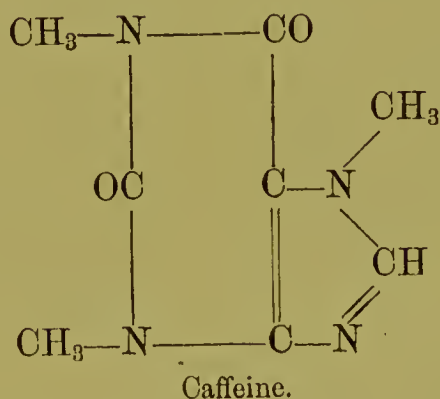
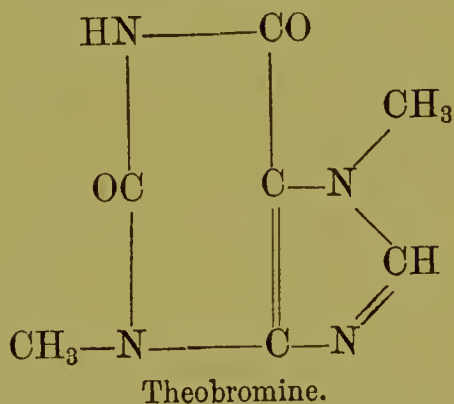
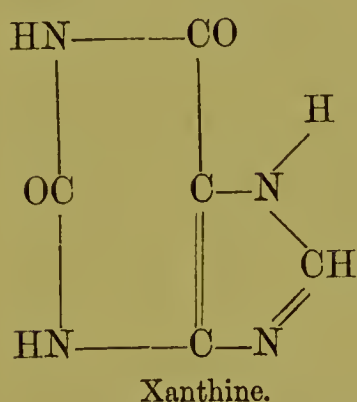
One can thus alter inactive compounds into active ones, or *vice versâ*, or can alter the nature of the action of some compounds by means of a chemical change which alters the group. In this way, if the most prominent property of a drug becomes suspended or diminished, a comparatively masked property becomes developed.

Closely connected with the relation between the constitution and the physiological action of a drug is the second question, of whether there is any connection between the action and the chemical changes which the substance undergoes in the organism. Kober considers that the strength of the action of a drug is in no way proportional to the amount of the chemical change which it undergoes in the organism. For instance, very active substances, like atropine and strychnine, pass through the body practically unchanged, but an inactive body like tyrosine is completely oxidized by the organism into carbon dioxide and water. Conversely in the case of many compounds, it can be seen that when they have an effect on the body, they have undergone a chemical change. Thus, in the case of arsenious oxide, phosphorus, and many other compounds, the toxicity is due to their reducing power.

This is also the case with many physiologically active organic compounds, which often show a chemical alteration in the organism. It would therefore seem as if there were no relation between the changes undergone by a drug and its physiological action, but nevertheless some facts can be cited against the view that there is *absolutely* no connection to be traced.

It has been pointed out, in discussing the relation between chemical constitution and physiological action, that *wide* generalizations cannot be drawn, and that it is only in the case of *closely related* compounds that relationships can be traced. In the same way, with regard to the relation between chemical change and physiological action, a connection can be found in certain cases of *closely related* compounds. In many cases physiologically active compounds show a degradation of the molecule, and these same substances, if they are made so

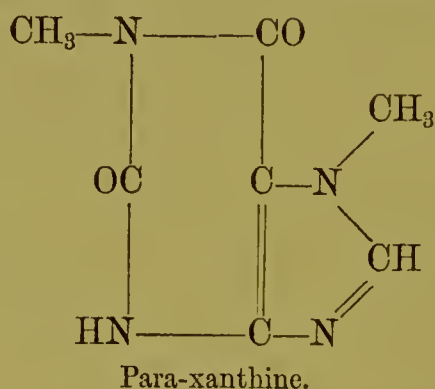
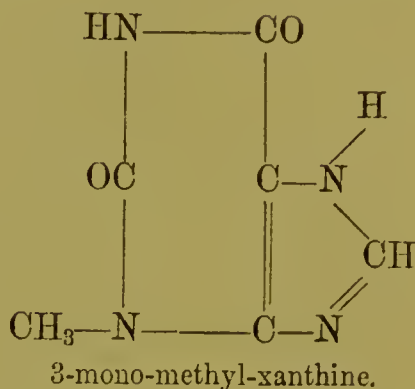
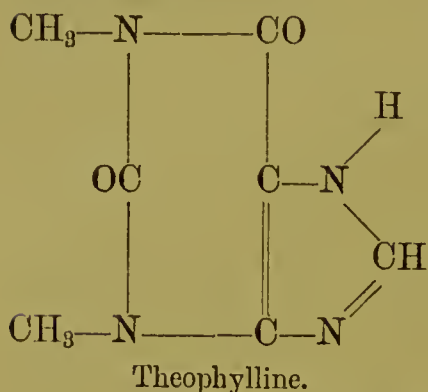
resistant that they no longer suffer any alteration in the organism, then become inactive. For example, xanthine has no tonic action on the heart muscle, but theobromine (dimethyl-xanthine) has a slight tonic action, and caffeine (tri-methyl-xanthine) has a still more marked tonic action, from which it will be seen that the addition of methyl groups to the nitrogen of xanthine adds a special action on the heart to the ordinary physiological action of xanthine. Experiments, made to ascertain the fate of these compounds in the organism, show that the products of metabolism found in the urine after the administration of caffeine and theobromine contain xanthine bases, poorer in methyl groups than the substances originally administered.



This indicates that the methyl groups have been split off in the organism. In the experiments on dogs, caffeine gives first theophylline and then 3-mono-methyl-xanthine, smaller quantities of the two other di-methyl compounds, theobromine and para-xanthine, being also formed.¹ With rabbits caffeine is

¹ Krüger and Schmid, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 36 (1902), 1.

completely demethylated to xanthine, and in man it is degraded into theophylline.



In all three animals we have a splitting off of some of the methyl groups, the groups which appear to be responsible for the tonic action on the heart. This case indicates that there is sometimes a relationship between the physiological action and the changes undergone by the substance in the organism. Another well-known instance is afforded by the sulphone derivatives, the hypnotic action of which has been shown to be connected with the presence of ethyl groups in the molecule. The methyl derivatives are inert, and pass through the organism unchanged; the ethyl derivatives produce sleep, and are almost completely decomposed by the organism.

In the case of the alkaloids, it is very difficult in most cases to obtain any knowledge of the mechanism of their action, and generally they seem to pass out of the organism for the most part unchanged. Hence it has been assumed that the action of some of these is "catalytic," an assumption that explains nothing. Another view is that the small portion of the alkaloid that cannot be recovered from the body has undergone a chemical change to which its action is due.

Compared with food-stuffs, most drugs are destroyed by the organism with difficulty, and they owe their activity to this property, but if they are *absolutely* resistant they are quite inactive. Those substances which have a specific action must be fairly resistant, otherwise they would react with *all* protoplasm. In the synthesis of drugs we make use of this property by conferring an artificial resistance on the synthetic substance, so as to prevent it from reacting too suddenly, and also to prevent it from reacting with all tissues, so that it does not show undesirable by-effects. For this reason, all substances which can react with every kind of tissue cannot be used as drugs, unless the reactivity is artificially diminished, or the dose made very small, in which case they can be made useful (*e.g.* formaldehyde, hydrocyanic acid).

In some substances, the physiological effect seems to be due more to the stereo-chemical configuration than to the chemical constitution. One general instance will be a sufficient support for this statement. It has already been pointed out that all ammonium bases have a paralytic action on the motor nerves, and that this action is quite independent of the structure of the rest of the molecule. Even the presence of nitrogen is not necessary, as a similar effect is shown in those bases where the nitrogen is replaced by phosphorus, arsenic, or antimony, and it therefore seems that the effect is due to the configuration of the ammonium, phosphonium, or arsonium group, this being a three-dimensional (space) one, while that of the original amines almost certainly lies in one plane. This view is strongly supported by the fact that dimethyl sulphide, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{S}$, and diethyl sulphide, where the sulphur is divalent, and where the configuration *must* lie in one plane, are practically inert, but that tri-methyl sulphonium hydroxide, $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{SOH}$, and trimethyl sulphonium iodide resemble the ammonium bases in having a curare-like action on the motor nerves. In these compounds, where the sulphur is tetravalent, its valencies are distributed in three dimensions, as shown by the fact that optically active sulphur compounds of this type have been prepared.¹

¹ Smiles, *J. C. S.*, 77 (1900), 1174; Pope and Peachey, *J. C. S.*, 77 (1900), 1073.

CHAPTER II

THE EFFECT OF VARIOUS ELEMENTS AND RADICLES

Inorganic Elements.—In 1839 Blake¹ noticed that the action of salts, injected into the blood, depended only on the electro-positive half, and hardly at all on the electro-negative. This is analogous to the action of most esters, which generally resembles that of the alcohol from which they are derived, the explanation in both cases being that acids are usually physiologically inert. Later on² it was shown that in any given group of isomorphous substances the action is similar, and is usually increased with increase in atomic weight. This was shown to be the case with Li, Na, Rb, Cs, Ag, Tl; and with Mg, Mn, Co, Ni, Cu, Zn, Cd, and with Ca, Sr, Ba. The only exceptions found were in the case of potassium and ammonium, which differ from the other isomorphous substances of the group. But these salts are also exceptions to Mitscherlich's law that isomorphous substances have similar spectra. It was therefore supposed that physiological action depends on intramolecular vibrations in the same way as the spectra depend on these. The statement made above that isomorphous elements have a similar physiological effect, which becomes stronger with increase in atomic weight, only holds good in the case of electro-positive elements; in the case of negative elements, such as the halogens, there is no relation between physiological effect and atomic weight. Elements forming two series of salts show different effects, according to which class the salt belongs, ferric salts, for instance, differing considerably from ferrous. In many salts, the action appears to be due to the ions into which the salt dissociates; for example, potassium ferrocyanide is excreted for the most part unchanged, and has neither the action of a ferrous

¹ *C. R.*, 8 (1839), 875; *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 4 (1841), 155, 284, 285.

² *Ber.*, 14 (1881), 394.

salt nor of a cyanide, and similarly sodium plantinocyanide, which is found unchanged in the urine, is almost free from poisonous effects, thus differing both from the cyanides and the platinum salts.

The effect of ionization is strikingly indicated by the mercury salts. Mercuric chloride, HgCl_2 , is ionized and extremely poisonous, but the cyanide, $\text{Hg}(\text{CN})_2$, though soluble, is almost non-ionized and is far less poisonous. The insoluble and practically non-ionized mercurous chloride (calomel), Hg_2Cl_2 , is comparatively non-poisonous.

Phosphonium, arsonium, and stibonium bases do not show the action of the other phosphorus, arsenic, and antimony compounds. On the contrary, these compounds resemble the substituted ammonium bases, such as those present in curare, in having a paralytic action on the motor nerves. In these cases we do not get the characteristic action of the poisonous elements themselves, but rather one resembling the analogous compounds of the indifferent element nitrogen.

RADICLES AND ELEMENTS IN ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

Action of Hydrocarbons and Effect of Alkyl Groups.—According to Schmiedeberg¹ the action of aliphatic compounds is governed by the following rules:—

The physiological activity of substances (especially aliphatic) depends chiefly on physical properties. The readiness with which a substance is absorbed is a very important point, as obviously a substance that is not absorbed can have no action on the system. Volatility and solubility in water are of great importance, a fact which is illustrated by the paraffin series, the lower and more volatile members of which show the characteristic narcotic effect of the hydrocarbon groups, while the insoluble non-volatile higher paraffins are without any action at all.

The following rules show the effect of substituent alkyl groups:—

(1) Very poisonous radicles, on substitution by simple alkyl groups, lose the intensity of the original character

¹ *A. e. P. P.*, 20 (1886), 201.

of the group. For example, by substituting alkyl radicles for the hydrogen of HCN, the nitriles, RCN, and isonitriles, $R-N\equiv C$, are obtained, and only become poisonous when HCN is split off in the organism. Also cacodyl oxide, $(CH_3)_2As-O-As(CH_3)_2$, where the oxygen of arsenious oxide is replaced by two methyl groups, does not show the characteristic arsenic effect until after it has begun to decompose in the body.

(2) On the other hand, the effect of the alkyl groups can be lessened or altogether lost by combination with other atoms or groups. For instance, the amines of the fatty series (*e.g.* mono-, di-, and tri-methylamines) behave like ammonia and have no narcotic action. Nevertheless, the first rule holds in this case as well, as these amines are less toxic than ammonia.

(3) When a compound is formed by the union of two groups through an oxygen atom, then the physiological effect depends upon the nature of the two components, each of which acts independently of the other. In those cases where both parts of the compound are similar or equivalent alkyl groups, as in the case of the simple and mixed ethers, then the action of the whole compound is a simple one, and these substances resemble the corresponding alcohols in their physiological effect. To this class of substances should be added those esters the acids of which yield neutral (sodium) salts without any specific physiological action. For this reason, acetic ester and its homologues are classed with the alcohols. If, on the contrary, the acid has a specific action of its own, then this becomes apparent in the ester, and exerts a modifying influence on the physiological effect of the alkyl group—*e.g.* amyl nitrite.

These rules of Schmiedeberg are of value, not only in summarizing the effect of alkyl groups, but, as can be seen above, are also useful as applied to other groups of substances, especially the ethers and the alcohols, the effect of which is due to the alkyl groups contained in them.

The hydrocarbons of the methane series are, as would be expected from their chemical nature, less active physiologically than those of the ethylene, acetylene, or benzene series. The lower members, when inhaled, produce anæsthesia and sleep, and in larger quantities asphyxiation. The toxicity and the strength of the narcotic action increase as the series is ascended,


but on further ascending the series, the action diminishes owing to their diminished volatility and solubility, so that the higher members are quite inert. The members of the ethylene series have a similar narcotic action; amylene, C_5H_{10} , resembles chloroform in its narcotic properties.

The benzene hydrocarbons have a paralyzing action on the motor nerves, and a more noteworthy action on the brain and cord, causing lethargy and somnolence. Bromobenzene and chlorobenzene act in the same way as benzene itself. Naphthalene, $C_{10}H_8$, is less toxic than benzene, but slows the respiration and, in fever, lowers the temperature. It also has the property of decreasing nitrogen metabolism. Diphenyl is physiologically inert, while thiophene, furfuran and pyrrol resemble benzene to a certain extent.

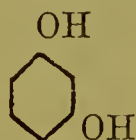
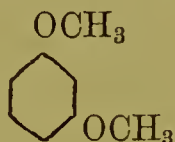
Effect of Alkyl Groups.—Some of the effects of introducing alkyl groups into a compound have already been mentioned in connection with Schmiedeberg's rules, but there are many different effects to which attention may be given. The convulsive properties of ammonia are diminished by the entrance of methyl groups, trimethylamine being free from these effects. In aniline, replacement of the hydrogen of the amino group causes diminution of the convulsive properties as with ammonia, but replacement of the hydrogen of the nucleus by methyl groups causes an increase in these effects. The marked influence of the entrance of methyl groups into the xanthine molecule has already been pointed out. The foregoing examples show that the addition of a methyl group to a nitrogen atom can produce very diverse effects, and a similar variety can be found in the effect of the methylation of an hydroxyl group. The alkyl ethers of the type $R.O.R$, where R represents an aliphatic hydrocarbon radicle, are distinguished by their resistance towards oxidation, and physiologically they show a marked hypnotic action, as in the case of ordinary ethyl ether, $C_2H_5-O-C_2H_5$. This hypnotic action is also shown by many other compounds containing an ethoxy group, $-O-C_2H_5$, such as ethoxy-caffeine.

In many cases, replacement of the hydrogen of an hydroxyl group by a methyl group diminishes the physiological activity.

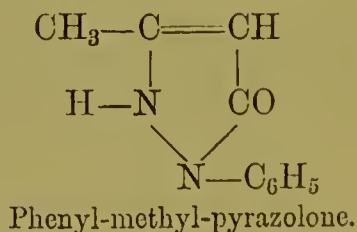
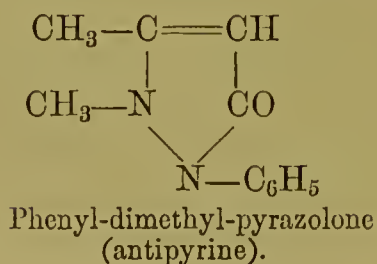
OH

For instance, catechol, OH, is more poisonous than

guaiacol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})(\text{OCH}_3)$, and this in turn is more poisonous than veratrole, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OCH}_3)_2$, and ortho-methoxy-benzoic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OCH}_3)(\text{COOH})$, and anisic acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{COOH}$, are less active than salicylic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})(\text{COOH})$. On the other hand, in some cases the activity of a compound is increased by the methylation of an hydroxyl group. For instance, di-methyl-resorcinol is extremely poisonous, far more so than resorcinol—



In some cases, the methylation of an hydroxyl, and even more often of a carboxyl group, may cause a very marked change in the physiological action of a compound, owing to the methylation producing a new anchoring group for the molecule. It has already been pointed out how the entrance of an alkyl group into certain acids often causes the full appearance of certain previously masked properties, as in the case of cocaine, arecoline, etc. Possibly a similar explanation may be given of the antipyretic action of phenyl-dimethyl-pyrazolone (antipyrine), phenyl-methyl-pyrazolone being inert.



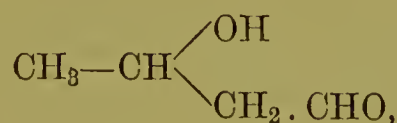
In the chapter on hypnotics, reference is made to the importance of ethyl groups in the hypnotic ketones and sulphones, in which compounds the ethyl groups seem to have a

marked influence in causing the hypnotic character to appear, whereas methyl groups are entirely without this influence. In fact, there appears to be a marked difference between the ethyl and methyl groups with respect to their action on the central nervous system, for which the former seem to have a special affinity. Other groups of compounds show similar relationships. An interesting experimental result points to the same conclusion, as it has been shown that certain dyes containing the diethyl-amino group, $N(C_2H_5)_2$, possess the property of dyeing the nerve fibres, but the corresponding dyes containing the dimethyl-amino group, $N(CH_3)_2$, do not have this property (Ehrlich and Michaelis).

Another example of the difference between methyl and ethyl groups is furnished by para - phenetol - carbamide, $C_2H_5O \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ (Dulcin), which is two hundred times sweeter than sugar, whilst the corresponding methyl derivative, $CH_3O \cdot C_6H_4 - NH - CO - NH_2$, is tasteless.

The entrance of a phenyl group often produces a marked change in the physiological action of a compound, but the effect varies greatly in different cases, and no general rule can be given.

Effect of Hydroxyl Groups.—The entrance of an hydroxyl group into aliphatic compounds usually produces a weakening of their physiological activity, and this weakening effect is roughly proportional to the number of the hydroxyl groups. For example, the narcotic and poisonous alcohols give rise to the inactive glycols, glycerol, mannitol, etc., and from the very active aldehydes are obtained the less active aldols, such as

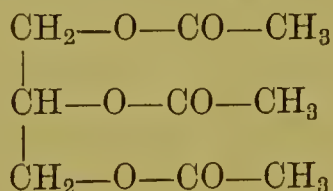


and by the entry of more hydroxyl groups, the totally inactive aldoses (glucose, etc., $CH_2 \cdot OH(CH \cdot OH)_4 \cdot CHO$). A similar effect is often produced in many other compounds, for example, caffeine, the physiological effect being lost in hydroxy-caffeine.

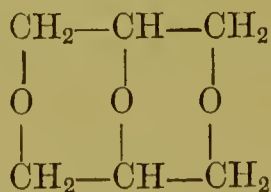
In the aromatic compounds, the entrance of an hydroxyl group usually causes an increase in both the physiological effect and the toxicity. The entrance of an hydroxyl group in benzene

itself causes a great increase in the toxicity, together with the appearance of the strong antiseptic properties for which phenol is well known. In the case of a more inert aromatic substance such as benzoic acid, the entrance of an hydroxyl group is again accompanied by an increase in physiological activity, ortho-hydroxy-benzoic acid (salicylic acid) having well-marked antiseptic properties as well as an apparently specific action in rheumatism.

The large number of facts known as to the action of compounds containing an hydroxyl group do not lend themselves to the view that this group has an action of its own, but they point rather to the fact that it very often performs the function of an "anchoring group." The modification of such groups by esterification or alkylation neutralizes or alters the effect of these groups in "anchoring" the substance to a particular tissue. If an acyl group enters the hydroxyl group (esterification), then various different effects may be produced. In those cases where the ester is hydrolyzed in the organism, its action is due to that of the original hydroxylic substance, together with that (if any) of the sodium salt of the acid. As the greater number of acids are inert, the action of most esters is due to a delayed action of the alcohol from which they are derived. In some cases, the esters do not appear to be hydrolyzed by the organism, and they then do not behave in the fashion indicated by the foregoing statement. For example, triacetyl glycerol (triacetin)—



does not show the action of glycerol or of sodium acetate, both of which are practically inert, but possesses a specific action on the nervous system, and is poisonous. Glyceryl ether—



is also an hypnotic, this being an example of the fact that alkyl

compounds of this kind, obtained by the addition of an alkyl residue to an hydroxyl group, often show hypnotic properties; for example, ethoxy-caffeine. In the case of the ethers, such as ordinary ethyl ether, the narcotic properties are strictly in accordance with the close resemblance between the chemical properties of the ethers and the parent hydrocarbons themselves, the narcotic action being simply that of the alkyl groups, as stated by Schmiedeberg in the third of his rules (*loc. cit.*).

Other conditions being equal, primary alcohols are less active than secondary, and these are in turn less active than tertiary. In homologous series, those members with long side chains are in general more active, a rule which also holds for benzene derivatives with side chains. The chief action of ethyl alcohol is on the nervous system, the narcotic effect being preceded by a loss of control of the higher centres, an effect which has led to the mistaken belief that alcohol in small quantities acts as a "stimulant." Although the subject is somewhat controversial, the balance of the pharmacological evidence suggests that there is no justification for the medicinal use of alcohol. An excellent account of modern pharmacological opinion on this subject is given by Cushny in *Science Progress*, No. 8, April, 1908. It is there suggested that if alcohol had been introduced as a modern synthetic remedy, it would probably not have survived more than six months, owing to the fact that any of the desirable effects produced by alcohol can be produced by other drugs with greater certainty. The action of the higher alcohols resembles that of ethyl alcohol, but the intensity increases as the series is ascended.

Effect of Halogen in Organic Compounds.—The most important effect of the entrance of chlorine into the molecule of aliphatic compounds is an increase in their narcotic action, but this useful property is accompanied by an increase in their depressant action on the heart and blood-vessels. Narcotic action and lowering of blood-pressure appear to be general properties of chlorine compounds, and an illustration of the fact that narcotic action, and also the toxicity of chlorine compounds depends upon the amount of chlorine in the substance, is furnished by the chlorine derivatives of glycerine. Glycerol itself is inert, but the chlorhydrins have a narcotic action, and

dilate the blood-vessels, this effect being the greatest in the case of trichlorhydrin, $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}-\text{CHCl}-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$, and least in the case of monochlorhydrin, $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$.

This fact is also illustrated by methyl chloride, CH_3Cl , methylene dichloride, CH_2Cl_2 , chloroform, CHCl_3 , and carbon tetrachloride, CCl_4 , a series in which increase in the amount of chlorine is accompanied by increased narcotic action and increased toxicity. But in the case of the chlorinated fatty acids, the toxicity decreases with increase of chlorine, trichloroacetic acid being practically non-toxic, while monochloroacetic acid is strongly poisonous. The chlorinated fatty acids are also anomalous in another respect, as the narcotic action of the sodium salts of the fatty acids increases with rise of molecular weight from acetic acid to valerianic acid, while in the case of the corresponding chlorinated acids it diminishes with increase of molecular weight.

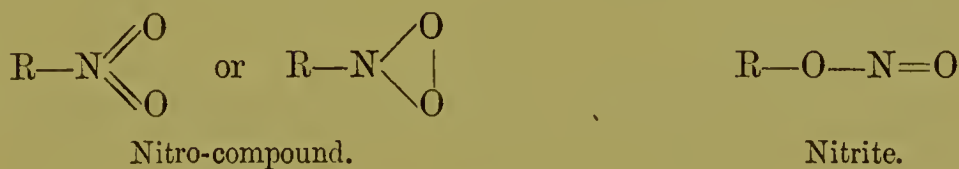
In chloro-caffeine, there is an antagonism between the tonic effect of caffeine on the heart and the depressant action of the chlorine, and it is found that the tonic effect of this substance is less than that of caffeine, but the diuretic effect and the stimulation of the brain due to caffeine are not affected.

The entrance of halogen into the benzene nucleus produces only a slight change in the physiological properties. None of these derivatives have an anæsthetic or hypnotic action, but there is usually an increase in antiseptic power. In general, there is a close resemblance between bromine derivatives and those of chlorine, both in the aliphatic and aromatic series. Organic iodine compounds differ from those of the other halogens in respect of their increased antiseptic power and their diminished hypnotic properties. (Compare chloroform, bromoform, and iodoform.) The toxicity of the iodine compounds markedly exceeds that of the analogous chlorine and bromine compounds, but this has not seriously hampered their use as antiseptics, and a very large number of iodine compounds have been produced for this purpose.

Effect of Nitro and Nitroso Groups.—The entrance of a nitro (NO_2) or nitroso (NO) group in general causes a marked increase of toxicity, independently of whether it replaces a hydrogen atom in the nucleus or one in a hydroxyl group.

The aliphatic nitrites give rise to dilatation of the blood-vessels, and are therefore used to lower the blood-pressure. The strength of this effect diminishes in descending the series from amyl nitrite to methyl nitrite. All the nitrites act in this manner, the secondary and tertiary being stronger in their action than the primary, probably owing to the fact that they are more readily hydrolyzed to alcohol and nitrite. A similar action is shown by the esters of nitric acid, nitro-glycerin, $\text{CH}_2(\text{ONO}_2)\text{—CH}(\text{ONO}_2)\text{—CH}_2(\text{O} \cdot \text{NO}_2)$, and erythrol tetra-nitrate being largely used in medicine to dilate the blood-vessels.¹

Aliphatic nitro-compounds, such as nitro-methane, which are isomeric with the alkyl nitrites,



differ from them in their physiological action, being poisonous, but without the property of dilating the blood-vessels.

The entrance of a nitro group into aromatic compounds usually increases the toxicity, nitro-benzene, nitro-naphthol, and nitro-thiophene, for example, all being more poisonous than the substances from which they are directly derived. Para-nitro-

toluene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)(\text{CH}_3)$, is not poisonous, because it is oxidized to para-

nitro-benzoic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)(\text{COOH})$, which is then eliminated as para-nitro-

hippuric acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)(\text{CO—NH—CH}_2\text{—COOH})$. As is usually the case, the entrance of

¹ The workers employed in explosive factories often suffer from headache caused by the vapour of nitro-glycerine ("N. G." headache).

negative groups diminishes the toxicity, the aromatic nitro-aldehydes being non-poisonous, as they are readily oxidized to the inert nitro-acids.

Effect of Basic Nitrogen Groups.—The entrance of basic nitrogen radicles into aliphatic or aromatic compounds, or the presence of nitrogen in cyclic bases, can produce very important pharmacological effects. The nature of these varies greatly in different cases, and at this point only a few points of interest will be referred to, as the subject will be considered from time to time in the special part of the book.

The cramp-producing action of ammonia and its disappearance on the entrance of alkyl groups has already been referred to. Replacement of the hydrogen of ammonia by acid groups also diminishes the activity of the substance, and produces inert compounds which are found unchanged in the urine.

For example—

Carbamic acid, $\text{NH}_2\text{—CO—OH}$, is poisonous, probably on account of its unstable character, but its ester (urethane), $\text{NH}_2\text{—CO—OC}_2\text{H}_5$, is more stable and has a hypnotic action.

Hydrazine, $\text{NH}_2\text{—NH}_2$, is far more toxic than ammonia, but the tetra- and penta-methylene diamines, $\text{NH}_2[\text{CH}_2]_4\text{NH}_2$ and $\text{NH}_2[\text{CH}_2]_5\text{NH}_2$, are quite non-toxic. Hydroxylamine, $\text{NH}_2\text{—OH}$, is very toxic on account of its reactivity with aldehydes (Loew's theory), and hydrazoic acid and its sodium salt are very toxic. The action of oximes resembles that of the aldehyde from which they are derived together with that of a nitrite, the =NOH group probably being oxidized to a nitrite.

Acetoxime lowers the blood-pressure and has a narcotic action.

Guanidine is toxic, owing to the presence of the labile imino

(NH) group, $\text{HN}=\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{NH}_2 \\ \searrow \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$; and cyanamide, CN—NH_2 , has a

toxic action similar to that of guanidine.

The salts of the platinum-ammonium bases of the type, $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{PtCl}_6$, resemble the other ammonium bases in having a curare-like action.¹

Very great interest is attached to the experiments that have been made on the effect of the entrance of an amino

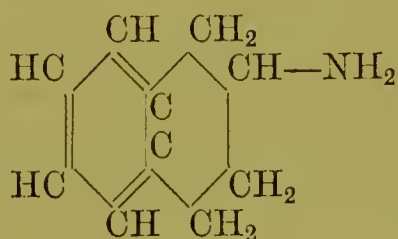
¹ Hofmeister, *A. c. P. P.*, 16 (1883), 393.

group into the benzene nucleus, as they form the basis of a large number of antipyretics and analgesics. Amino-benzene (aniline) resembles ammonia in many respects as regards its physiological action, but it also resembles benzene in some of its properties. It produces cramps, but also causes paralysis of muscles and nerves, and if one of the hydrogen atoms of the amino group be replaced by an alkyl group, the cramps no longer appear, but only the paralyzing effect remains. If one of the hydrogen atoms in the nucleus of the aniline molecule be replaced by a simple atom, such as bromine, the cramp-effect is retained, and if it is replaced by an alkyl group the effect is increased; but if a complex group, especially an acid group, enters the nucleus, the effect is lost, as for example in amino-

benzene-sulphonic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{SO}_3\text{H} \end{array}$. Another property of all

these derivatives, such as aniline, is that they have a strong toxic action on the blood, forming methæmoglobin. The entrance of a second amino group into the benzene nucleus causes a great increase in the toxicity, all three phenylenediamines, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH}_2)_2$, being extremely poisonous.

While all the aromatic derivatives of ammonia and hydrazine possess the property of lowering the temperature of the body, alicyclic-tetrahydro- β -naphthylamine,



produces a marked rise in the body temperature, and an increase in the albumin-metabolism. Substances containing tertiary nitrogen are often only slightly toxic, and are frequently without any effect at all. In many cases, if the tertiary nitrogen is changed into secondary by reduction, powerfully active substances are obtained.

The change of compounds containing tertiary nitrogen into substances with a curare-like action on conversion into ammonium bases has been mentioned in a previous chapter, and will be considered again in connection with the alkaloids.

Effect of the Cyanogen Radicle.—Hydrocyanic acid, HCN , is well known as an exceptionally strong poison, and this fact is probably connected with its great chemical reactivity. The action of cyanogen is similar, but only about one-fifth as powerful. In general, the isocyanides (isonitriles) cause paralysis of the respiratory centre, and the true cyanides (nitriles) produce coma. In this respect, therefore, the behaviour of hydrocyanic acid resembles that of an isocyanide (RNC) rather than that of a true cyanide (RCN). Neither the nitriles nor the isonitriles, however, show the intensely poisonous action of HCN , this only becoming apparent when HCN is again liberated by the organism. The lower members of the series of fatty nitriles, $\text{CH}_3\text{—CN}$ and $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{—CN}$, are less poisonous than the higher members. Cyanacetic acid, $\text{CN—CH}_2\text{—COOH}$, is practically non-toxic. Cyanogen chloride, CN—Cl , is very poisonous, as it readily yields HCN .

Potassium sulphocyanide, KCNS , is weakly poisonous for warm-blooded animals, but sodium nitroprusside, $\text{Na}_2\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_5\text{NO}$, causes death with the appearance of prussic acid poisoning. In sodium ferrocyanide, $\text{Na}_4\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6$, neither the iron nor the CN group has any physiological action, and sodium platincyane shows no poisonous effect, though the ordinary platinum salts are very poisonous.

Effect of Aldehyde Groups.—The physiological action of aldehydes appears to be closely related to their chemical reactivity. Formaldehyde, $\text{H}.\text{CHO}$, is very reactive, and has a strong irritant action on the mucous membranes, together with powerful antiseptic properties and a hardening action on the tissues. Acetaldehyde, $\text{CH}_3.\text{CHO}$, shows the action of the aldehyde group combined with that of the methyl group, as it produces an excitation followed by anæsthesia. The action of its polymeride, paraldehyde, $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O})_3$, is stronger and more continued, and that of the higher polymeride, metaldhyde, $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O})_n$, is more toxic.

By the entrance of hydroxyl groups into the aldehyde molecule, and also by the condensation of these substances to form aldols, the reactivity of these bodies is appreciably depressed, and so also is their physiological action. The sugars, for example, are physiologically inert. Most of the aromatic aldehydes are of low toxicity, as they are readily oxidized to

the corresponding acids, which are usually very inert. It is only in the case of strongly irritant substances that poisonous properties appear, owing to their action on the mucous membrane.

Effect of Ketones.—The ketones in general possess pharmacological properties similar to those which characterize the corresponding alcohols, *i.e.* they have a narcotic action. In the case of the aliphatic ketones this is fairly well marked, on account of the alkyl groups, and a hypnotic action is also shown by the mixed ketones, such as acetophenone, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CO—CH}_3$ (hypnone). A large number of hypnotic substances of a more complex constitution contain a ketonic group, usually together with an ethyl group. These will be discussed in the section dealing with the hypnotics.

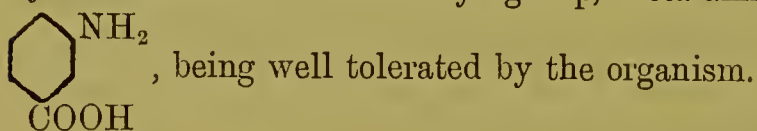
Effect of Acid Groups.—It has already been pointed out how the entrance of acid groups into the molecule causes a marked decrease or a total cessation of the physiological action. Phenol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—OH}$, is poisonous, but phenyl-sulphuric acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—O—SO}_2\text{—OH}$, is harmless. Morphine has a very powerful physiological action and is very poisonous, but morphine-sulphuric acid is quite inactive. In both these cases the diminution of the physiological effect is accompanied by the disappearance of a free hydroxyl group, the hydrogen of which is replaced by the $\text{SO}_2\text{—OH}$ group. It might therefore be thought that this change is due to the removal of the anchoring group, but the entrance of acid groups has the same effect in many substances where it produces no change in the anchoring or active group. For example, substances containing a nitro group are strongly poisonous, but the entrance of acid groups lowers or destroys the toxicity without altering the nitro group. For example, Martius yellow (dinitro-naphthol) is markedly toxic, but its sulphonic acid (naphthol yellow S) is harmless. Nitrobenzene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—NO}_2$, is poisonous,

but nitrobenzoic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NO}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{COOH} \end{array}$, is harmless. It does not

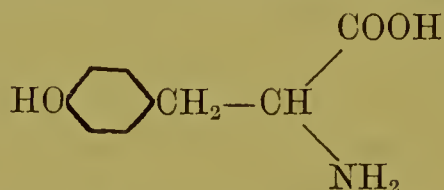
matter whether the sulphonic acid group is united to carbon or to oxygen, both $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—O—SO}_2\text{—OH}$ and $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{OH} \\ \diagdown \text{SO}_2\text{.OH} \end{array}$ being innocuous.

The entrance of carboxyl (COOH) groups into the aromatic

nucleus is of great importance from the point of view of the synthesis of drugs, as it generally lowers the toxicity so very much. Benzene itself can be tolerated in doses of eight grams per day, but from twelve to sixteen grams of benzoic acid per day can be eliminated by the organism as hippuric acid, and still larger quantities can be administered without toxic effects, the excess being eliminated unchanged.¹ Aniline, which is more toxic than benzene itself, is rendered practically harmless by the entrance of a carboxyl group, meta-amino-benzoic acid,



On the other hand, physiological properties which have been lost by the entrance of acid groups can be restored if these groups are esterified. For example, tyrosine,



is not poisonous, but the hydrochloride of its ethyl ester has been shown to be strongly poisonous in the case of dogs.²

The addition of acid radicles to active basic substances is of special importance for the preparation of synthetic drugs. This is especially the case with regard to the acetylation of the amino group. By this means, the basicity is weakened and the action of the substance retarded, as it is only after hydrolysis that the active basic portion of the compound becomes free to exhibit its physiological effect. The acid group is usually physiologically inert, and the choice of the particular acid group to be used to combine with the amino group is governed chiefly by the physical properties of the compound thus formed. Lactyl derivatives are, as a rule, more soluble than acetyl, and these in their turn are more soluble than benzoyl, while salicyl derivatives are usually almost insoluble. Now, in most cases the speed of hydrolysis depends chiefly on the solubility, and hence the *rapidity* with which a drug of this type acts depends on the acid group, but the *nature* of the action is

¹ Nencki, *A. c. P. P.*, 30 (1892), 300.

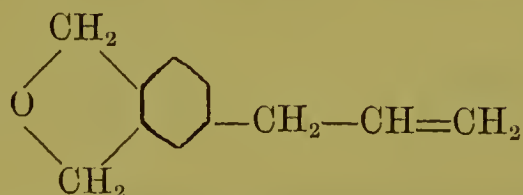
² Kohn, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 14 (1890), 189.

usually not affected thereby. Usually, acetyl derivatives are the most convenient, not only because they are the cheapest to prepare, but also because the lactyl derivative is sometimes too rapidly hydrolyzed, whilst the benzoyl derivatives are generally hydrolyzed so slowly that they are excreted largely unchanged, and therefore without having exerted the desired effect. The only one of the previously mentioned acids that has a marked physiological action of its own is salicylic acid, but the salicyl derivatives of basic compounds are so insoluble that they usually escape from the organism almost entirely unchanged, and therefore are therapeutically useless.

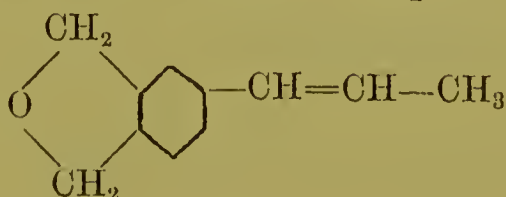
The presence of the benzoyl group is of great importance in a large number of substances, especially in some of the alkaloids. Ecgonine methyl-ester is without any noteworthy action, but its benzoyl derivative, cocaine, has a very important physiological action, producing local anæsthesia and other powerful effects. These facts are discussed in another section, so need not be enlarged upon at present.

Effect of Unsaturated Linkages. — Unsaturated compounds are usually far more toxic than the corresponding saturated ones, a fact which is in accordance with their greater chemical reactivity. For example, propyl alcohol $\text{CH}_3\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—OH}$, is a narcotic, and causes intoxication, but is not really poisonous, whereas allyl alcohol, $\text{CH}_2\text{=CH—CH}_2\text{—OH}$, has strong poisonous properties, but is without the narcotic action which is characteristic of the saturated alcohols. Indeed, the unsaturated alcohols are distinguished by their highly poisonous character.

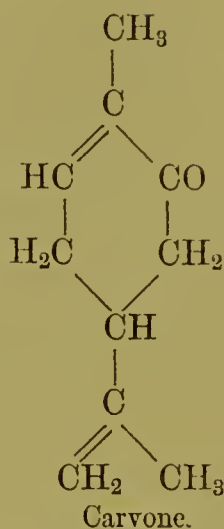
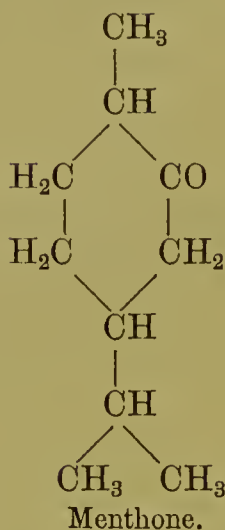
Safrole,



is far more poisonous than any other ethereal oil that has been experimented upon, and the isomeric compound, iso-safrole,

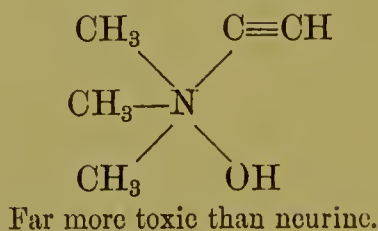
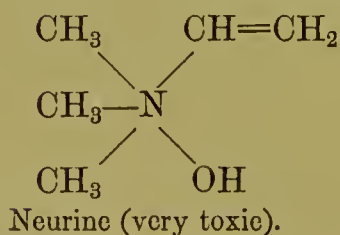
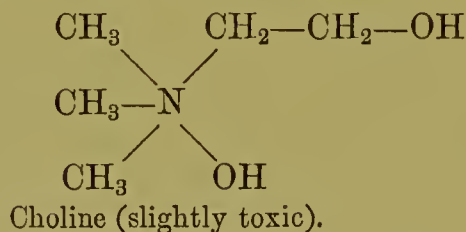


is also poisonous, but not so strongly as safrol. Menthone is

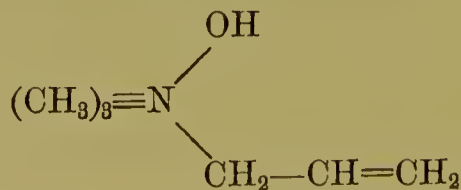


far less toxic than carvone, which differs from it only in containing two unsaturated linkages, and acrolein, $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$, and crotonic aldehyde, $\text{CH}_3-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$, are far more toxic than the corresponding saturated compounds.

The influence of increasing unsaturation is well illustrated by the following series of compounds:—¹



Allyl-tri-methyl-ammonium hydroxide,



¹ Schmidt, *Annalen*, **267** (1892), 249.

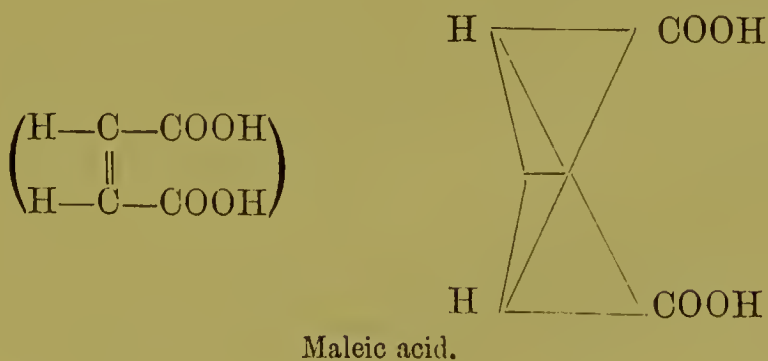
a homologue of neurine, is exceptional in being only slightly poisonous.

Effect of Molecular Weight, Isomerism, etc.—Polymerides often show a different action from that of the original substance, but up to the present no regularities have been observed.

The effect of increasing molecular weight in the series of the paraffins and the alcohols has already been referred to. In the substituted ureas, the narcotic effect increases with the number of carbon atoms in the branched side chain in the same way as it does in the alcohols, and a similar effect is found in the case of the pinacones.

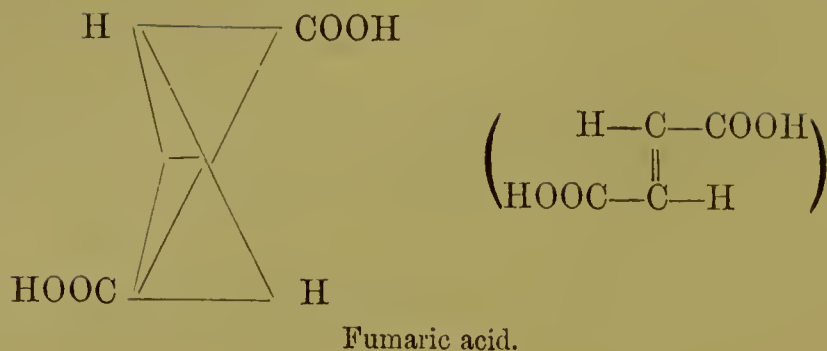
The fatty acids are generally innocuous. Oxalic acid is poisonous, but the toxicity rapidly diminishes as the series is ascended. In the case of the homologues of pyridine, the toxicity increases very rapidly with increase of molecular weight. Pyridine, C_5H_5N , is the weakest in its action, and the intensity of toxic effect increases as the series is ascended through picoline, lutidine, and collidine, to parvoline, $C_5HN(CH_3)_4$, which is eight times as strong in its action as pyridine.

There is often a surprisingly great difference in the activity of stereo-isomerides. Isopilocarpine is probably stereo-isomeric with pilocarpine itself,¹ but it is far weaker in its physiological action. Maleic acid is toxic for dogs, but its stereo-isomeride, fumaric acid, is said to be harmless.²



¹ Jowett, *J. C. S.*, **87** (1905), 794.

² Ishizuka, *Bull. Coll. Agr., Tokyo*, **2** (1897), 484.



The difference may, however, be due to the different degree of ionization, maleic acid being the more highly ionized of the two.

In the case of stereo-isomerides, which are optically active, marked differences in the physiological action are very often encountered. At this point it will suffice to mention briefly a few examples. Atropine (racemic hyoscyamine) differs in some respects from *laevo*-hyoscyamine,¹ and *laevo*-nicotine is twice as poisonous as the *dextro* variety.² One of the most striking examples of this type is that of adrenaline, the natural *laevo* form being about eleven or twelve times as active as the *dextro*.³ Optical isomerides sometimes show differences in taste or smell, *dextro*-asparagine, for example, being sweet, and *laevo*-asparagine tasteless.⁴

The change in physiological properties which accompanies the change from a plane to a spatial configuration in the case of certain compounds of nitrogen, phosphorus, arsenic, and sulphur, is discussed in Chapters I. and VI.

Differences are often met with in the physiological action of ortho, meta, and para compounds, and in some types of compounds regularities can be traced. It has been suggested that para compounds are more poisonous than ortho,⁵ and this is often the case, but in many compounds the reverse is true, ortho nitro-benzaldehyde, for instance, being more toxic than para. In fact, although many differences have been noted between the physiological effects of isomeric benzene derivatives, no general regularities have been traced between the ortho,

¹ Cushny, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **30** (1904), 193.

² Mayor, *Ber.*, **38** (1905) 597.

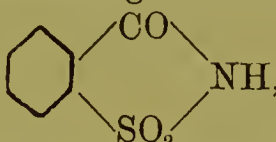
³ Cushny, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **38** (1908), 259.

⁴ Piutti, *C. R.*, **103** (1886), 134.

⁵ Bakorny, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, **36** (1887), 272.

meta, and para compounds, and between the different tri-substituted derivatives.

In this connection it is interesting to note that saccharin,

which is an ortho compound, , is five hundred

times sweeter than sugar, while the corresponding para compound is tasteless. Some ingenious theories have been advanced to account for the sweet taste of certain compounds, but they are none of them very satisfactory and call for no detailed account.

Closely related isomerides, other than benzene position-isomerides, often show remarkable differences in their physiological action. Cocaine differs from its isomeride *α*-cocaine only in having a (.CO.OCH_3) group and a ($\text{.O.CO.C}_6\text{H}_5$) group on adjacent carbon atoms, while in *α*-cocaine these groups are on the same carbon atom. Nevertheless, *α*-cocaine is lacking the characteristic local anæsthetic action of cocaine itself (Chapter VII.).

CHAPTER III

THE CHEMICAL CHANGES OF DRUGS IN THE ORGANISM

VERY valuable information can often be obtained by a study of the changes which a substance undergoes in the animal body. By this means an insight into the mode of action of a drug can often be obtained, and a method of preparing and using a less toxic substance can often be devised, owing to the fact that the usual alteration of drugs by the metabolic processes in the organism is in the direction of the conversion of an active and poisonous drug into a less active and less poisonous one. This is usually accomplished by the production of bodies of a more acidic character than the original substance. In some cases this is brought about by a simple process of oxidation, but more often a substance is formed, usually by oxidation but sometimes by reduction, which is then transformed into an inert salt of an acid by means of a synthetic process. The most important of these synthetic processes taking place in the organism are union with sulphuric acid, glycuronic acid or amino-acetic acid. Before considering these synthetic processes, attention must be given to the changes which precede them, by means of which substances are formed which are capable of readily uniting with sulphuric acid, glycuronic acid, etc.

The chemical processes taking place in the organism consist of hydrolytic cleavages (saponification of esters, etc.), in the alimentary canal, and more profound changes of oxidation, and sometimes reduction, in the tissues or blood. In the case of the changes taking place in the alimentary canal, it is found that the saliva acts on but few drugs, owing to the short time that they remain in contact with it, and the fact that only one enzyme—diastase—is present. The contrary is the case in the stomach, in which many drugs can be absorbed, and

where unpleasant by-effects are often manifested. For this reason, a great proportion of the work in connection with the synthesis of new drugs consist in modifying previously existing compounds so that they are rendered incapable of being absorbed or of exerting any action in the stomach. The gastric juices contain hydrochloric and other acids, and also an enzyme, pepsin, but it is to their *acid* character that their action on drugs is mostly due. Salts of organic acids are generally decomposed into the free acid and a chloride of the base, but esters and similar compounds are, in the great majority of cases, undecomposed by the gastric contents.

In the small intestine, substances enter an *alkaline* medium and come into contact with the pancreatic enzyme, trypsin. The latter has a marked hydrolyzing action on esters, anilides, and similar bodies, and it is only those substances which are hydrolyzed with great difficulty by all ordinary reagents that escape hydrolysis in the intestine. After saponification in the intestine, the components are able to exert their specific action, and advantage is taken of this fact in preparing derivatives the components of which would exert unpleasant by-effects on the stomach, but which remain undecomposed in that organ, and are then hydrolyzed in the intestine, enabling the components to exert their desired effect.

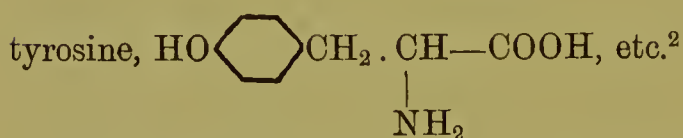
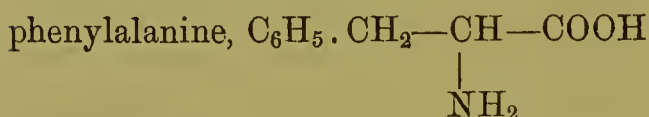
For example, salicylic acid and its salts often give rise to unpleasant symptoms in the stomach, but acetyl-salicylic acid is inert and passes through the stomach unchanged. In the intestine it is hydrolyzed into sodium salicylate, which can then exert its useful action, and sodium acetate, which is inert.

Most aliphatic substances are oxidized to carbon dioxide, water, and urea, but there are numerous exceptions. Many substances are oxidized to acids, but aldehydes are never formed by oxidation in the body. On the contrary, aldehydes are often reduced to the corresponding alcohol, chloral, $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$, for example, being reduced to trichlorethyl alcohol, $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$.¹ Many substances containing methyl groups are oxidized with difficulty; isopropyl alcohol is said to be partly oxidized to acetone and partly excreted

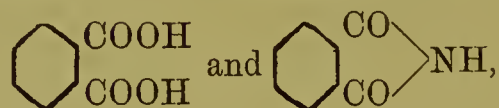
¹ *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 6 (1882), 440; *Ber.*, 15 (1882), 1019; *Pflüger's Archiv.*, 28 (1882), 506; 33 (1884), 221.

unchanged. Acetone itself is oxidized with difficulty, methyl-ethyl-ketone more readily, while diethyl-ketone is almost completely oxidized.¹ Primary and secondary alcohols are readily oxidized, but tertiary and all halogen-substituted alcohols are difficultly oxidized. Similarly, fatty acids are completely oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, but the chloro-substituted acids are not at all easily oxidized.

Aromatic compounds are not so readily oxidized by the organism as the aliphatic compounds. In all but a few exceptional cases, the aromatic nucleus remains unchanged, the process of oxidation being confined to the side chains. In those substances which contain a side chain of three carbon atoms, the middle one of which bears an amino group, the substance is completely oxidized. For example—



In dogs also, phthalic acid and phthalimide—



are completely oxidized.³ Many aromatic compounds are oxidized in the organism by the entrance of an hydroxyl group in the para position to a previously present substituent group, but if the para position is already occupied, no hydroxylation takes place in the animal body. For example, aniline is oxidized to para-aminophenol,⁴ $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$. Ortho compounds are far more readily oxidized than para or meta. Aldehyde groups are oxidized to carboxyl groups, and in general a substance is usually oxidized to a carboxylic acid if this process takes place

¹ Schwarz, *A. e. P. P.*, 40 (1898), 178.

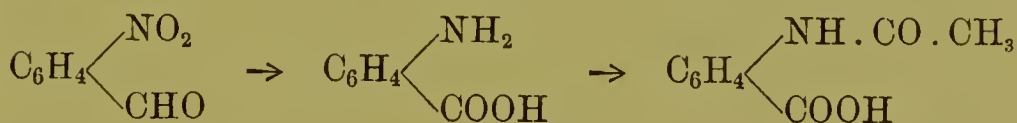
² *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 7 (1882), 23; 8 (1883), 63, 65; 10 (1886), 130; 11 (1887), 485; 14 (1890), 189.

³ Juvalta, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 13 (1889), 26; Mosso, *A. e. P. P.*, 26 (1890), 267.

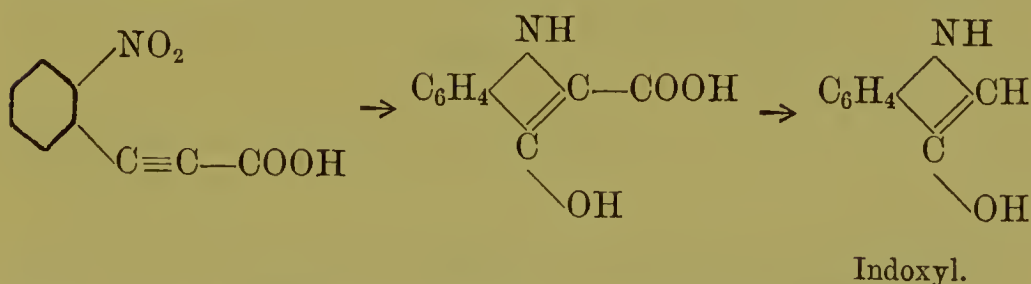
⁴ Schmiedeberg, *A. e. P. P.*, 8 (1878), 1.

at all readily. Toluene, for example, gives benzoic acid, but benzene, on the other hand, is oxidized to phenol.¹ The fate of phenol and similar substances in the organism will be discussed later.

Reduction of a substance in the organism sometimes takes place, although it is a much more unusual process than oxidation. An interesting example is furnished by chloral, $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$, which is reduced by the organism to trichlorethyl alcohol, $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$,² a reduction which can only be carried out with extreme difficulty in the laboratory. Quinone is reduced to hydroquinone. Reduction of a nitro group to an amino group is exceptional, nitrobenzene, for instance, never being reduced to aniline, but this type of action sometimes does occur. For example, both meta- and para-nitro-benzaldehydes undergo reduction of the nitro group, accompanied by oxidation of the aldehyde group, the product finally formed by the organism being the acetyl derivative of the corresponding amino acid—³



Another interesting example of this type of change is furnished by ortho-nitrophenyl-propionic acid, which is transformed by the organism into indoxyl, this being excreted as potassium-indoxyl-sulphate—⁴



Picric acid is partially reduced to dinitro-amino-phenol.



¹ Dubois *Arch.* (1867), 340; *Pflüger's Archiv.*, 12 (1876), 148.

² *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 6 (1882), 440; *Ber.*, 15 (1882), 1019; *Pflüger's Archiv.*, 28 (1882), 506; 33 (1884), 221.

³ R. Cohn, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 17 (1893), 285; 18 (1894), 133.

⁴ Hoppe-Seyler, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 7 (1882), 178.

⁵ Walko, *A. e. P. P.*, 46 (1901), 181.

The final stage in the transformation of drugs into inert substances consists in the formation of acidic substances from the products of oxidation, reduction, etc., by means of the previously mentioned syntheses with sulphuric acid, glycuronic acid, etc. Other synthetic processes sometimes met with are the formation of urea derivatives and sulphocyanides, and more rarely, the introduction of acetyl or methyl groups, and the production of cystine derivatives. Usually no single synthetic process takes place to the exclusion of all others, but, on the contrary, a substance is usually excreted in more than one way, for example, as a glycuronic acid derivative, and also as a sulphonic ester.

Sulphonic Esters.—The sulphuric acid required for these syntheses may be formed by the oxidation of albuminous bodies containing sulphur. It has already been pointed out that phenolic substances are often formed by the oxidation of aromatic compounds, and most of these phenolic compounds are excreted primarily combined with sulphuric acid as alkali salts, and secondarily combined with glycuronic acid. Phenol itself is found in the urine as the sodium salt of phenylsulphuric acid, $C_6H_5 \cdot O \cdot SO_2 \cdot ONa$, a perfectly non-toxic substance. Similar syntheses take place with other hydroxyl derivatives, but if these themselves are non-toxic, they are excreted unchanged without undergoing a synthesis with sulphuric or glycuronic acids. For example, homogentisinic

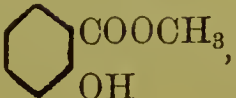
acid, $\text{HO} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{Cyclohexane ring} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \end{array} \text{OH} \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$, which is non-toxic, is eliminated

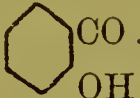
unchanged, but the corresponding gentisinic acid, $\text{HO} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{Cyclohexane ring} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \end{array} \text{OH} \cdot COOH$,

which is toxic, is eliminated partly as the non-toxic sulphuric acid derivative.¹ The entrance of acid groups into phenols, with the corresponding loss of toxicity, destroys the property of combining with sulphuric or glycuronic acids, as in the case of salicylic acid, which is eliminated in combination with amino-acetic acid in the same way as benzoic acid (*i.e.* it forms a compound analogous to hippuric acid).² Loss of acid

¹ Likhatscheff, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 21 (1896), 422.

² See this chapter, last section.

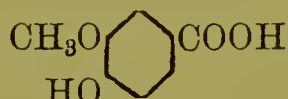
character causes this property of combining with sulphuric acid to reappear, and methyl salicylate, , and

salicyl amide, , are found in the urine as sulphuric

acid derivatives.¹ Introduction of more hydroxyl groups also causes this property to reappear, as in the case of gentisinic acid, and also protocatechuic and vanillic acids; but veratric



Protocatechuic acid.

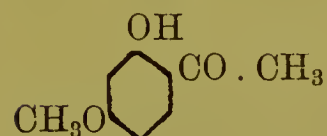


Vanillic acid.

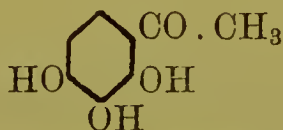


Veratric acid.

acid, which contains no free hydroxyl, does not unite with sulphuric acid. Aromatic ketones are usually oxidized to acids, but if they contain an hydroxyl group the formation of esters with sulphuric or glycuronic acids takes place, to the exclusion of the oxidation of the ketone to the corresponding acid. For example, acetophenone, $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$, is oxidized to benzoic acid,² but paeonol, gallacetophenone, and resacetophenone



Paeonol.



Gallacetophenone.



Resacetophenone.

are found in the urine as sulphuric and glycuronic acid derivatives.³

Glycuronic Acid Derivatives.—This acid, which has the constitution $CHO-(CH \cdot OH)_4-COOH$, is of great interest, as a very large number of poisonous substances are found in the urine as derivatives of it. It seems likely that in the first instance combination takes place between the drug and glucose, the $-CH_2OH$ group of which is then oxidized to $COOH$, with the formation of glycuronic acid. In the case of aliphatic

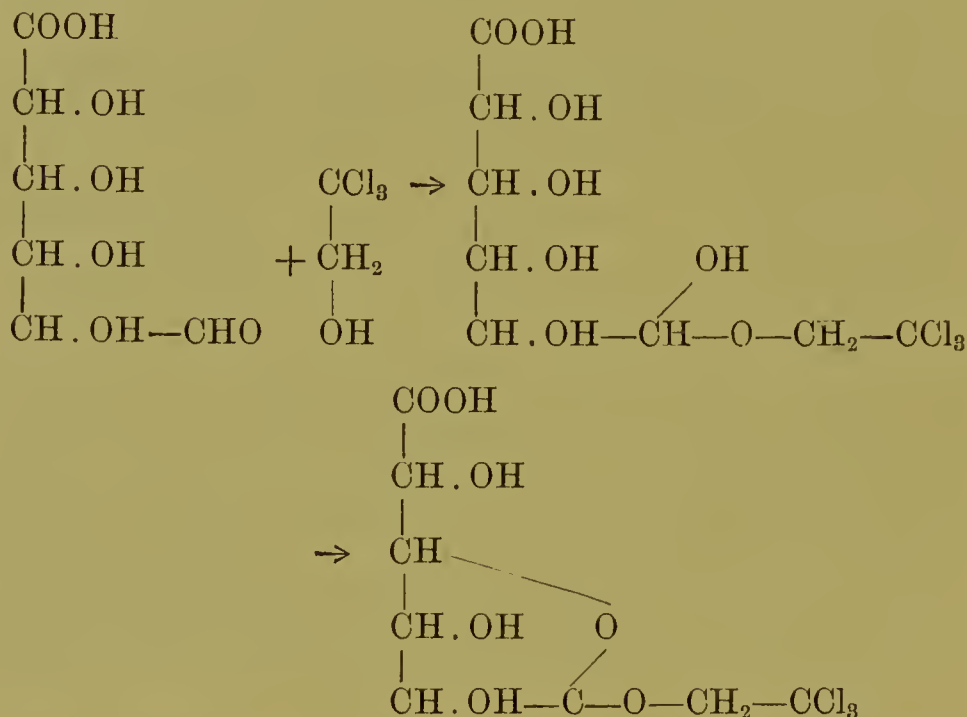
¹ Baumann and Herter, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **1** (1878), 255.

² Nencki, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, **18** (1878), 288.

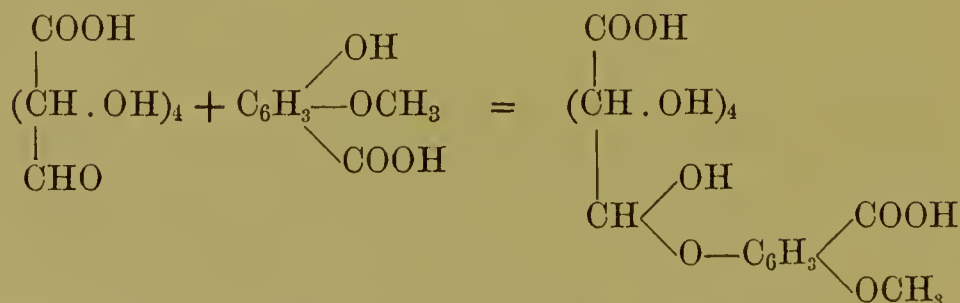
³ Nencki, *Ber.*, **27** (1894), 2737.

compounds, the resulting compounds are formed with elimination of water, and are probably analogous in structure to the single glucosides.

For example, chloral is reduced to trichlorethyl alcohol, which then combines with glycuronic acid in the following manner:—



In the case of some aromatic compounds, combination can occur without the elimination of water. For example, it has been shown that vanillin is oxidized to vanillic acid, which then combines with glycuronic acid—¹



Thymol and carbostyryl have been shown to behave in a similar manner.

Derivatives of Amino-Acetic Acid.—Combination between

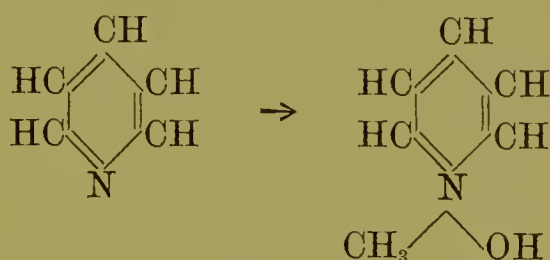
¹ Kotake, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 45 (1905), 320.

glycine, $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$, and benzoic acid takes place in the kidney, with formation of hippuric acid—¹



This synthesis is of great importance, as so many compounds are oxidized in the body to benzoic acid, and it is also typical of a large number of precisely similar syntheses undergone by other carboxylic acids, such as salicylic acid, para-hydroxy-benzoic acid, chloro-, nitro-, and bromo-benzoic acids, anisic acid, naphthoic acid, and many others.

Other synthetic processes that may be mentioned are the formation of the less toxic sulphocyanides from the toxic nitriles,² the transformation of pyridine into methyl pyridyl ammonium hydroxide,³



and the introduction of an acetyl group into a compound, as in the previously mentioned case of meta-nitro-benzaldehyde, which is transformed into meta-acetyl-amino-benzoic acid.

¹ Boucis and Ure, *Berzelius Jahresb.*, **22** (1843), 567.

² *A. e. P. P.*, **34** (1894), 247, 281.

³ His, *A. e. P. P.*, **22** (1887), 253; R. Cohn, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **18**, (1894), 112.

CHAPTER IV

NARCOTICS AND GENERAL ANÆSTHETICS

GENERAL THEORIES OF THE ACTION OF NARCOTIC DRUGS

UP to within quite recent times, the only narcotics in use were the various preparations of opium, and all of these suffered from the great drawback of being dangerous in the doses that were necessary to produce certain sleep, and of sometimes causing unpleasant by-effects. The discovery of many synthetic substances having a powerful narcotic action, and almost free from the dangers and other drawbacks of preparations containing morphine, is one of the great triumphs of the application of synthetic chemistry to pharmacology.

Still more important are those substances which are used as general anæsthetics. These compounds do not differ fundamentally from the other narcotics in their physiological action or chemical constitution, but they are usually volatile substances which are administered by inhalation, so that their effect can be rapidly produced, and the duration easily regulated. On the other hand, for use as a narcotic it is more convenient to employ non-volatile substances capable of offering resistance to oxidation by the organism, and which are therefore slower and more prolonged in their action.

The aliphatic hydrocarbons possess narcotic properties, and these are increased by the introduction of an hydroxyl group to form alcohols. The introduction of more hydroxyl groups, as in glycerol, causes the narcotic action to disappear, the hydroxyl merely playing the part of an "anchoring" group. On the other hand, the narcotic action of many different substances is associated with the presence of alkyl groups, especially ethyl groups. It therefore appears that in the alcohols, the alkyl group, and not the hydroxyl group, is the active portion of the molecule. Replacement of hydrogen

atoms in a hydrocarbon by halogen, and especially by chlorine, also greatly increases the narcotic action of the substance, and in these cases the chlorine actually seems to play an important part in the action of the substance, because unlike the case of the alcohols, the strength of the action tends to increase with an increase in the number of chlorine atoms in the compound. This narcotic property is characteristic only of the aliphatic halogen compounds; in the case of the halogen derivatives of benzene it is absent.

The inhalation general anæsthetics comprise, therefore, two groups, those in which the action is associated with the presence of halogen in aliphatic combination, and those in which it is associated only with the presence of alkyl groups. The narcotics likewise include substances of these types, and also many compounds, the narcotic action of which seems to be connected with the presence of the carbonyl group (—CO—) in the molecule, and in some cases with the presence of a ring system containing basic nitrogen.

The foregoing statements will show that the anæsthetics and narcotics comprise a number of substances, which, from the chemical point of view, have really very little in common. Attempts have therefore been made to find a relation between some of the physical properties of these substances, and as a result, some interesting facts have been brought to light, which tend to show that in many cases there is a close parallelism between the hypnotic action and certain physical properties of the substance. Not only is this the case, but these physical theories of narcosis are superior to any purely chemical theory that can be devised, in that they throw some light on the mode of action of the hypnotic substances.

This is well illustrated by the work of Overton,¹ and the suggestive theory that has been put forward by Hans Meyer.²

It has been shown by Overton that substances may be divided into different groups according to the rapidity with which they diffuse into protoplasm, the rate of diffusion as a general rule depending on the solubility of the substances in fat, lecithin, and "lipoid" substances of that type. If S_f denotes the solubility of a substance in fat, and S_w that of the same

¹ "Studien über Narkose." Jena, 1901.

² Hans Meyer, *A. e. P. P.*, 42 (1901), 109; and 42 (1901), 119 (Baum).

substance in water, then the ratio $\frac{S_f}{S_w}$ is called the distribution coefficient of the substance, and according to Overton, the value of this coefficient determines the velocity of diffusion into the cell protoplasm. Now, it was pointed out by Overton and Meyer that anæsthetics and narcotics are generally substances which diffuse rapidly, and therefore these compounds should possess a high distribution coefficient. Meyer compared the aliphatic narcotics, and found that the narcotic power of these was roughly proportional to the magnitude of the distribution coefficient. This fact is sometimes expressed by saying that the strength of the narcotic action of a compound is dependent on its solubility in lipoid substance. This is not strictly true, as it depends not so much on its actual solubility in the lipoid substance as upon the ratio of its solubility in lipoids to that of its solubility in water.

Meyer compared the narcotic power of these substances by finding the smallest concentration which would produce a definite physiological effect, and expressed the values as fractions of the normal solution (one gram mol. litre), calling these the "liminal values." These "liminal values" can be taken as being approximately inversely proportional to the strength of the narcotic action. On comparing them with the distribution coefficient, it is found that they vary in the opposite direction, being small when the distribution coefficient is large, and these results therefore indicate that the strength of the narcotic action of these substances is approximately proportional to the distribution coefficient.

Substance.	Liminal value.	Distribution-coefficient.	Narcotic action.
Dimethyl-sulphone-dimethyl-methane*		0.106	Very slight.
Diethyl-sulphone-methane†		0.151	Slight.
Sulphonal	0.006	1.115	Marked.
Trional	0.0018	4.46	More marked.
Tetronal	0.0013	4.04	"
Butyl-chloral-hydrate	0.002	1.59	"
Bromal-hydrate	0.002	0.66	"
Chloral-hydrate	0.02	0.22	"
Ethyl-urethane	0.04	0.14	"
Methyl-urethane	0.4	0.04	"
Monacetin	0.5	0.06	"
Diacetin	0.015	0.23	"
Triacetin	0.010	0.30	"

* $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3)_2$.

† $\text{CH}_2(\text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$.

In the preceding table the substances are arranged together in accordance with their chemical nature, but in order to show the close parallelism of the narcotic effect and the distribution coefficient, it is worth while arranging them in order of magnitude.

Substance.	Distribution-coefficient.	Liminal value.
Trional	4·46	0·0018
Tetronal	4·04	0·0013
Butyl-chloral-hydrate	1·59	0·002
Sulphonal	1·11	0·006
Bromal-hydrate	0·66	0·002
Triacetin	0·30	0·010
Diacetin	0·23	0·015
Chloral-hydrate	0·22	0·02
Ethyl-urethane	0·14	0·04
Monacetin	0·06	0·05
Methyl-urethane	0·04	0·4

The substances are here given in order of decreasing distribution-coefficient, and it will be seen that with two slight exceptions, the liminal values of the substances, given in the same order, steadily increase. This result is of great interest, especially as the substances tabulated above represent many widely different chemical types. In the case of the sulphone derivatives, a high distribution-coefficient seems to be connected with the presence of ethyl groups, and it had already been pointed out by Baumann and Kast that the narcotic properties of these compounds depended on the ethyl groups. This will be referred to in greater detail in connection with these compounds.

Not only is the theory of Overton and Meyer well supported by the close parallelism shown above, but numerous subsidiary facts appear to give it additional support. One of these is an observation by Mansfeld¹ that some narcotics have a more powerful action when given to starved animals, the explanation suggested being that in these there is less tissue-fat to absorb some of the narcotic, so that a greater portion of the latter is absorbed by the central-nervous system. No doubt, however, an alternative explanation could be offered.

There are nevertheless a good many facts appearing to show

¹ Mansfeld, *Centralbl. für Physiol.*, 20 (1906), 664.

that this theory is incomplete and needs some modification, before it can be applied to all cases. For example, the peripheral nerves contain a large amount of "lipoid" substance, but they are much less affected by the aliphatic narcotics.

It has also been pointed out by Cushny¹ that many aromatic compounds have a high distribution-coefficient, but are without narcotic action. A possible explanation of these facts is suggested by the views of Traube, according to which it is the osmotic permeability of a substance which is of primary importance in determining its narcotic action. In support of this view, it is pointed out that pyridine, nicotine, and antipyrine rapidly penetrate the membranes, although their distribution-coefficients are less than unity. Traube considers that surface tension is the force producing osmosis, and he therefore concludes that surface tension and narcotic power should run parallel. This was found to be the case with a large number of narcotics of varied types. It certainly seems reasonable to suppose that rapid penetration of the cells should be the most essential condition for enabling a substance to exert its effect on the interior of those cells. When the substance has once gained an entrance into the cell, its solubility in the cell "lipoids" may be an important factor in determining its narcotic power. The theories of Traube and Overton-Meyer are therefore not altogether antagonistic, and both of them are probably concerned with important facts underlying the mode of action of hypnotic substances.

Moore and Roaf² have studied the solubilities of chloroform and certain other anæsthetics in solutions of blood serum and hæmoglobin, and have found them to be considerably higher than in ordinary saline solution or in pure water. The curves connecting the vapour-pressure and concentration of chloroform in serum or hæmoglobin solutions do not correspond to the normal behaviour of a simple solution, but show evidence of association between the solvent and the dissolved substance. Moore and Roaf therefore consider that anæsthetics form unstable compounds or aggregates with the proteins of the tissue cells, which exist only so long as the partial pressure of

¹ "Text-book of Pharmacology," p. 128. 1904.

² Moore and Roaf, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **73** (1904), 382; *Proc. Roy. Soc. B.*, **77** (1906), 86.

the anæsthetic in the blood is maintained, and that anæsthesia is due to a paralysis of the chemical activities of the protoplasm as a result of the formation of such aggregations. The curves obtained do not point to the formation of definite chemical compounds, but are more of the nature of absorption curves.

The action of certain substances, such as alcohol, cannot be explained by the foregoing theories. Alcohol is miscible with water in all proportions, and is only slightly soluble in fats, but this need occasion no surprise when it is borne in mind that alcohol does not really belong to the same class of substances as sulphonal and inert bodies of that type, as it exerts some action on proteins and is oxidized in the body. The action of alcohol, is therefore, probably specific, and of a different kind from that of sulphonal, etc.

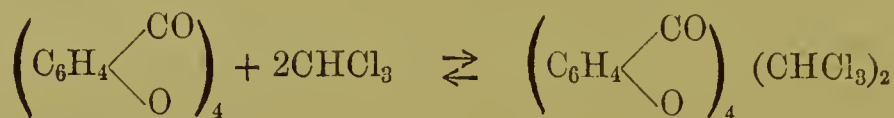
A theory, according to which narcosis is due to deprivation of oxygen, has been suggested by Baglioni.¹ It is based on the fact that in the case of various aromatic compounds, the paralyzing action of the substance is inversely proportional to the amount of oxygen already in the side chain, and that deprivation of oxygen by breathing inert gases, such as carbon dioxide, produces symptoms not unlike those of chloroform narcosis. In support of this view, it might be pointed out that Herter has shown that chloroform, ether, and chloral-hydrate diminish the oxidizing capacity of the tissues. This hypothesis indicates a possible mode of action of the narcotics after they have once entered the cell, the preceding theories indicating the conditions which determine their entrance into the cell substance.

HALOGEN ANÆSTHETICS AND HYPNOTICS.

The most widely used compound of this type is chloroform, which shares with ether the distinction of being the most widely used anæsthetic. The deaths that occasionally take place when chloroform is used may in some cases be due to decomposition products such as phosgene, but it was formerly thought that these were impurities present in the chloroform to start with, and hence methods were devised to purify the chloroform very carefully when it was manufactured. Pictet

¹ Baglioni, *Zeitschr. allg. Physiologie*, 3 (1903), 313.

did this by freezing it and centrifuging away the liquid. Very pure chloroform was prepared by Anschütz by taking advantage of the interesting fact that salicylide (obtained by treating salicylic acid with POCl_3 in a neutral solution) forms a crystalline compound with chloroform, giving it up on distillation—



It has been found, however, that pure chloroform is rapidly decomposed by air and moisture, and this decomposition is best hindered by the addition of about 2 per cent. of ethyl alcohol. Oil of turpentine, thymol, and other substances may also be used for this purpose.

Its anæsthetic action appears to be rendered more certain by the addition of a small quantity of ethyl chloride. Ethyl chloride and ethyl bromide have sometimes been used as anæsthetics, and a mixture of these substances with chloroform has been used, under the name of *Somnoform*, but does not possess any special advantage.

The narcotic action of chloroform is closely connected with the amount of chlorine it contains, the entrance of chlorine into the molecule of many aliphatic compounds conferring narcotic properties upon the substances so formed. This fact is illustrated by the following series of compounds:

CH_4	Methane	Without narcotic effect.		
CH_3Cl	Methyl-chloride	Weak	"	"
CH_2Cl_2	Methylene-dichloride	Stronger narcotic action.		
CHCl_3	Chloroform	Strong	"	"
CCl_4	Carbon-tetra-chloride	"	"	"

In this series the intensity and the persistence of the action increase with the amount of chlorine. A similar connection can be traced in the derivatives of aldehyde, acetaldedyde, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$, having a slight narcotic action and trichloraldehyde (chloral), $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$, a very strong one.

Although *carbon tetrachloride* appears to have a stronger narcotic action than chloroform, it has no advantage over it, but on the contrary seems to be too toxic for safe use. Its use by barbers to cleanse the hair has led to accidents, at least one fatal case having been recorded. On the other hand, some of

the other members of this series have been suggested as substitutes for chloroform; methylene dichloride, CH_2Cl_2 , has been recommended, as it produces less vomiting, and methylchloroform, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CCl}_3$, is said to be less dangerous.

The bromine substitution products of the lower hydrocarbons also have narcotic properties. *Bromoform*, (CHBr_3) , is sedative, and has been used to suppress attacks of whooping-cough. Ethyl bromide, $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br})$, has also been used for producing short slight anæsthesia; it is a better anæsthetic and is far less toxic than ethylene-dibromide, the halogen esters of monacid alcohols being generally better anæsthetics and safer than the corresponding esters of diacid alcohols.

Ethyl chloride is used as a general anæsthetic and also as a local one, the latter by spraying it on to the surface to be operated upon. Its use in this case has nothing to do with the presence of chlorine in the molecule, but is due simply to its low boiling-point, the rapid vaporization producing so great a cooling as to cause anæsthesia. Ether is often used in the same way, and methyl-ethyl ether, $\text{CH}_3\text{—O—C}_2\text{H}_5$, which has a very low boiling-point, would be very useful for this purpose, as also would be the lower paraffins.

The volatile general anæsthetics are too transient in their action to be used as hypnotics for continued action, but nevertheless, a compound closely related to chloroform has proved very useful for the latter purpose. It was known that *chloral hydrate*, $(\text{CCl}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})_2)$, is hydrolyzed by alkalies, giving chloroform and alkaline formate, and thinking that a similar action might take place in the body, Liebreich suggested its use as an hypnotic. It was found to possess strong hypnotic properties, but Mering¹ showed that it does not form chloroform in the body, being reduced to trichlorethyl alcohol instead,



It has been suggested that the action of the halogen narcotics is due to the liberation of free halogen in the body,² but there are several facts not in harmony with this view. One of the chief of these is that after administering some of these substances, the amount of alkaline chlorides in the urine

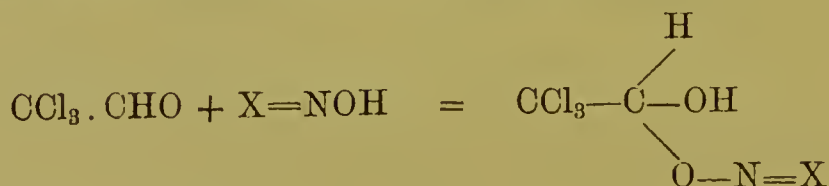
¹ *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 6 (1882), 480.

² Binz, *A. e. P. P.*, 6 (1882), 310.

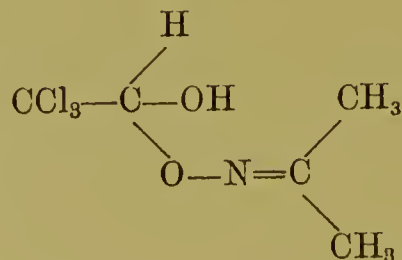
is not increased. For example, after taking chloroform, the amount of chloride is increased, but not after taking chloral-hydrate, carbon tetrachloride, and dichloroacetic ester, $\text{Cl}_2\text{CH}-\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$, all of which have an hypnotic action.¹ On the other hand, trichloroacetic acid splits off chlorine in the body, and has no hypnotic action.

Although chloral hydrate was the first artificial hypnotic to come into general use, it suffers from many drawbacks. Thus, it cannot be injected subcutaneously like morphine, and it has a harmful by-effect on the heart. These drawbacks cannot be got rid of, but attempts have been made to prepare derivatives in which the unpleasant taste and burning feeling in the stomach produced by chloral-hydrate should be absent. All these preparations depend for their use upon the regeneration of chloral itself, as it is found that those which are more stable have no hypnotic action, and therefore all of them must possess the injurious by-effects of chloral itself. For this reason these derivatives of chloral are at a disadvantage compared with the hypnotics of other classes, and they owe their origin rather to the cheapness of chloral and to the fact that it was the first synthetic hypnotic to be brought into use.

Most of these chloral derivatives depend for their production on the reactivity of the aldehyde group in chloral. Condensation products of chloral with oximes have been prepared, but they have not come into practical use. Their formation is in accordance with the general equation—²



Examples are—



¹ Kast, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 11 (1887), 280.

² D. R. P., 66,877.

from acetoxime, and similar compounds from nitroso-naphthol, benzaldoxime, camphor-oxime, etc. Other derivatives include those in which the aldehyde group has been combined with

OH
|
CCl₃—CH—NH₂

basic radicles, *e.g.* chloral-ammonia, CCl₃—CH—NH₂, chloral-imide, CCl₃—CH=NH, etc.

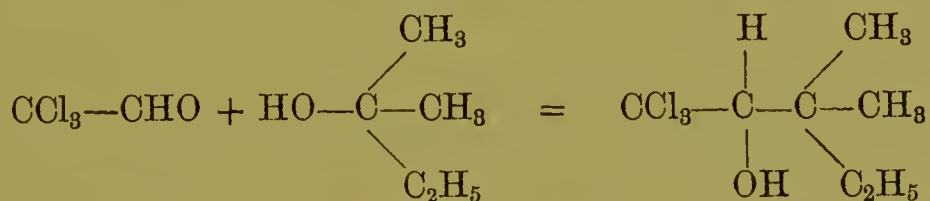
OH
|
CCl₃—CH—NH—CHO

Chloral-formamide, CCl₃—CH—NH—CHO, known as

Chloralamide, is used as a mild hypnotic and sedative.

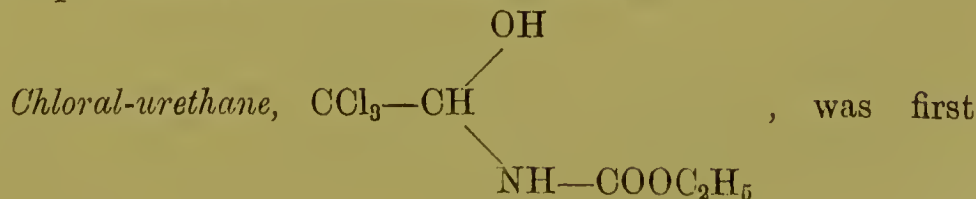
Other compounds have been prepared by combining the aldehyde group in different condensations with sugars, but these are not now used in medicine.

Dormiol is a condensation product of chloral with the hypnotic substance, tertiary amyl alcohol—



It is a liquid with a burning taste and is insoluble in water. It is as poisonous as chloral, and closely resembles it in its action.

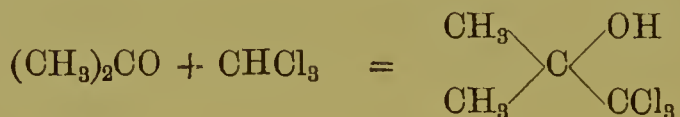
A tasteless solid polymeride of chloral, which possesses strong narcotic properties, has been obtained by the action of aluminium chloride on chloral. Other tasteless compounds have been obtained by combining chloral with orthoform and “new orthoform” (see Chapter VII.). *Hypnal* is formed by the condensation of chloral with antipyrine, but this compound, as well as many others of the same type, has no advantage over a mixture of their components, as they readily split into these, and hence act in the same way as the mixture. The only advantage which can sometimes be claimed for them is that the unpleasant taste of free chloral is masked.



prepared to combine the hypnotic action of chloral with that of urethane. An ethylated derivative of this is soluble in water, and has been given the name of *Somnal*.

Butyl-chloral, $\text{CCl}_3\text{—CH}_2\text{—CHO}$, has a stronger hypnotic action than chloral, but its effect disappears more rapidly, and its irritant action on the stomach is stronger than that of chloral. *Trigemin* is a compound of butyl-chloral hydrate and pyramidon. (See Chapter V.)

Acetone-chloroform (tertiary-trichlor-butyl alcohol), discovered by Willgerodt¹ in 1886, has recently been introduced into medicine under the name of *Chloretone*. It is prepared by adding potash to a mixture of chloroform and acetone, and is a white crystalline solid, melting at 96–97° C.



It has a great advantage over chloral in having no irritant action on the stomach. On the contrary, it has a sedative as well as an anæsthetic action, and very favourable results have attended its use in sea-sickness, vomiting, chorea, etc. It is the chief ingredient in the proprietary medicine known as “Zotos.” It also possesses antiseptic powers, for the sake of which it has been occasionally used, and it has sometimes found employment as a local anæsthetic for the mucous membrane of the larynx.

Bromal hydrate, $\text{CBr}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})_2$, is of no use as an hypnotic, but in large doses it has an anæsthetic action. The corresponding iodine compound, $\text{CI}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})_2$, is toxic, and affects the muscles and nerve-endings, but has only a slight action on the higher centres, and therefore has practically no hypnotic action.

In general, the aromatic halogen compounds have no hypnotic action, but tribromosalol (*Cordal*) appears to be an exception, as it is said to be a good hypnotic.

¹ *Ber.*, 19 (1886), 2455.

HYPNOTICS, THE ACTION OF WHICH IS CONNECTED WITH THE
PRESENCE OF ALKYL GROUPS.

In a large number of compounds the presence of an ethyl group seems to confer upon the substance the power of entering into a close connection with the nervous system. In the case of ethyl alcohol, an excessively large dose is required to produce sleep, but a number of compounds have been discovered which have a hypnotic action in much smaller doses, although their action appears to be due chiefly to the presence of ethyl groups. This difference in their behaviour is probably accounted for by the fact that alcohol is largely oxidized by the tissues, and so only a small fraction of it can produce an hypnotic effect, while these other compounds offer a certain amount of resistance to oxidation, and therefore can exert a more powerful hypnotic action.

Methyl alcohol has no narcotic action; in the other monohydric fatty alcohols, the narcotic action increases with increasing length of the unbranched side chain. In general, primary alcohols are less active than secondary, and these are less active than tertiary. In the case of tertiary alcohols, the strength of the action depends upon the nature of the radicles attached to the tertiary carbon atom. If the radicle is methyl, the action is relatively weak, but if it is ethyl it is stronger, and the strength increases with the number of ethyl

groups. Amylene hydrate, $\text{HO}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow (\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \searrow \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, was introduced

as an hypnotic in 1887, but the alcohols have not been used as general inhalation anæsthetics, owing to the slight volatility of the higher members, which are the only ones possessing marked narcotic properties. On the other hand, the ethers are far more volatile, and ordinary ethyl ether, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{O}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$, is the most widely used general anæsthetic.

If one of the hydrogen atoms in urea be replaced by a tertiary alkyl group, derivatives are obtained possessing a narcotic action. In accordance with the general rule, those containing an ethyl group united to the tertiary carbon atoms

have a greater effect than those which contain only methyl groups in this position. For instance, substances containing

tertiary amyl, $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{—C—CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, or tertiary heptyl, $\text{—C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3$, are more active than those containing tertiary butyl, $\text{—C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$.

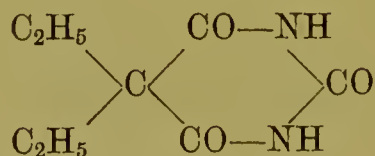
Tertiary-butyl-urea, $\text{CO} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH—C}(\text{CH}_3)_3 \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$, produces sleep in doses of 4 grams; tertiary amyl urea, $\text{CO} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH—C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$, is

an excellent hypnotic, which is both more active and more pleasant to take than amylene hydrate. It is, however, slower in its action on account of its smaller solubility. This substance is completely oxidized in the organism, but symmetrical di-amyl-

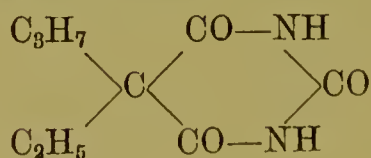
urea, $\text{CO} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH—C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{NH—C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, is a very stable substance, which

passes into the urine unchanged and has no physiological action. Tertiary-heptyl-urea is very slightly soluble. In doses of 1 gram it produces first intoxication and afterwards sleep.

Besides the urea derivatives already mentioned, many other amides possess hypnotic properties, but most of these are uncertain in their action. Of greater importance are the ureides of dibasic acids (cyclic ureides), many of which have strongly marked sedative properties. Thus, diethyl-malonyl-urea—

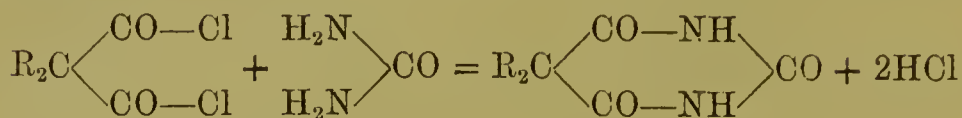


and ethyl-propyl-malonyl urea—



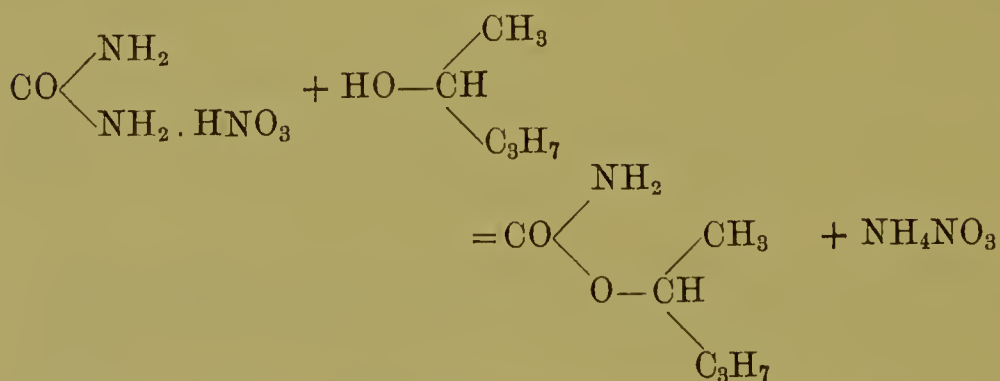
have a strong hypnotic action; whilst dipropyl-malonyl-urea has

the dialkyl malonic acids into chlorides, and then to heat these with urea.¹



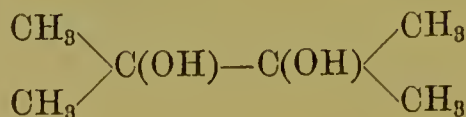
Instead of using alcoholic sodium ethoxide as a condensing agent in the first process, one can employ the metal sodium itself, or its amide or the dry powdered sodium ethoxide.²

The presence of an alkyl group confers hypnotic properties on many of the urethanes. Ethyl urethane itself, $\text{CO} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, is a mild hypnotic but methyl-propyl-carbinol-urethane, known as *Hedonal*, has a stronger hypnotic action. It is not much used, however. It can be prepared by the action of warm methyl-propyl-carbinol on urea nitrate.



This method can be applied to the preparation of other similar compounds, using various secondary alcohols.³ The introduction of an acyl group (such as CO—CH_3) into the amino group of the urethanes lessens their toxicity, but does not otherwise alter their physiological action.

The pinacones show a narcotic action, which is least in the case of dimethyl-pinacone—

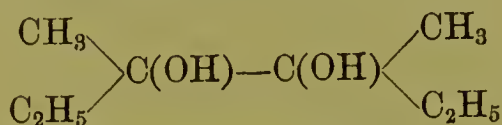


¹ D. R. P., 146,949.

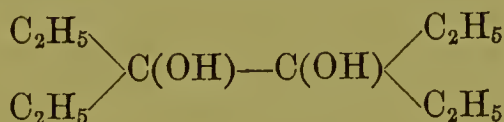
² D. R. P., 147,278, 147,279, 147,280.

³ D. R. P., 114,396.

greater in the case of methyl-ethyl-pinacone—



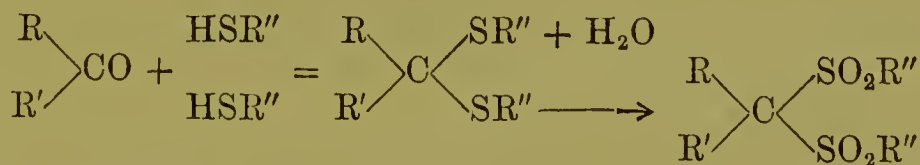
and greatest in the case of diethyl-pinacone—



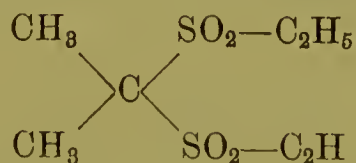
KETONES AND SULPHONES

Most of the ketones have hypnotic properties. Acetone is somewhat similar in its effect to ethyl alcohol; diethyl-ketone, $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CO}$ (propion), is a stronger hypnotic and anæsthetic, but its insolubility and unpleasant taste have prevented its extended use. Benzophenone, $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CO}$, has a slight hypnotic action, but much less than that of the aliphatic ketones. The mixed aromatic and aliphatic ketones have more marked hypnotic properties in virtue of the aliphatic portion of the molecule, acetophenone (hypnone), $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CO—CH}_3$, being a fairly strong hypnotic, while phenyl-ethyl ketone $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CO}\cdot\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$, has a still more powerful action.

Of far greater practical importance are the sulphone derivatives obtained from the ketones by the action of the mercaptans, and subsequent oxidation of the condensation product thus formed—

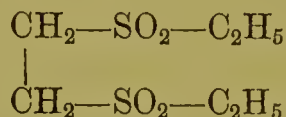


Baumann and Kast discovered that *sulphonal*—



when administered to animals, produced a strong hypnotic

effect. A large number of sulphones were then examined by these investigators, who found¹ that di-sulphones in which the sulphone groups are united to two different carbon atoms, are inert; for example, ethylene-diethyl sulphone—



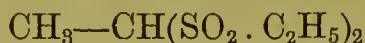
They also found that sulphones derived from methane (*i.e.* those in which the two SO₂ groups are united to a CH₂ group) are inert, as also are those containing methyl groups but no ethyl groups.

E.g. Methylene - dimethyl - sulphone, $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{l} \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \\ \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \end{array}$, is inactive.

Methylene-diethyl-sulphone, $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{l} \text{SO}_2\text{—C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{SO}_2\text{—C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, is inactive.

Ethylidene-dimethyl-sulphone, $\text{CH}_3\text{—CH} \begin{array}{l} \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \\ \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \end{array}$, is inactive.

On the other hand, ethylidene-*diethyl*-sulphone—



has a similar action to that of sulphonal, while the entrance of an *ethyl* group into the central methylene group also brings about the appearance of a narcotic action.

E.g. $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{—CH}(\text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3)_2$, slight narcotic action.

$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ „ „ „

$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagup \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \\ \text{SO}_2\text{—CH}_3 \end{array}$, isomeric with, and similar physio-

logical action to, sulphonal (“reversed” sulphonal).

Trional, $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{SO}_2\text{—C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{SO}_2\text{—C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, has a more powerful and

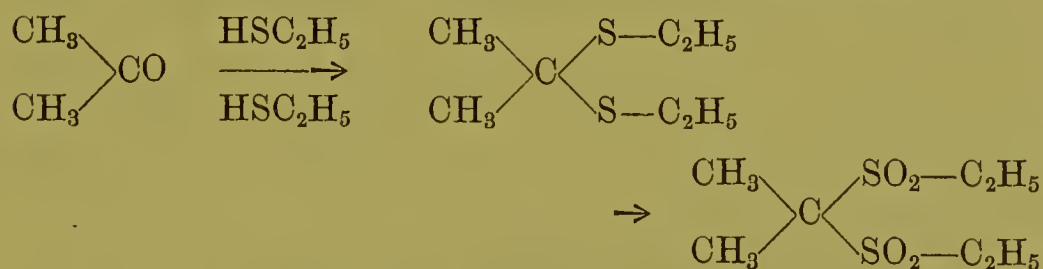
prolonged action than sulphonal. *Tetronal*, $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$,

¹ *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 14 (1890), 52.

is very insoluble, and therefore is not so good an hypnotic, but for dogs it appears to have the most powerful action of all the sulphones.

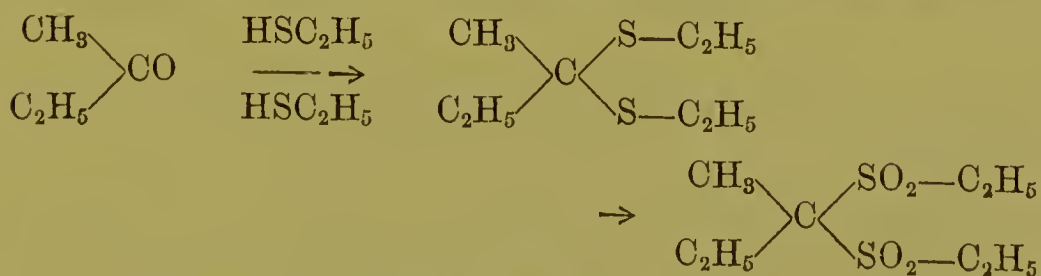
The above examples indicate that the intensity of the hypnotic action appears to be conditioned by the number of ethyl groups in the molecule. A study of the fate of these compounds in the body has revealed the curious fact that those sulphones which are readily decomposed by ordinary chemical means are relatively stable in the organism, while those which are more resistant to ordinary chemical reagents are oxidized by the organism. For example, sulphonal, "reversed" sulphonal, trional and tetronal, though very stable to strong reagents, such as permanganate, are to a great extent decomposed in the organism, while $\text{CH}_2(\text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$, which is easily decomposed by alcoholic potash, is found unaltered in the urine.

Sulphonal and trional are of great practical importance, as they are amongst the most widely used hypnotics. Technically, sulphonal is prepared by the condensation of ethyl mercaptan and acetone in the presence of zinc chloride, and oxidation of the mercaptol thus formed with excess of permanganate.¹



Trional is prepared in a similar manner, but the preparation is complicated by the necessity of introducing the extra ethyl group in place of methyl. This can be done in three different ways.²

(1) Methyl-ethyl-ketone is condensed with ethyl mercaptan by means of dry HCl, and the resultant mercaptol oxidized.

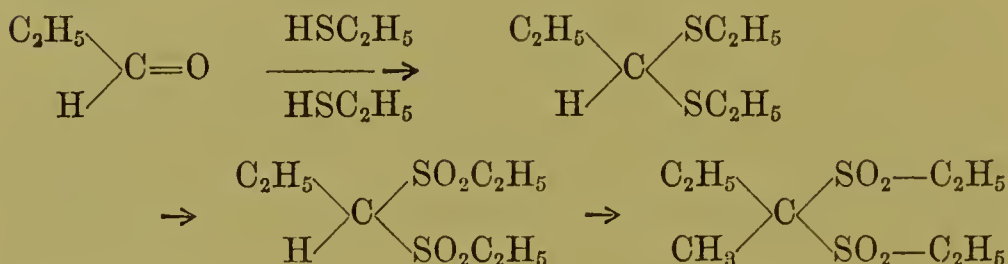


¹ Baumann, *Ber.*, 19 (1886), 2808.

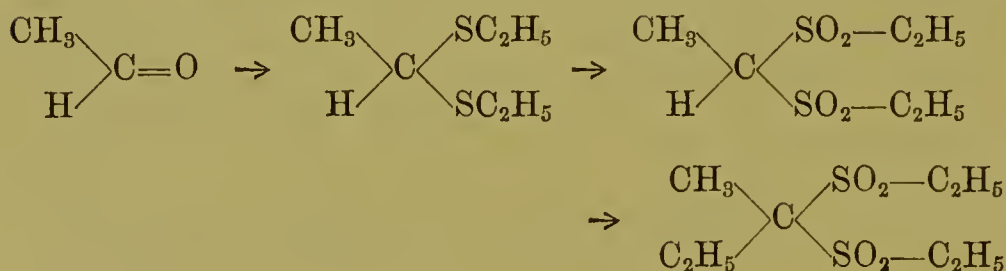
² D. R. P., 49,073, 49,366; Fromm, *Annalen*, 253 (1889), 148.

This method is strictly analogous to the method of preparing sulphonal.

(2) Propionic aldehyde is condensed with ethyl mercaptan, and the product oxidized as before. The oxidation product is then methylated with methyl iodide and caustic soda to form trional.



(3) By starting with ordinary aldehyde, instead of propionic aldehyde, and ethylating with ethyliodide and sodium ethylate in the last stage instead of methylating, trional can be obtained,



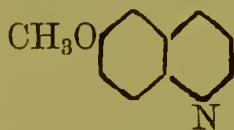
CHAPTER V

ANTIPYRETICS AND ANALGESICS

(DERIVATIVES OF ANILINE AND PHENYLHYDRAZINE)

THE substances to be dealt with in this chapter include some of the most important of the synthetic drugs. These substances were originally introduced on account of their power of reducing the body temperature in fever (antipyretic action), but their present importance is due, to an even greater extent, to their action on the nervous system in soothing pain (analgesic action).

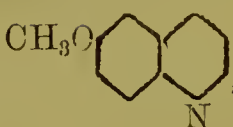
The original idea of chemists was to produce a compound with properties similar to those of quinine, and this they sought to accomplish by preparing substances the composition of which was closely related to that attributed to that compound. The formula in vogue for quinine, was however incorrect, but in spite of this, several compounds were produced which had a marked antipyretic effect, but which lacked one very important attribute of quinine, namely, its specific effect against malaria. Quinine was shown to be a derivative of quinoline, and further to differ from the less active cinchonine in containing a methoxy group in the epi (1-6) position to the quinoline nitrogen,

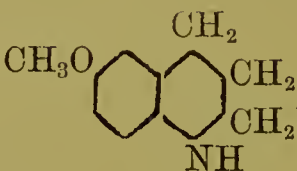


Quinoline itself has an antipyretic action, but

cannot be used as a drug, owing to its unpleasant by-effects. Para-methoxyquinoline has a weaker antipyretic action than quinoline, but in accordance with the previously mentioned fact that tetrahydroquinoline has a stronger physiological action than quinoline, it was supposed that quinine was a derivative of epimethoxy-tetrahydroquinoline. This supposition is now

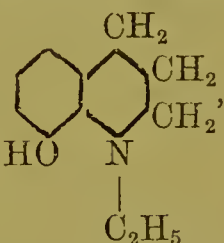
known to be incorrect, but nevertheless when 6-methoxy-

quinoline, , is reduced to its tetra-hydro com-

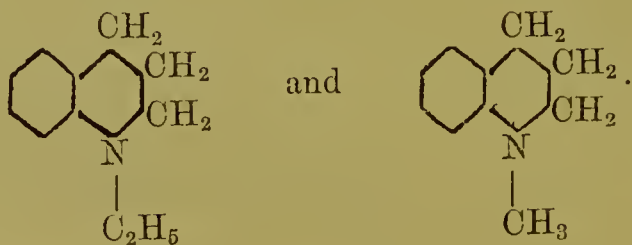
pound, , we obtain a substance (*Thalline*),

with a strong antipyretic action, though without any specific effect in malaria. It is not used as a drug, as it has harmful effects on the blood and kidneys.

Some earlier experiments had been carried out on *N*.-alkyl quinoline derivatives, and it was found that the introduction of an hydroxyl group caused the effect to appear more rapidly, but also to cease more quickly and suddenly. For example,

kairine, hydroxy *N*.-ethyl-tetrahydroquinoline, , is

more rapid than *Kairolin* A or *Kairolin* B, which are respectively *N*.-ethyl-tetrahydro- and *N*.-methyl-tetrahydro-quinolines—

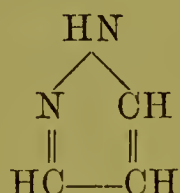


These substances are all useless, owing to their toxic action on the red blood-corpuscles. It is now thought that the specific action of quinine is due more to the “loiponic acid” half of the molecule than to the quinoline half.

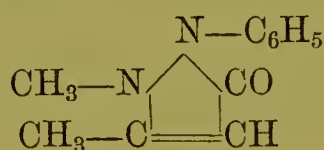
Although the artificial quinoline derivatives have proved useless in medicine, a compound produced by Knorr,¹ with the

¹ *Annalen*, 238 (1887), 137.

intention of obtaining a substance resembling quinine, met with a great and surprising success. The compound in question was first considered by Knorr to possess a structure¹ similar to that which was then attributed to quinine. Later Knorr, however, showed that it was more closely related to pyrazole

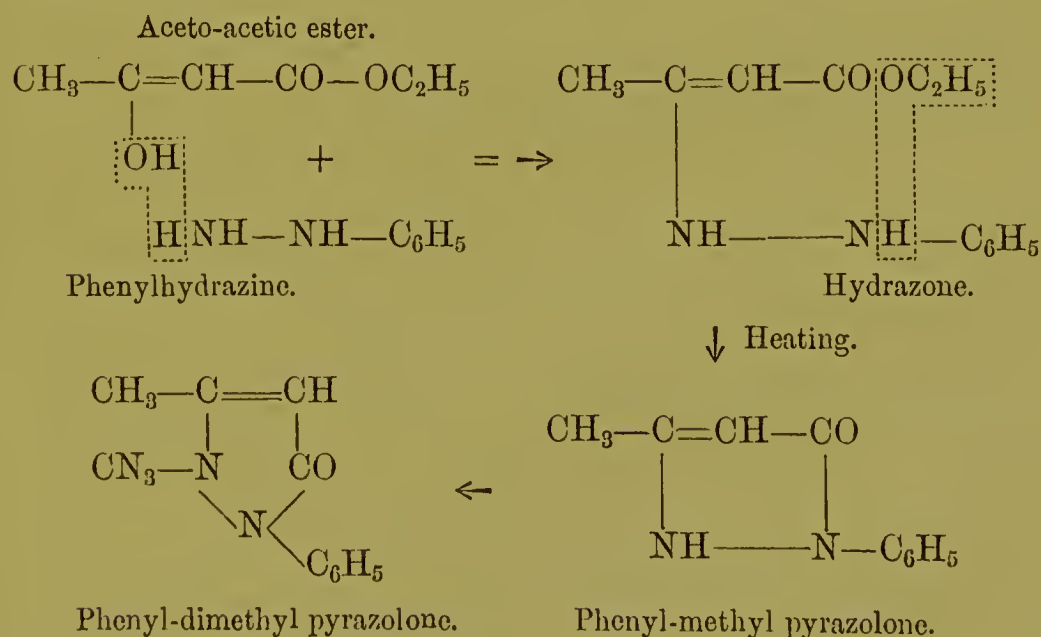


in structure, being in fact phenyl-dimethylpyrazolone—



This compound has attained a very extended use in medicine under the name of *antipyrine*.

It is obtained by the action of aceto-acetic ester on phenylhydrazine, whereby a hydrazone is formed, which on heating loses the elements of alcohol, with the formation of phenyl-methyl-pyrazolone. This is then heated with methyl iodide and methyl alcohol at 100-150° C., which transforms it into antipyrine.²

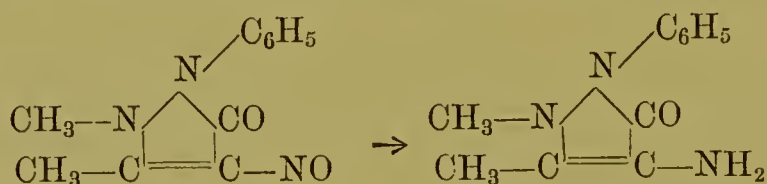


¹ Ber., 17 (1884), 2037.

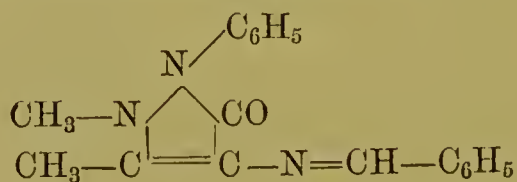
² D. R. P., 26,429, 33,536, 40,337, 42,726.

This view of its constitution is confirmed by its direct synthesis from $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—NH—NH—CH}_3$ and aceto-acetic ester.

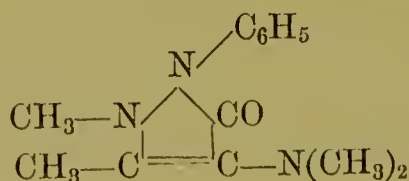
Antipyrine has a very strong antipyretic action, which is far greater than that of quinine, and it is free from injurious effect on the hæmoglobin, but it has no specific action against malaria. On the other hand, it has the very useful property of diminishing neuralgic pains (analgesic action), which has secured for it a great popularity. A large number of derivatives of antipyrine have been placed on the market, but most of these have no advantage over it, and many of them are very loose compounds of antipyrine and other substances, which act practically like mixtures. One derivative of antipyrine has, however, proved of great value, namely, 4-dimethyl-amino-antipyrine. This substance, which is called *Pyramidon*, is about three times as powerful in its action as antipyrine, and also has the advantage of being free from injurious effects on the heart (Kobert). It is prepared by treating an acid solution of antipyrine with sodium nitrite, whereby nitroso-antipyrine is formed. This on reduction gives amino-antipyrine—



which is isolated in the form of its benzyldiene derivative (*i.e.* condensation product with benzaldehyde)—

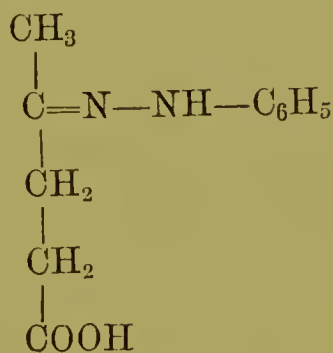


This is then decomposed with hydrochloric acid, and on methylation yields pyramidon—



The success of antipyrine, and the mistaken idea that its

action might belong to phenylhydrazine derivatives in general, led to the production of a large number of these, none of which are, however, of any therapeutic value. The intense toxic action of phenylhydrazine is weakened by the entrance of acetyl groups, but the monoacetyl derivative (*hydracetin*), $C_6H_5-NH-NH.CO.CH_3$, and the diacetyl derivative, $C_6H_5NH-N(CO.CH_3)$, are both too toxic to be of any use. Other phenylhydrazine derivatives have been prepared, in which the carboxyl group enters the molecule, *e.g.* the hydrazone of lævulinic acid—



called *Antithermin*, but this, like *Orthin*, $HOOC \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} NH-NH_2$, and other derivatives of this type, is too toxic for use.

ANILINE DERIVATIVES

The antipyretics already described owe their origin to the endeavour to prepare substances similar to quinine. Those to be dealt with in the present section are based on the discovery of Cahn and Hepp,¹ that aniline and acetanilide have powerful antipyretic and anti-neuralgic properties, and the low price of aniline gave a still further stimulus to the endeavour to find a suitable derivative of it that could rival the more expensive quinine and antipyrine. Aniline and its salts have a strong antipyretic action, but they are readily absorbed, and owing to their action on the hæmoglobin, give rise to toxic symptoms.

By the entrance of an acetyl group, aniline is rendered more resistant and less toxic, so that *acetanilide*, $C_6H_5.NH.CO.CH_3$,

¹ *Zentralblatt f. klin. Med.*, **33** (1886) ; *Ber. Klin. W.* (1887), 1 and 2.

has been used in medicine under the name of "*antifebrin*." It has marked antipyretic properties, and also acts as an analgesic. Though far less toxic than aniline, yet its physiological effect is due to the slow liberation of aniline, and after a time symptoms of aniline poisoning may become apparent. It is only used now on account of its cheapness—it is by far the cheapest of all antipyretics—and it forms the active ingredient of many of the secret remedies that are advertised for the cure of headaches, etc., and is also used to adulterate other more expensive drugs, such as phenacetin. Small quantities of acetanilide are oxidized in the body to para-aminophenol,¹ and the observation of this fact this has led to the introduction of various derivatives of para-aminophenol as antipyretics. Before passing on to these, attention may be given to some other compounds which are more closely akin to acetanilide. In most of these cases the compounds that have been introduced could have no marked advantage over acetanilide, as they likewise depend on the liberation of free aniline for their physiological effect. For example, benzanilide and salicyl-anilide resemble acetanilide, but have to be given in bigger doses, as they are less readily split up in the intestine; while on the other hand, formanilide, owing to the ease with which it undergoes hydrolysis, is far more toxic than acetanilide. Toluidine derivatives also have not the slightest advantage over acetanilide, as all the three toluidines have, when once in the system, practically the same toxic action as aniline.

Attempts have been made to obtain more soluble derivatives of acetanilide by the introduction of acidic groups. As the sparing solubility of acetanilide does not have any injurious effect on its therapeutic action, these attempts must be regarded as quite unscientific, especially as the resulting compounds are, as was to be expected with acidic substances, quite inert and without the characteristic action of acetanilide. An example

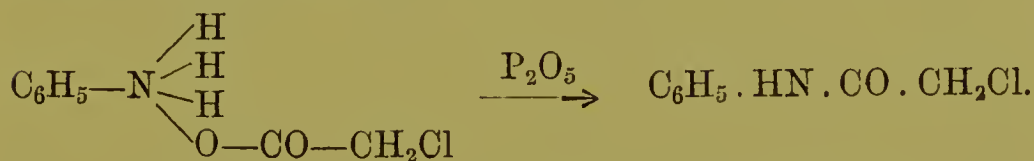


¹ Schmiedeberg, *A. c. P. P.*, 8 (1878), 1.

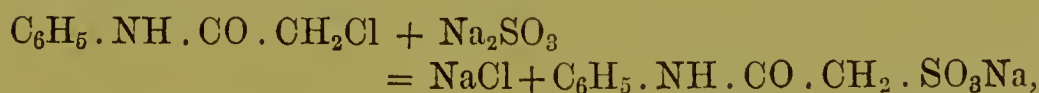
² *D. R. P.*, 92,796.

Substances containing a sulphonic acid group in the ω position of the acetanilide molecule are said to be an exception to the rule that acidic substances are inert. These derivatives are said to be easily soluble and to have an antipyretic action, but they do not appear to have come into use, and it may therefore be that the original statements as to their antipyretic action were mistaken.

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{Na}$ is an example, and is prepared as follows: The aniline salt of chloracetic acid is treated with phosphorus pentoxide—



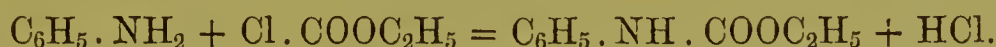
The product is then heated with an aqueous solution of sodium sulphite—



the sodium salt of the acetanilide sulphonic acid separating on cooling.¹

Methyl-acetanilide, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, *exalgin*, has toxic properties and is not much used in medicine.

An aniline derivative of a different type is phenyl-urethane, *Euphorin*, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$. It is prepared by the action of aniline on chloro-formic ester—



It is far less toxic than aniline, and has marked analgesic properties, but is irregular in its antipyretic effect.

DERIVATIVES OF PARA-AMINOPHENOL

The use of para-aminophenol derivatives as antipyretics is due to the discovery that aniline and its simple derivatives are partially converted by the organism into para-aminophenol,²

¹ D. R. P., 79,714, 84,654.

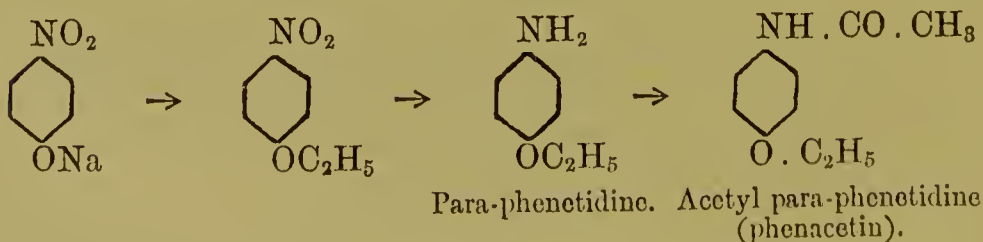
² Schmiedeberg, *loc. cit.*

which is then eliminated as a sulphonic acid derivative or as a compound of glycuronic acid. Para-aminophenol is far less toxic than aniline, but it still has an action on the hæmoglobin sufficient to be harmful in moderate doses. The replacement of the hydrogen of the amino group by an acetyl group, with the formation of $\text{HO} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \rangle \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, yields a compound with a lower toxicity than para-aminophenol, and with anti-pyretic and anti-neuralgic properties, but still not quite satisfactory as a drug. The next step was the replacement of the hydroxylic hydrogen by radicles, and diacetyl-amino-

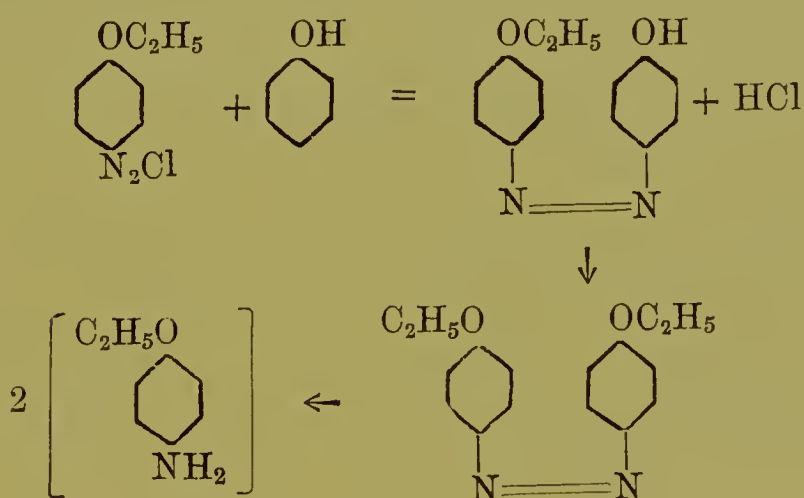
phenol, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{O} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \rangle \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, was prepared, but it was found to be inferior in its action to para-ethoxy-acetanilide and para-methoxy-acetanilide, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \rangle \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, and $\text{CH}_3\text{O} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \rangle \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, which were named *phenacetin* and *methacetin* respectively.

The last-named compound was found to possess antipyretic and anti-neuralgic properties in the highest degree of all, but phenacetin, in which these properties are only slightly less well-marked, has the advantage of having less toxic action on the blood. *Phenacetin*, which was the first drug of this class to be placed on the market, has retained the lead ever since, and is by far the most important compound of this class, and indeed, at the present time, is probably more used than any of the other antipyretic and analgesic substances.

The starting point for the synthesis of phenacetin is para-nitro-phenol. The sodium salt of this is treated with ethyl iodide, and the product reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid. The para-phenetidine thus formed is then acetylated by boiling with glacial acetic acid.



On the commercial scale, an ingenious variation of this process is adopted, whereby one molecule of para-nitrophenol is made to furnish a large number of molecules of phenacetin. This process is adopted on account of the fact that para-nitrophenol is rather difficult to obtain in the pure condition. In this process, the para-nitrophenol is converted into para-phenetidine by the method already described, and the phenetidine is then diazotized and coupled with phenol in the presence of sodium carbonate. This is then ethylated, and the product



thus obtained is then reduced, whereby two molecules of phenetidine are obtained. These can then be converted into phenacetin by acetylation, or can be made to yield a double quantity of phenetidine by repeating the above-described process¹ of diazotization and coupling with phenol.

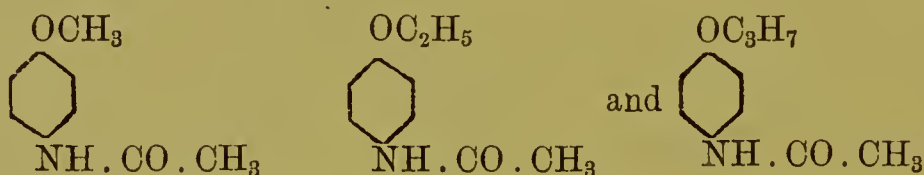
Phenacetin is only slightly toxic, but when given in very large doses, some methæmoglobin is found in the blood. Its antipyretic action is due to increased heat-loss from the surface of the body, but this drug is used chiefly for its analgesic action, which is mainly due to its action on the sensory tracts of the cord.

Several other derivatives of the phenacetin group have been prepared, but none of them have any novel therapeutic action, as in all of them this depends on the liberation of para-aminophenol or para-phenetidine in the body. Indeed, it has been shown by Treupel and Hinsberg,² that the antipyretic

¹ D. R. P., 85,988.

² A. e. P. P., 33 (1894), 216.

action of aniline and para-aminophenol derivatives is, within certain limits, proportional to the amount of aniline, para-aminophenol or phenetidine, formed in the organism. This statement is based on the fact that, in those cases where an antipyretic action is found, the urine shows the indophenol reaction, and that the intensity of the reaction is roughly proportional to the strength of the antipyretic effect. This reaction is carried out as follows:—The urine is acidified with two drops of hydrochloric acid, and two drops of a one-per-cent. solution of sodium nitrite added, whereby the phenetidine (or other primary amine) is diazotized. On adding an alkaline solution of β naphthol, a red coloration is produced, which becomes violet on acidifying with hydrochloric acid. This reaction is given by—



which resemble phenacetin in their physiological action, but not

by $\text{HO} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{11} \text{N} \begin{cases} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{cases}$, which has no antipyretic action, and

no action on the blood. If, however, the hydrogen of the amino group is substituted in phenacetin itself, physiologically active substances are obtained. For example, the methyl derivative, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{11} \text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, has greater narcotic and

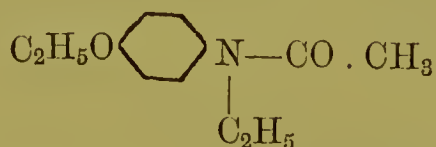
anti-neuralgic properties, but less antipyretic action than phenacetin, while in the ethyl derivative, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{—} \text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5) \text{—} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$,

there is an increase in the narcotic power, accompanied by a decrease in the toxic properties, the antipyretic action being retained with slightly diminished intensity. In the higher members of the series, such as the propyl and butyl derivatives, the narcotic and anti-neuralgic properties rapidly diminish with the increase in the molecular weight. In this series, the maximum antipyretic and anti-neuralgic effect is

shown by the methyl and ethyl derivatives, and the minimum toxicity by the ethyl compound. This corresponds to the effect of substituting the *hydroxylic* hydrogen of amino-phenol by alkyl groups, which is illustrated by the following table, showing the alteration of the physiological effect produced by the entrance of alkyl groups in the hydroxyl of acetyl-amino-phenol:—

Formula and name of substance.	Physiological effect compared to that of p.-acetyl-amino-phenol.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{O}-\text{CH}_3 & (1) \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & (4) \end{cases}$ Methacetin.	Anti-pyretic and anti-neuralgic effect strengthened. Less blood toxicity.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{O}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & (1) \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & (4) \end{cases}$ Phenacetin.	Anti-pyretic action maintained, analgesic action strengthened. Much less blood toxicity.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{OC}_3\text{H}_7 & (1) \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & (4) \end{cases}$	Anti-pyretic action slightly weakened. Blood toxicity diminished, but toxicity greater than with methacetin, and phenacetin.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{OC}_4\text{H}_9 & (1) \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & (4) \end{cases}$	Anti-pyretic action weakened.

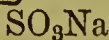
This table shows the superiority of phenacetin over the other members of the homologous series. The only substance as yet mentioned which appears to have any possible advantage over phenacetin is its substituted ethyl derivative—



In this case, its possible slight advantages are probably outweighed by its increased cost.

Owing to the slight solubility of phenacetin, many attempts have been made to prepare more soluble derivatives, which should nevertheless be sufficiently stable to resist the action

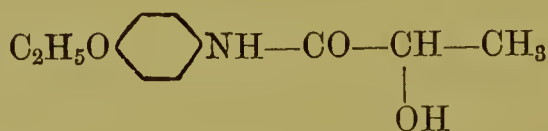
of the dilute hydrochloric acid of the gastric contents, and so prevent the liberation of poisonous phenetidine salts. As the slight solubility of phenacetin does not appear to interfere with its physiological effect, these efforts are not of great practical value. The introduction of sulphonic acid or carboxyl groups in order to obtain increased solubility, was not likely to meet with much success, as generally the presence of acid groups tends to destroy the physiological activity of a compound. For example, both the sulphonic and the carboxylic acid of phenacetin are almost inert, but the sodium salt of the former has been introduced under the name of *Phesin*, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{10} \text{---} \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, and is said to have slight temporary



antipyretic properties.

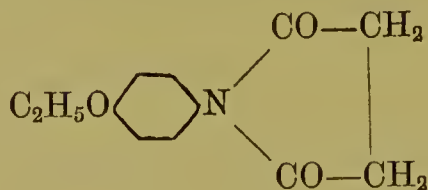
Similar compounds to phenacetin have been prepared in which the hydrogen of the amino group is replaced by acid radicles other than acetyl. Para-propionyl-phenetidine (*Triphenin*) is similar to phenacetin, but less soluble and hence less physiologically active.

Lactyl-phenetidine (*Lactophenin*)—



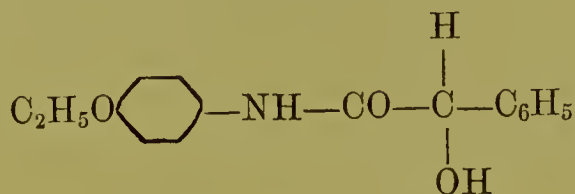
is more soluble than phenacetin, and has less anti-pyretic action, but has well marked anti-neuralgic and narcotic properties. It is more liable to liberate toxic phenetidine hydrochloride.

Para-ethoxy-phenyl-succinimide (*Pyrrantin*)—



and diacetyl-phenetidine, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{10} \text{---} \text{N}(\text{COCH}_3)_2$, have been prepared, but have no value.

Salicyl-phenetidine is stable, insoluble, and practically inert, as would be expected, and amygdophenine—

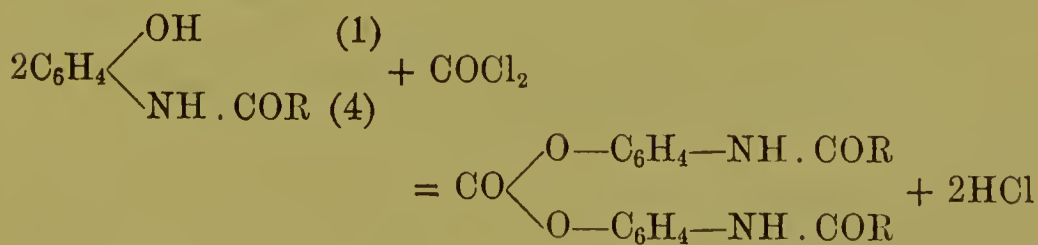


is also rather insoluble and inert. It is the mandelic acid derivative of phenetidine.

It has been noticed that phenyl-urethane, *Euphorin*, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \text{---} \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$, is partially oxidized by the organism into parahydroxy-phenyl-urethane, and some of its derivatives have been prepared for pharmaceutical purposes.

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \diagup \\ \text{N} \begin{matrix} \diagdown \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{matrix} \end{matrix}$	Acetyl p.-hydroxyphenyl-urethane (neurodin).	Very insoluble in cold water. Rapid but uncertain anti-pyretic action.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{matrix} \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \\ \text{NH} \text{---} \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{matrix}$	Para-ethoxy-phenyl-urethane.	More certain anti-pyretic action.

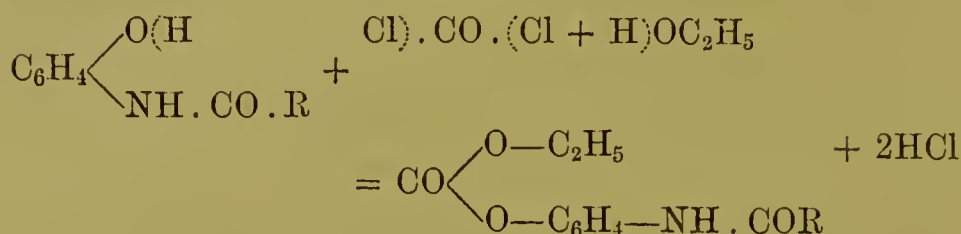
The acetyl derivative of the last-named above has been introduced under the name "*Thermodin*." It has a gradual anti-pyretic action, is not toxic, and has no depressant action on the heart or respiration. It is insoluble except in acid media. Various derivatives of this type have been prepared by Merck,¹ by passing carbonyl chloride into a solution of para-oxyphenyl-urethane, or acid derivatives of para-phenetidine in presence of alkalies—



where R = CH₃, C₂H₅, C₆H₅, OC₂H₅, or OC₃H₇.

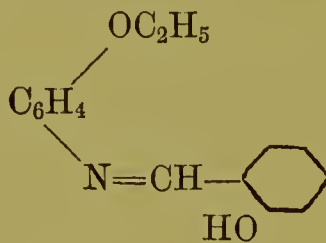
¹ D. R. P., 69,328, 85,803.

If the reaction is carried out in alcoholic solution in presence of sodium ethoxide, mixed carbonates are formed—

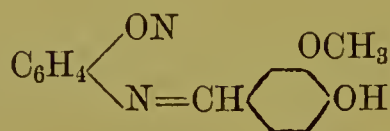


By varying the alcohol, methyl or propyl groups can replace the ethyl group.

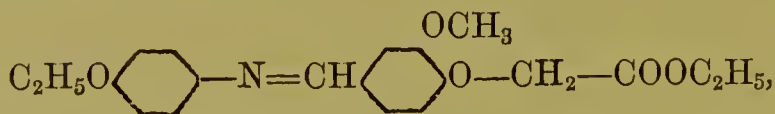
Among other derivatives of phenetidine which have been prepared are certain condensation products with aldehydes. Mention may be made of *Malakin*—



prepared by condensing phenetidine with salicylic aldehyde,¹ *Malarin*,² the citrate of methyl-benzylidene-phenetidine, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—N=C—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—CH}_3$, vanillin-phenetidine³—



(said to be a good styptic), and the para-phenetidine derivative of vanillin ethyl carbonate⁴—



which has been named *Eupyrin*. None of these are, however, of any particular value.

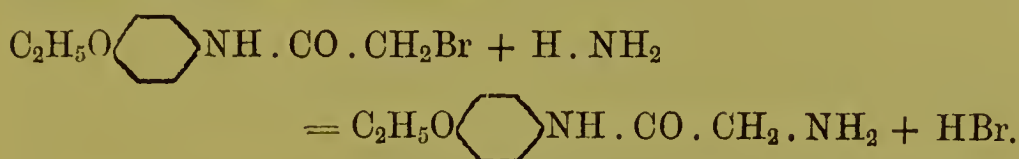
¹ D. R. P., 79,814, 79,857.

³ D. R. P., 96,342.

² D. R. P., 87,897, 98,840.

⁴ D. R. P., 101,684.

A soluble derivative of phenacetin has been prepared by Schmidt and Majert, by the action of ammonia on bromoacetyl-phenetidine (bromo-phenacetin)—



The amino-phenacetin thus formed is named *Phenocoll*. Its hydrochloride is readily soluble in water, and has a similar action to phenacetin, but the action appears and disappears more rapidly. It is said to have a greater analgesic action, and also to have antiseptic properties, and to be a good substitute for salicylic acid as an anti-pyretic in rheumatic fever. Its only insoluble salt is the salicylate, *Salocoll*.

So far, mention has only been made of phenetidine derivatives in which the hydrogen of the hydroxyl group has been replaced by simple alkyl groups, but several derivatives have been prepared where this hydrogen has been replaced by more complex groups.

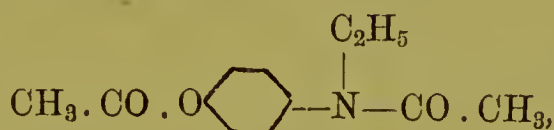
For example, acetyl-amino-phenyl benzoate—



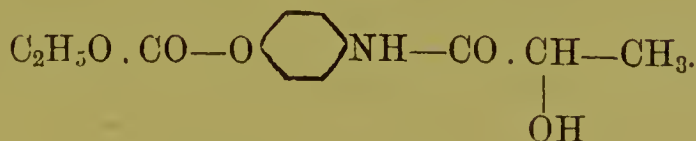
acetyl-amino-phenol acetamide—



acetyl-ethyl-amino-phenyl acetate—



lactyl-amino-phenyl ethyl carbonate—



CHAPTER VI

ALKALOIDS

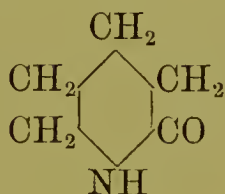
A DISCUSSION of the chemistry of the alkaloids would be out of place in this work, and the reader who desires further information on this head is referred to special works dealing with the subject, such as Pictet's "Vegetable Alkaloids." Nevertheless, it is of interest to mention some of the recent work that has been carried out in this field, a good deal of which has not yet found its way into the text-books; much of this is to be found in the section dealing with the isoquinoline alkaloids.

No precise and satisfactory definition of the term "alkaloid" can be given, and it has generally been used to denote nitrogenous basic substances of a cyclic structure found in plants, but it seems advisable to restrict its use to substances possessing a more or less marked physiological action. The alkaloids possess a special interest for the study of the relation between physiological action and chemical constitution, owing to the fact that many of them, even in small doses, produce very marked and definite physiological effects, and that a slight alteration in the chemical structure of the molecule often produces a decided change in this effect.

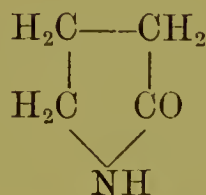
Mention has previously been made of the fact that the reduction of a nitrogenous ring generally produces a marked increase in the toxicity and strength of the action of the drug, and sometimes completely alters its character. For example, pyridine has no marked toxic action and lowers blood-pressure, but piperidine is very toxic and raises blood-pressure. β -naphthylamine is not very poisonous, and contracts the pupil of the eye, but tetrahydro- β -naphthylamine is more poisonous and dilates the pupil. Many other examples of this type will be encountered from time to time. In all cases it is probably connected with the fact that reduction causes the substance

more nearly to approach the aliphatic bodies in its properties, while in the case of pyridine and quinoline rings, it is connected with the change from tertiary nitrogen to the more reactive secondary form.

Although the substances containing reduced rings are more active physiologically than those containing pyridine or quinoline rings, yet the activity is often apparently dependent upon the cyclic structure, as the open chain compounds are in general much less active than the corresponding alicyclic ones, and nearly all the active alkaloids are possessed of a cyclic structure. For example, δ -amino-valerianic acid and γ -amino-butyric acid are without any particular physiological action, but their anhydrides, the cyclic bases piperidone—



and α -pyrrolidone—



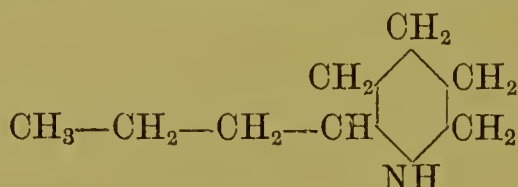
have a powerful action.¹ In the same way pentamethylene diamine, $\text{NH}_2[\text{CH}_2]_5\text{NH}_2$, is not toxic, while piperidine is.

The size and position of the side chains attached to the ring have an important effect, and in some cases relationships have been traced between these factors and the physiological action. Thus, most of the alkaloids are derivatives either of pyridine itself, or of quinoline or isoquinoline, both of which latter contain a conjugated pyridine nucleus. Pyridine has only a slight physiological action, but more active bodies are generally obtained by reduction or by the entrance of aliphatic side chains. The introduction of the latter is accompanied by the appearance of intoxicating action, which increases with the length and the number of the side chains.² The toxic action

¹ Schotten, *Ber.*, **21** (1888), 2243; Gabriel, *Ber.*, **23** (1890), 1772, 3335.

² Kendrick and Dewar, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **22** (1874), 432.

of piperidine itself is not very strong, but it is increased in α -methyl piperidine (pilocarpine), and still more in α -ethyl piperidine and α -propyl piperidine (coniine). The toxicity of



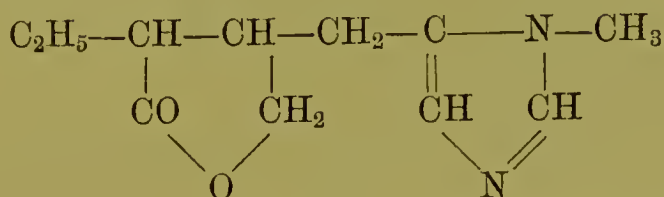
these substances is in the ratio of 1 : 2 : 4 : 8.

In a previous chapter reference has been made to the remarkable discovery of Crum Brown and Fraser on the effect of transforming a tertiary base into a quaternary ammonium compound. In the case of almost every alkaloid which is a tertiary base, the original action disappears and is replaced by a curare-like action. The quaternary methyl and ethyl derivatives of atropine are partially exceptional; they resemble atropine itself in their action on the sympathetic nervous system, but differ from it in their action on the central nervous system and in having a curare-like action. Thus, atropine-methyl-nitrate retains the mydriatic action of atropine, while the action of atropine on the brain is lacking in this substance and also in the alkyl bromides of atropine and the allied alkaloids, hyoscyamine, homatropine, and scopolamine.

The effect of the presence of hydroxyl groups, carboxyl groups, unsaturated linkages, etc., has already been dealt with in a previous chapter, and the special importance of the esterification of hydroxyl groups by acid radicles in alkaloids will be discussed in connection with cocaine, heroin, etc.

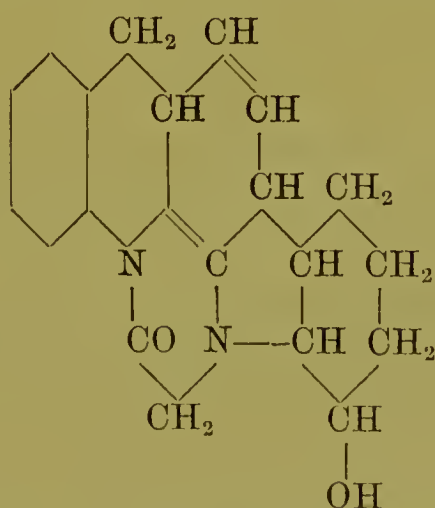
Of the alkaloids which are used in medicine, caffeine, theobromine, and the other purine derivatives are often considered separately, on account of their close relationship to various non-alkaloidal substances, such as uric acid, xanthine, etc. These alkaloids and their derivatives will therefore be considered in another chapter. The morphine group, the isoquinoline derivatives, and the derivatives of tropine will be considered in the following sections, and there remain quinine, pilocarpine, and strychnine as being important from the medicinal point of view. Nicotine and many other alkaloids are also of great interest, but they are not much used in medicine, and comparatively little work has been done on them during recent years.

It has been shown by the work of Jowett¹ and of Pinner² that pilocarpine probably has the constitution represented by the formula—



and that isopilocarpine is probably a stereo-isomeride. This alkaloid has not yet been synthesized, nor have synthetic substances of similar constitution and physiological action been introduced into medicine, and therefore it need not be considered at length. It may be pointed out that pilocarpine closely resembles nicotine in many of its physiological effects, and that both substances contain a five-membered ring containing nitrogen. It is true that nicotine also contains a six-membered nitrogen ring, but its physiological action is probably due more to the five-membered pyrrolidine ring. (*Cf.* quinine.)

Our knowledge of the constitution of strychnine is not in proportion to its importance in medicine; in fact, until recently no constitution formula had been proposed for it, but lately Perkin and Robinson³ have tentatively suggested that the structure of this substance may be represented by the formula—



¹ *J. C. S.*, **77** (1900), 473, 851; **79** (1901), 580, 1331; **83** (1903), 438, 464; *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, **21**, 172.

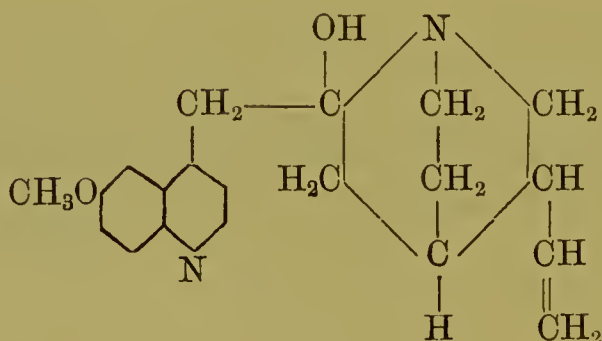
² *Ber.*, **33** (1900), 1424, 2357; **34** (1901), 727; **35** (1902), 192, 2441.

³ *J. C. S.*, 97 (1910), 305.

With regard to quinine, our knowledge is more satisfactory, and although its synthesis has not yet been accomplished, a great deal of synthetic work has been carried out in connection with it, and therefore a more extended account of this alkaloid will not be out of place.

The therapeutic value of quinine arises chiefly from the fact that it appears to have a specific action in malaria, probably being far more poisonous to the protozoal parasites than to the cells of the host. It has also been widely used as a febrifuge, but this is referred to in the chapter on anti-pyretics, and at present it is proposed to consider its properties from the same point of view as those of the other alkaloids.

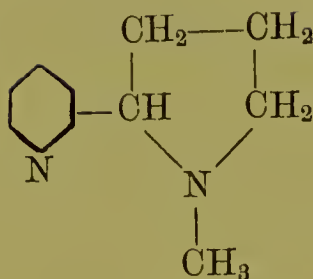
Quinine was isolated, together with cinchonine, by Pelletier and Caventou in 1820, and as a result of the labours of many chemists, of whom Skraup, Königs, von Miller, and Rhode may be specially mentioned, the following formula has been generally accepted to represent its constitution :—



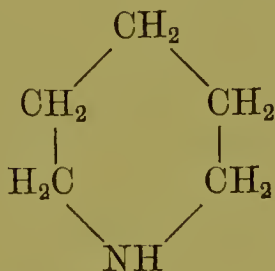
that of cinchonine only differing from it by the absence of the methoxy, group, (—OCH₃), and that of cupreine only in having this group replaced by an hydroxyl group, (OH).

The earlier attempts to prepare substances which should resemble quinine in their properties were based on the assumption that the quinoline nucleus was the active portion of the molecule, but Fraenkel¹ brings forward many facts in support of the view that it is the piperidine ring, the so-called "loiponic acid portion" of the molecule, which is the true "pharmacophore." Thus, it is pointed out that in nicotine—

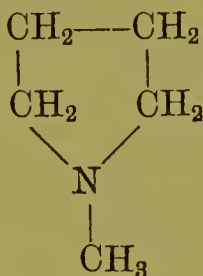
¹ "Arzneimittel-synthese," p. 231 (1906).



the contraction of the blood-vessels is almost certainly due to the pyrrolidine and not to the pyridine ring, seeing that this action is not shown by pyridine at all, but *is* produced by piperidine—



pyrrolidine, and N.-methyl pyrrolidine—



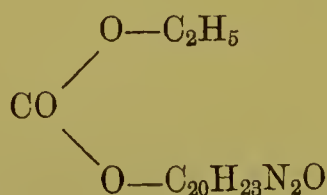
the last named closely resembling nicotine in this respect.¹ In the same way it is considered that the action of quinine is due to the reduced piperidine ring, which is rendered still more active by the presence of the unsaturated group, —CH=CH₂. The weak and uncertain action of cinchonine, compared with that of quinine, is probably owing to the absence of the para-methoxy group leaving the molecule without an “anchoring” group. Owing to this, the hydrogen atom of the quinoline nucleus probably has to become oxidized to OH with

¹ Tunnicliffe and Rosenheim, *Centralbl. für Physiol.*, **16** (1902), 93.

the formation of cupreine before it can exert the characteristic quinine action.

Many attempts have been made to prepare derivatives of quinine which should be free from some of its unpleasant by-effects, especially its bitter taste, and also to prepare derivatives which should be more soluble than the generally used sulphate, and so be suitable for hypodermic injection. Of the latter class, mention should be made of the double chloride and sulphate of quinine, which is very soluble in water, and of the double chloride of quinine and caffeine, which is readily soluble and suitable for hypodermic injection. Cinchonine is less bitter than quinine, but its action is weak and untrustworthy, and so it is not a suitable substitute. If quinine is converted into insoluble derivatives its taste is diminished, and a favourite derivative of this class is the tannate, which is practically tasteless, but suffers from the drawback that it is only slowly split up in the intestine into its components, and is therefore lacking in promptitude and certainty.

Other derivatives have been prepared by esterification of the hydroxyl group, the most important of these being the esters of carbonic acid.¹ The diquinine ester of carbonic acid, $C_{20}H_{23}N_2O-O-CO-O-C_{20}H_{23}N_2O$, is known as *Aristoquinine*, and is comparatively tasteless and fairly insoluble.² *Euquinine* is the ethyl carbonate of quinine—



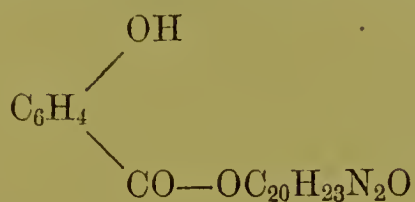
and is prepared by the action of ethyl chloro-formate, $Cl.COOC_2H_5$, on quinine.³ It is practically tasteless, and does not have a bitter after-taste. The hydrochloride, on the other hand, is not as good as the free base, and has no advantage over quinine itself.

¹ D. R. P., 90,848, 93,698, 118,122.

² Ibid., 134,307, 134,308.

³ Ibid., 91,370.

Saloquinine is the salicylic acid ester of quinine—



and is tasteless.

In all these compounds, absence of taste is conditioned only by insolubility, their more soluble derivatives having the characteristic bitter taste of quinine. The more soluble hydrochloride of euquinine is an instance of this.

CHAPTER VII

ATROPINE AND THE TROPEINES—COCAINE AND THE LOCAL ANÆSTHETICS

ATROPINE and cocaine are closely related, not only in their chemical constitution, but also in their physiological action, both of them causing dilatation of the pupil (mydriatic action).

Atropine and the Tropeines.—Atropine was discovered in 1831 in the roots of the belladonna plant, and is a strongly poisonous alkaloid. Its chief use in medicine depends upon its action in dilating the pupil and paralyzing the accommodation of the eye, and it is also used to check the inhibition of the heart arising from administration of chloroform and the depressant action of morphine on the respiratory centre.

Atropine is an ester, and on hydrolysis yields a basic substance, *tropine*, and optically inactive tropic acid.¹ It has been shown that the alkaloid hyoscyamine, which is also obtained from belladonna and is levorotatory, is the ester of tropine with lævo tropic acid,² and therefore atropine appears to be racemic hyoscyamine. This view of the nature of atropine has been confirmed by Ladenburg,³ and dextro-hyoscyamine has also been prepared by the union of tropine with dextro tropic acid.⁴

The pharmacology of these three stereo-isomerides, *d*.-hyoscyamine, *l*.-hyoscyamine, and the racemic form, atropine, has been investigated by Cushny,⁵ using the frog as the subject of the experiments. It was found that all three were alike in certain

¹ Kraut, *Annalen*, **128** (1863), 273; **133** (1865), 87; **148** (1868), 236. Lossen, *Annalen*, **131** (1864), 43; **138**, 230.

² Gadamer, *A. Pharm.*, **239** (1901), 294.

³ Ladenburg, *Ber.*, **21** (1888), 3065.

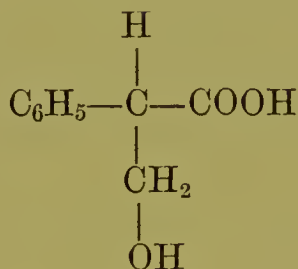
⁴ Amenomiya, *A. Pharm.*, **240** (1902), 498.

⁵ Cushny, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **30** (1903), 176.

respects, but that with regard to some aspects of their action, dextro-hyoscyamine was the strongest and the lævo variety the weakest, while with other effects of the drug exactly the reverse was the case. In all cases the action of atropine was intermediate between that of the two optically active forms, and this fact is explained by Cushny by the assumption that atropine is probably decomposed in solution into its two active components.

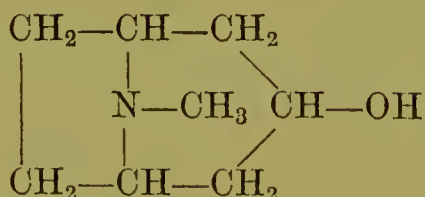
As atropine is the ester of tropine with racemic tropic acid, it is obvious that a knowledge of the constitution of these two substances is necessary in order to know that of atropine.

Tropic acid is a relatively simple substance, being indeed a homologue of mandelic acid, and having the constitution—



This view of its structure has been confirmed by a synthesis of the acid.¹

The question of the constitution of tropine is one which has presented far greater difficulties, but thanks to the researches of Ladenburg, Merling, Willstätter, and others, our knowledge of the constitution of this substance is as complete as that of any alkaloid, and there is no doubt that it is represented by the formula—



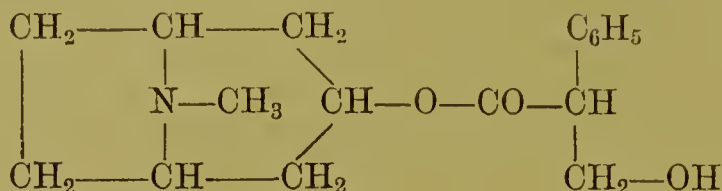
and this has been confirmed by Willstätter's brilliant synthesis.²

The constitution of this substance is of great importance, as

¹ Ladenburg and Rügheimer, *Ber.*, 13 (1880), 376; *Annalen*, 217 (1880), 74.

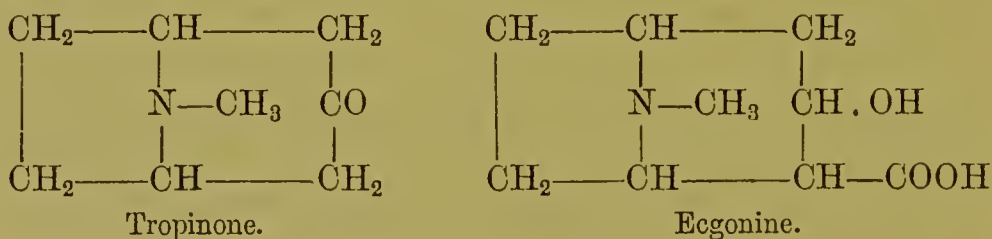
² Willstätter and Iglauer, *Ber.*, 33 (1900), 1170; Willstätter, *Ber.*, 34 (1901), 129, 3163; *Ibid.*, *Annalen*, 317 (1901), 307.

not only does it show that atropine and hyoscyamine are represented by the formula—



but it also explains the constitution of many other alkaloids which are derivatives of it.

For example, when tropine is heated with sodium and amyl alcohol, it is converted into a substance which is stereo-isomeric with it,¹ and which is identical with the substance pseudo-tropine, obtained by the hydrolysis of the coca alkaloid, tropa-cocaine (benzoyl-pseudo-tropine).² Both tropine and pseudo-tropine yield the same substance on oxidation, namely tropinone, and this on reduction yields pseudo-tropine and not tropine itself.



It has been shown that cocaine is a derivative of ecgonine, which is in turn a carboxylic acid of tropine, and hence our knowledge of the constitution of this important alkaloid is also dependent on that of tropine.

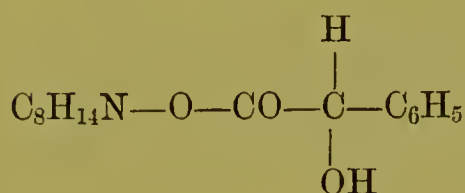
Having accomplished the synthesis of atropine by combining tropine with tropic acid, Ladenburg prepared other esters of tropine with various organic acids, to which he gave the name *tropeines*.³ Other tropeines have been prepared by Merck, Ladenburg, and others, and these substances are of great interest, as their mydriatic action can be easily compared, and

¹ Tropine is optically inactive, and so also is pseudo-tropine; the isomerism is dependent on *molecular* asymmetry (cis-trans isomerism).—(Barrowcliff and Tutin, *J. C. S.*, 95 (1909), 1966.)

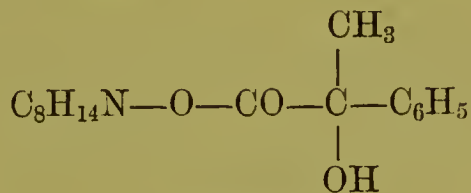
² For further details of these processes, see next section on Cocaine and Local Anaesthetics.

³ *Ber.*, 13 (1880), 106, 1080, 1137, 1549; 15 (1882), 1025; 22 (1889), 2590; *Annalen*, 217 (1880), 74.

hence they afford a convenient series of compounds for studying the relation between chemical constitution and physiological action. It was found that the tropeines derived from benzoic and cinammic acids were without mydriatic action, as also was that from lactic acid, but those derived from mandelic and atrolactic acid possess mydriatic properties.

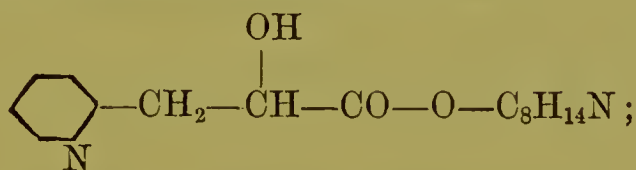


Mandelic.

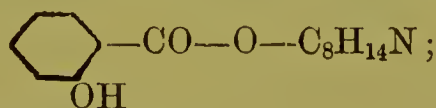


Atrolactic.

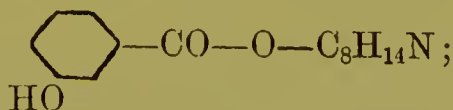
It will be noticed that the substances mentioned as having a mydriatic action, all contain both a benzene ring, and an aliphatic hydroxyl group in the side chain containing the $-\text{O}-\text{CO}$ group, and a statement has found its way into a good deal of the literature of the subject under the name of "Ladenburg's Rule," that only those tropeines which possess these characteristics have a mydriatic action. The so-called rule was never enunciated by Ladenburg, and it has been shown by Jowett and Pyman to be incorrect.¹ For example they found that the following three tropeines all have a mydriatic action : α -hydroxy- β -2 pyridyl-propionyl tropeine—



ortho-hydroxy-benzoyl tropeine (salicyl tropeine),



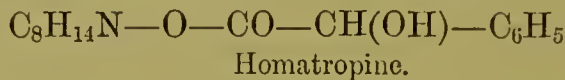
meta-hydroxy-benzoyl tropeine,



although the first contains no benzene nucleus, and the second and third no aliphatic hydroxyl group.

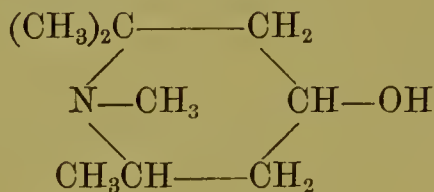
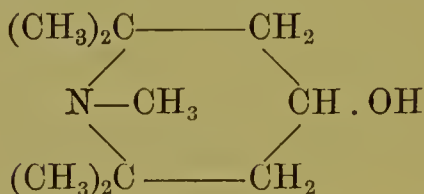
¹ *J. C. S.*, 95 (1909), 1090.

The tropeine derived from mandelic acid is known as *homatropine*,¹ as it is the lower homologue of atropine—

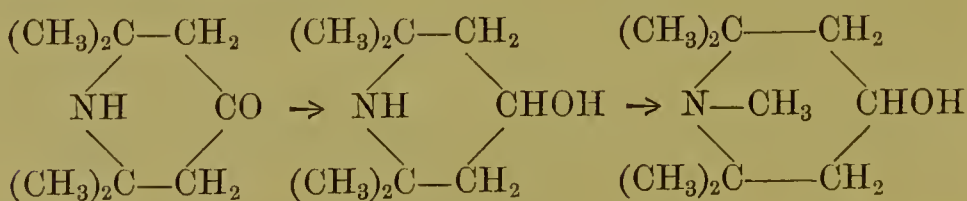


It is widely used in ophthalmic practice as a substitute for atropine, as its mydriatic action is nearly as great, and it has the advantages of being less toxic; moreover, its mydriatic action develops and passes off more rapidly.

Other esters have been prepared which resemble the tropeines to some extent in their chemical structure, and also have a mydriatic action, namely, the esters derived from triacetone-methyl-alkamine, and its lower homologue vinyl diacetone alkamine.



The structure of these substances is closely related to that of tropine. The former is prepared by reduction and methylation of triacetoneamine—²



a process carried out by Fischer,³ who also showed the relation between this substance and tropine. Its ester with mandelic acid resembles homatropine and atropine in having mydriatic action.

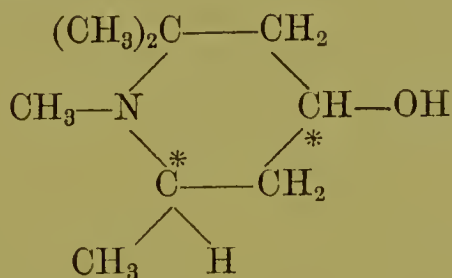
The preparation of N.-methyl-vinyl-diacetone-alkamine and some of its derivatives will be described later in connection with substitutes for cocaine, but for the present attention need

¹ D. R. P., 95,853.

² Heinz, *Annalen*, **189**, 214; **191**, 124; **198**, 69.

³ Fischer, *Ber.*, **16** (1883), 1604, 2236; **17** (1884), 1797.

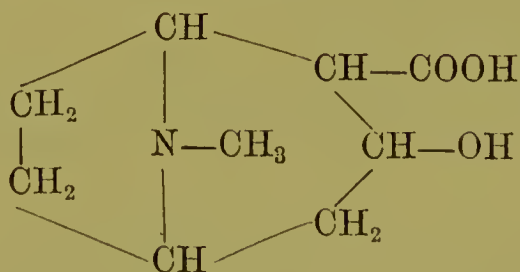
only be drawn to the fact that various derivatives of the tropeine type have been prepared from it,¹ some of which have a mydriatic action. This substance, methyl-vinyl-diacetona-mine, exists in two forms, one, α , melting at 137–138° C., and the other, β , melting at 160–161° C. The existence of two asymmetric carbon atoms (*)—



in the molecule explains the existence of these two forms as stereo-isomerides, and it is interesting to note that it is only the mandelic ester derived from the β -derivative which possesses mydriatic properties.² This furnishes an interesting example of the difference in physiological action of stereo-isomerides.

Cocaine and the Local Anæsthetics.—The alkaloid cocaine was discovered in coca leaves in 1860.³ It had long been known that the South American Indians were in the habit of chewing these leaves as a stimulant to enable them to stand great exertion without fatigue. The first use of cocaine in this country was for a similar purpose, but its great importance among alkaloids at the present time is due chiefly to Koller's important discovery that cocaine is a powerful and rapid local anæsthetic.

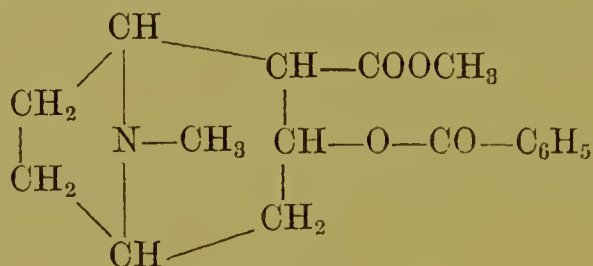
By hydrolysis with alkalis, cocaine yields ecgonine, benzoic acid, and methyl alcohol. Ecgonine was shown by Willstätter to be a carboxylic acid of tropine—



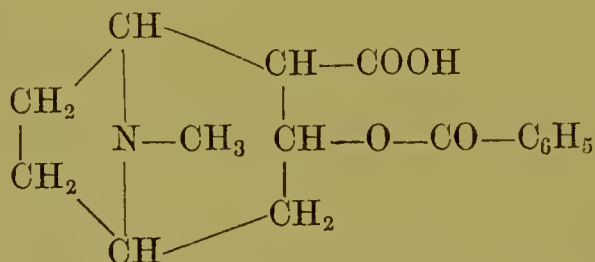
¹ Harries, *Annalen*, **294** (1896), 336; **296** (1897), 328.

² Harries, *Ber.*, **29** (1896), 2730. ³ Neumann, *Annalen*, **140** (1860), 213.

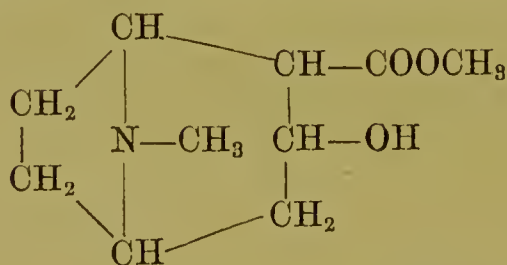
and by treatment with benzoyl chloride to yield benzoyl-ecgonine, in which the hydroxyl group is converted into $\text{O}-\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$; this on conversion into its methyl ester yields cocaine, which therefore has the formula—



It is found that the free carboxylic acid, benzoyl-ecgonine itself, has no local anæsthetic action, but that any of its alkyl esters, such as ethyl, propyl, etc., resemble its methyl ester, cocaine, in having this action. This applies only to the aliphatic esters, as the aromatic do not appear to have been prepared as yet. The effect of esterification is probably accounted for by an alteration of the anchoring group.



Benzoyl ecgonine (type of first series of esters).



Ecgonine methyl ester (type of second series of esters).

Ecgonine can be esterified in the usual way, leaving the hydroxyl group intact, and in this manner another series of

¹ Merck, *Ber.*, **18** (1885), 2954; **21** (1888), 48; Novy, *Amer. Chem. Journ.*, **10** (1888), 147.

esters can be obtained. Ecgonine methyl ester has no local anæsthetic action, but can be converted into cocaine by benzoylating the hydroxyl group. In this case, however, the nature of the group used to esterify the *hydroxyl* is important, for if the benzoyl group is replaced by others, the anæsthetic property is lost or greatly diminished.

Thus, truxilline¹ (isatropyl-cocaine) has no anæsthetic action, but is a strong cardiac poison, and Ehrlich² found that, of several different cocaine derivatives, such as isatropyl-cocaine, valeryl-cocaine hydriodide, and phenylacetyl-cocaine hydriodide, the last-named was the only one which had anæsthetic properties, but to a less degree than cocaine. All of these have a characteristic toxic effect on the liver, and differ from cocaine only in having the benzoyl group replaced by the one named.

Coca leaves, which are the only commercial source of cocaine, contain various other alkaloids, most of which are, however, devoid of the useful physiological properties of cocaine. These other alkaloids are amorphous substances which yield ecgonine on hydrolysis, and therefore, owing to the high price of cocaine, various methods have been devised to utilize them in improving the yield of cocaine obtainable from the leaves. According to one method,³ the alcoholic solution of the amorphous bases is boiled with hydrochloric acid, filtered from the precipitated organic acids, and practically pure ecgonine hydrochloride obtained by evaporation of the filtrate. By means of benzoyl chloride or benzoic anhydride, this is converted into benzoyl-ecgonine, which is then esterified with methyl alcohol giving cocaine. Various modifications of this method have also been devised.⁴

Cocaine has several disadvantages when used for hypodermic injection, one of the most serious being that its solutions do not keep well, but become mouldy and decompose on boiling, so that they cannot be readily sterilized. For this reason, and also on account of the high price of cocaine, various attempts have been made to prepare analogous compounds which it was hoped would resemble cocaine in its useful physiological effects. As cocaine

¹ Liebermann, *Ber.*, 21 (1888), 2347.

² Ehrlich, *Deutsche med. W.*, 32 (1891), 717.

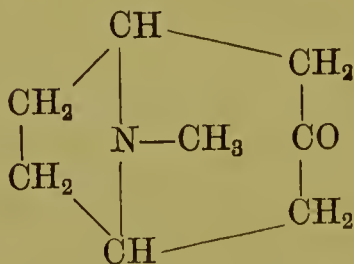
³ Lieberman and Giesel, *D. R. P.*, 47, 602.

⁴ Einhorn and Klein, *Ber.*, 21, 3335; *D. R. P.*, 47, 713. Farb. Hoechst, *D. R. P.*, 76, 433.

is a derivative of ecgonine, which is closely related to tropine, and as atropine, one of the esters of tropine, has a slight anæsthetic action, various attempts have been made to prepare substances from tropine which should have an action resembling that of cocaine. Several synthetic tropeines have been prepared, and have already been discussed, but none of these are of value as substitutes for cocaine. Strangely enough, however, a natural tropeine was discovered in Java coca leaves,¹ which is a stronger local anæsthetic than cocaine.² This substance, which is called tropacocaine, also has the advantage over cocaine in being less toxic and more resistant to micro-organisms, and hence its solutions can be preserved for some length of time. It is the benzoyl ester of pseudo-tropine,³ which only differs from ordinary tropine in its space configuration. It differs from cocaine and atropine in having no mydriatic action, and in this respect it resembles the other pseudo-tropeines, such as those of mandelic acid and tropic acid.

It will thus be seen that the tropeines derived from tropine itself have a strong mydriatic action, but only a weak anæsthetic action, while their stereo-isomerides, derived from pseudo-tropine have no mydriatic action, but are powerful local anæsthetics.

Pseudo-tropine is obtained from tropine by heating it with sodium amylate,⁴ and it is also obtained from tropinone—



by electrolytic reduction in acid solution.⁵

It should be pointed out that tropinone is obtained by oxidizing tropine with chromic acid,⁶ or with permanganate in cold strong acid⁷ solution, or with other oxidizing agents.⁸

¹ Giesel, *Pharm. Ztg.* (1891), 149.

² Chadbourne, *B. M. J.* (1892), 402.

³ Liebermann, *Ber.*, **24** (1891), 2336, 2587; **25** (1892), 927.

⁴ D. R. P., 88,270.

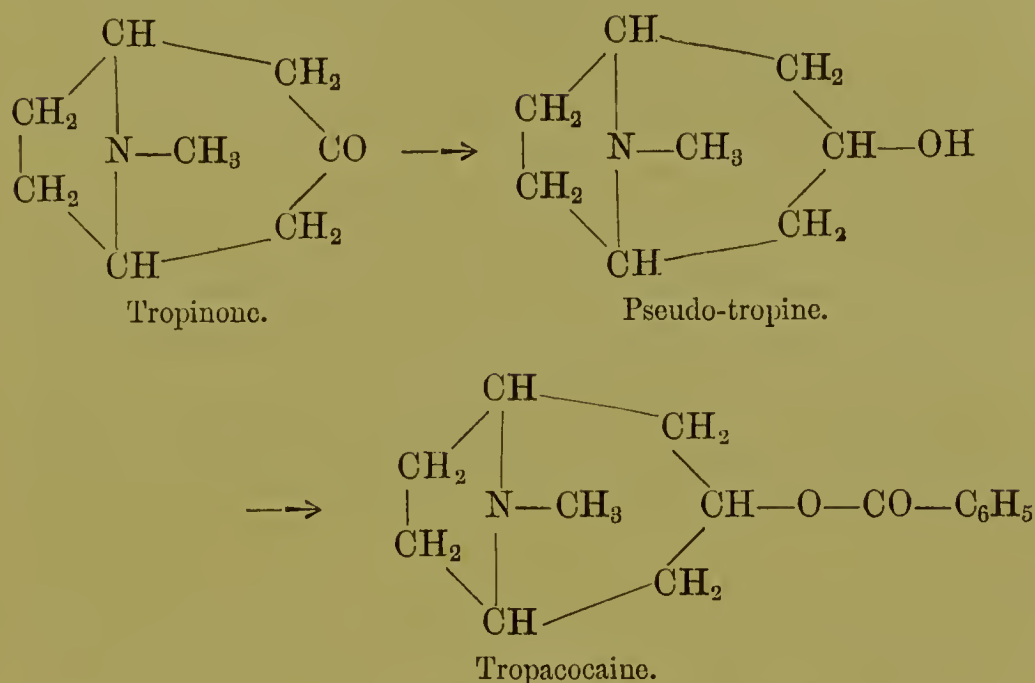
⁵ D. R. P., 115,517.

⁶ Willstätter; *Ber.*, **29** (1896), 396.

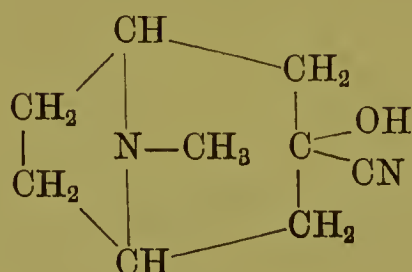
⁷ D. R. P., 117,628.

⁸ D. R. P., 117,629, 117,630, 118,607.

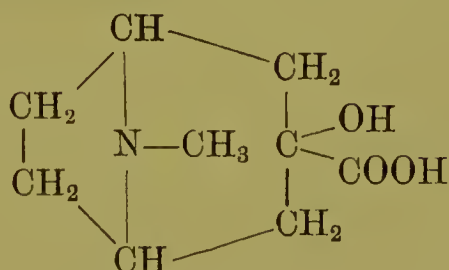
Pseudo-tropine is then easily converted into tropacocaine by means of benzoyl chloride.



By the action of HCN on tropinone, Willstätter¹ obtained the cyanhydrin—



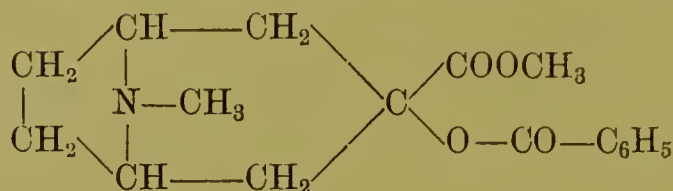
which on hydrolysis yielded—



which only differs from ecgonine in having the carboxyl group and the hydroxyl group united to the same carbon atom. He

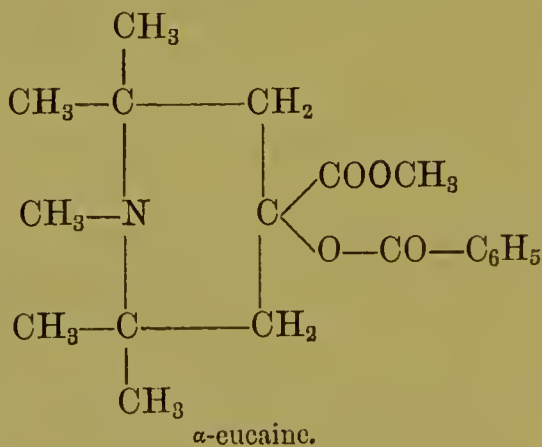
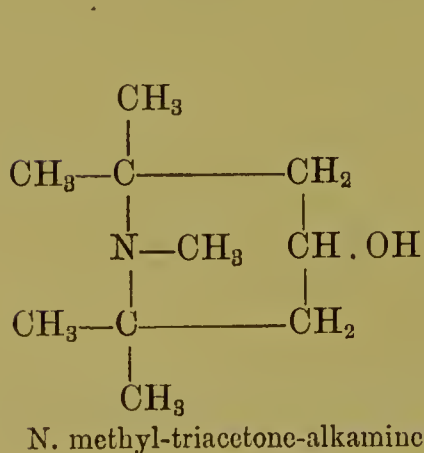
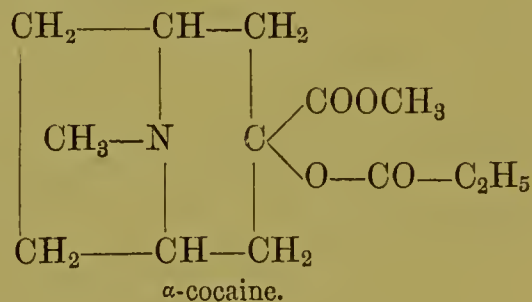
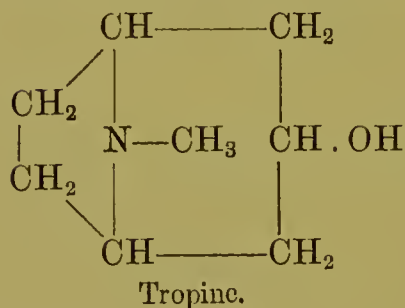
¹ Willstätter, *Ber.*, **29** (1896), 1575, 2216.

termed this substance *α-cegonine*, and from it he prepared by benzylation and methylation a substance, *α-cocaine*—



which is, as would be expected from its close structural relation to it, very much like cocaine itself in its chemical properties, such as the crystallizing power of its salts, but strangely enough, it is totally devoid of anæsthetic properties.

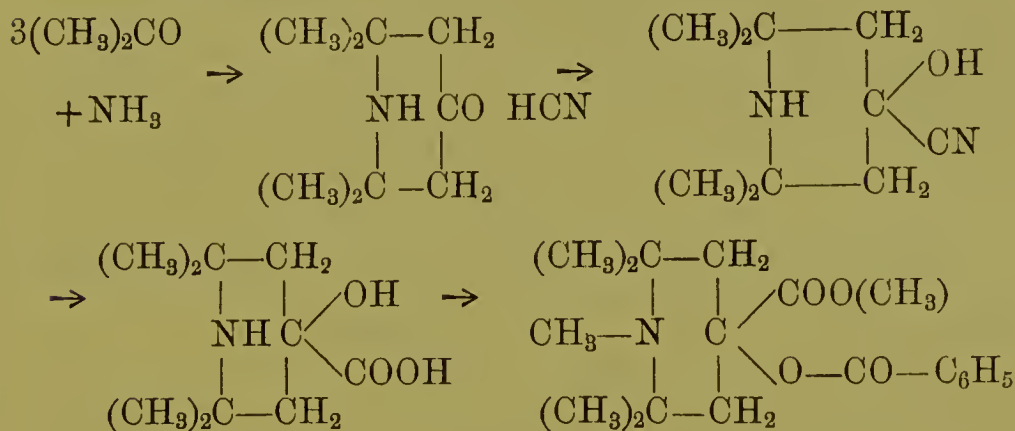
Although *α-cocaine* does not possess anæsthetic properties, a similar *α* compound derived from N.-methyl-triacetone-alkamine was found to be a valuable local anæsthetic.



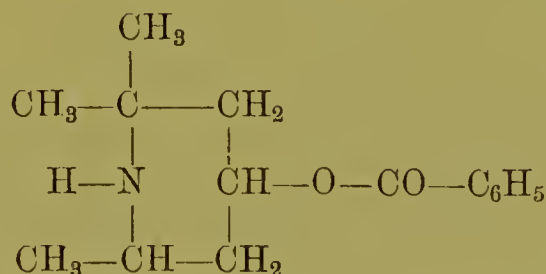
The substance in question is known as *α-eucaine*, and was obtained by Merling in the following manner.¹ Three molecules of acetone were allowed to react with one of ammonia, giving triacetoneamine, which on treatment with HCN yields the

¹ Merling, *Ber. deut. Pharm. Gesellschaft*, 6 (1897), 173.

cyanhydrin. This on hydrolysis yields triacetone-alkamine-carboxylic acid, which on benzoylation and methylation yields N.-methyl-benzoyl-triacetone-alkamine-carboxylic acid methyl ester (α -eucaine).



This substance is a cheap substitute for cocaine, and it has the advantage of being less toxic and of being stable to boiling water, so that its solutions can be sterilized by boiling. It has the drawback of being somewhat painful and irritant when injected, and it has now been superseded by β -eucaine,¹ the hydrochloride of benzoyl-vinyl-diacetone-alkamine—

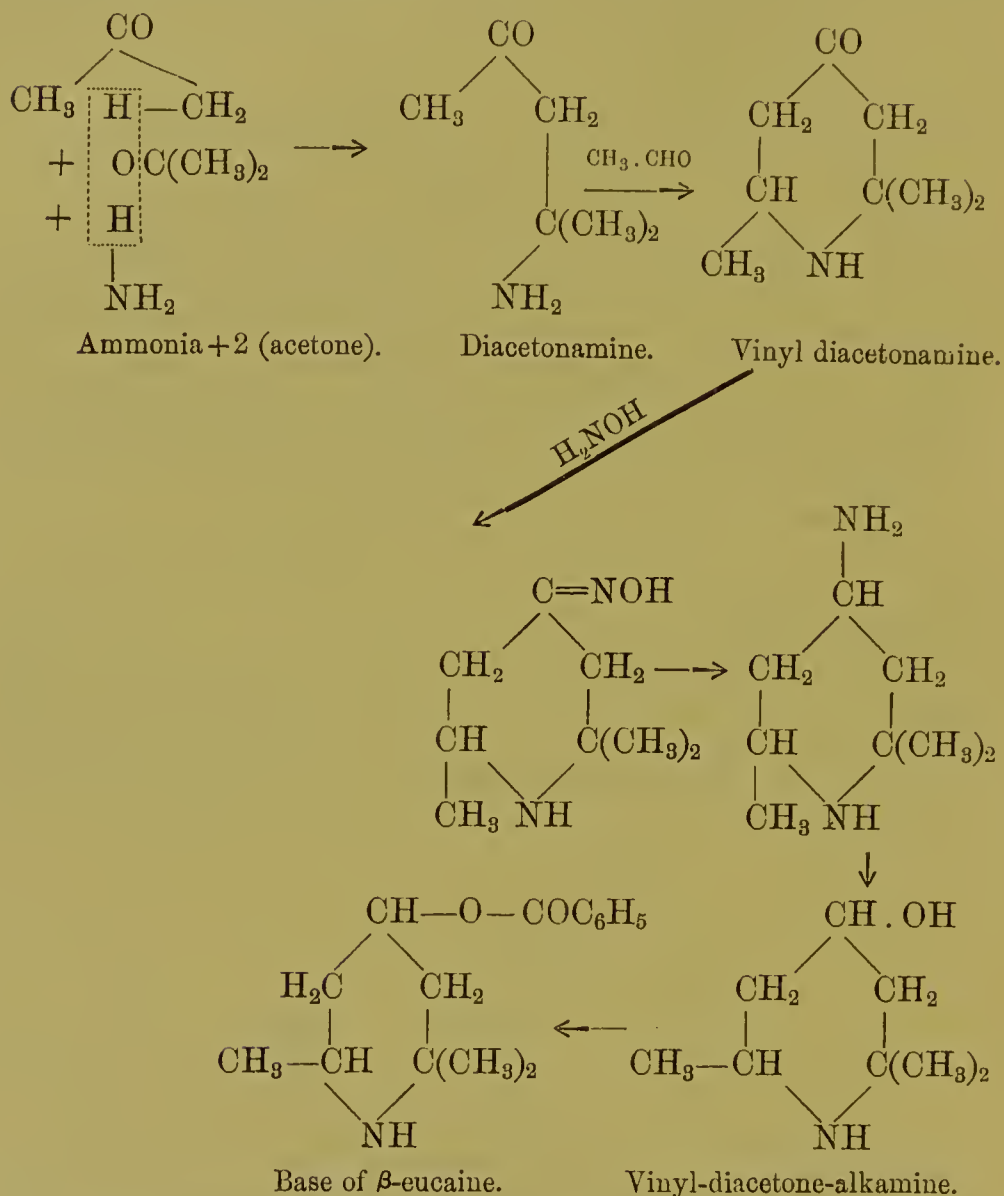


This substance is stable to boiling water and so can be readily sterilized. It is less toxic than α -eucaine, and is easily soluble in water, the lactate, which is often used instead of the hydrochloride, being soluble up to 30 per cent. It is equal to cocaine in its anæsthetic properties, and is now very widely used in many branches of surgery. Vinyl-diacetonamine, the parent substance of β -eucaine, was obtained by Harries by the interaction of diacetonamine and acetaldehyde.² The oxime of this, reduced with sodium and amyl alcohol, gives the corresponding

¹ D. R. P., 90,069.

² Harries, *Annalen*, 296 (1897), 328; 299 (1898), 346.

amine, which on treatment with nitrous acid gives two isomeric vinyl-diacetone-alkamines.¹

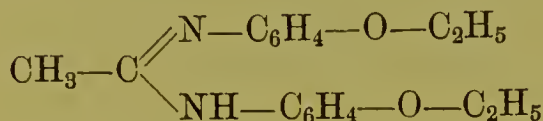


By means of sodium amylate, the mixture or the higher melting one can be converted into the lower-melting variety. This on benzylation gives the base of β -eucaine.

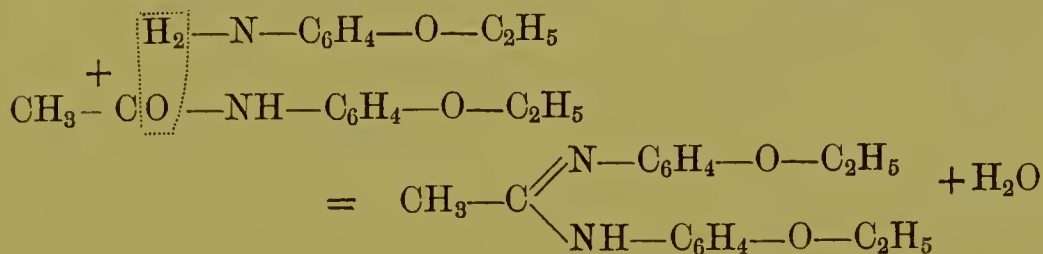
Besides the members of the cocaine series and the acetone-alkamines, there are a large number of other substances possessing local anæsthetic properties. Many of the antipyretics of the aniline type have this property, and in the case of phenetidine derivatives, the anæsthetic character of the substance is greatly

¹ Harries, *Ber.*, 29 (1896), 2730.

enhanced by combination with a second base. *Holocaine*, one of the best known substances of this type, is the mono-hydrochloride of—

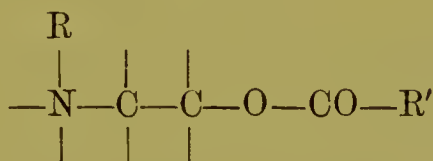


It is prepared by condensing phenetidine with phenacetin¹—

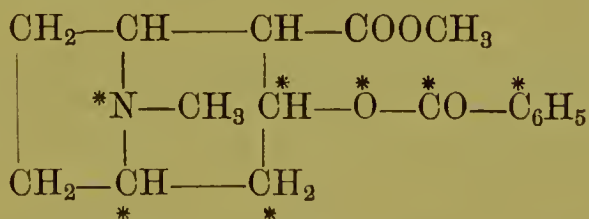


Holocaine has the drawbacks of being more toxic than cocaine, and of being sparingly soluble in water; but, on the other hand, its aqueous solutions keep well, and have a rapid anæsthetic action. It is used in ophthalmic surgery.

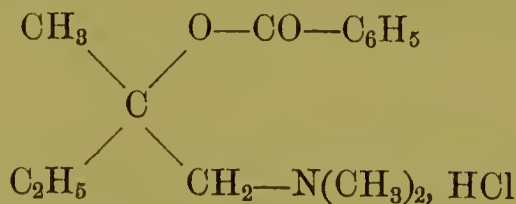
In recent years attention has been directed chiefly to alkamine esters, which contain the grouping—



a grouping very similar to that indicated by asterisks (*) in the formula for cocaine.²



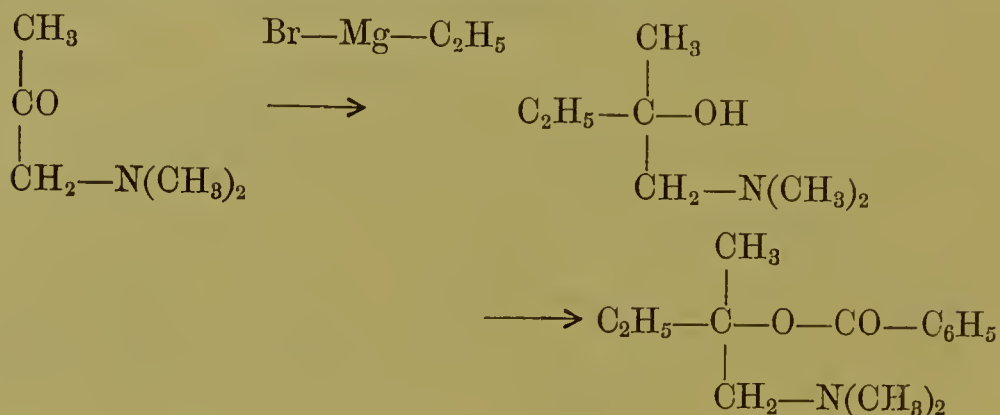
Stovaine, alypine, and novocaine are well-known members of this group. *Stovaine*—



¹ D. R. P., 79,868, 80,568.

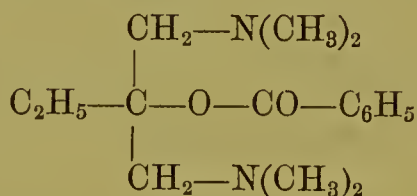
² Pyman, *J. C. S.*, 93 (1908), 1793.

is a well-known synthetic anæsthetic, obtained by the action of magnesium-ethyl-bromide on diethyl-amino-acetone, and benzylation of the product thus obtained.



It is very widely used for producing spinal anæsthesia.

Allypine is the hydrochloride of tetramethyl-diamino-dimethyl-ethyl-carbinyl benzoate—



and is therefore similar to stovaine in its constitution, being the dimethylamino derivative of the latter.

As a local anæsthetic, it is said to have the useful properties of cocaine without most of its drawbacks, producing rapid anæsthesia, and being free from injurious effects on the heart and respiration.

A whole series of local anæsthetics which also possess anti-septic properties has been discovered by Einhorn and Heintz.¹ They found that the benzoyl derivative of amino-hydroxy-benzoic ester possessed distinct anæsthetic properties, and contrary to the behaviour of cocaine, the removal of the benzoyl group yielded a substance of which the anæsthetic properties were greater than those of the benzoyl derivative. A large number of substances of this type were produced, of which *p*-amino-*m*-

hydroxy-benzoic-methyl-ester, $\text{H}_2\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \\ \diagdown \diagup \end{array} \text{COOCH}_3$, was introduced into practice under the name of *Orthoform*. It is a

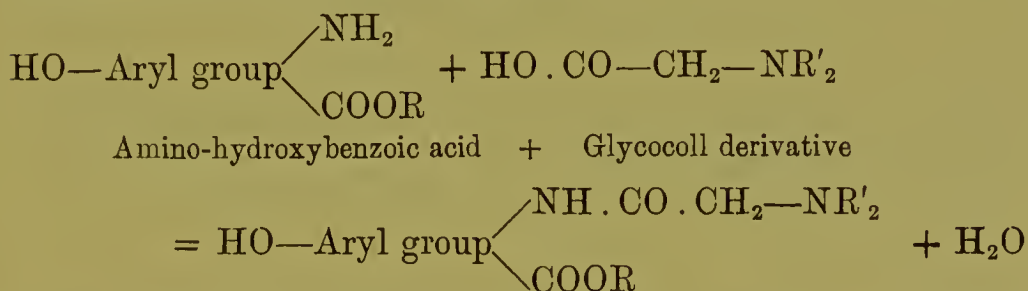
¹ *Münchener med. W.*, 34 (1897), 931; *Annalen*, 311, 26, 154; 325, 305; 359, 145; 371, 125, 131, 142, 162 (1900–1909).

white powder, very slightly soluble in water, which is non-toxic and has no action on the unbroken skin, but produces anæsthesia on coming into contact with the peripheral nerves themselves. It is used as a dusting powder for painful wounds, etc. The high price of orthoform led to the production of an

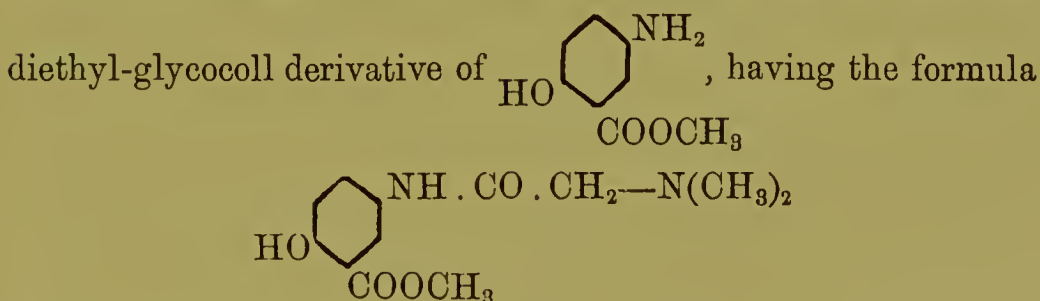
isomeric substance, $\text{NH}_2 \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{COOCH}_3$, called *New Orthoform*,

which has the same physiological action, but is cheaper.¹

These compounds are not sufficiently soluble to be administered hypodermically, and their more soluble hydrochlorides are too strongly acid for this purpose. To overcome this defect, Einhorn has prepared various derivatives of glycocoll with different amino-hydroxybenzoic acids.



These compounds differ from the parent substances in being strongly basic, and hence they can form soluble salts (such as hydrochlorides) of neutral reaction. Their anæsthetic action is not closely related to that of the parent substance. A large number of these compounds have been prepared,² and the



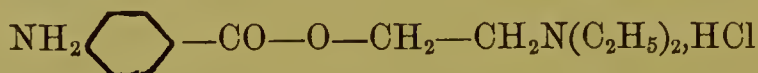
has been introduced into therapeutics, in the form of its hydrochloride, under the name of *Nirvanine*.³ It is easily soluble, and is less toxic than orthoform, which it resembles in its general behaviour.

¹ D. R. P., 97,333, 97,334, 111,932.

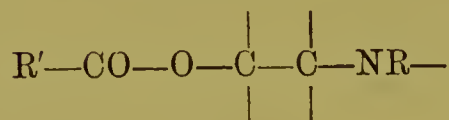
² Ibid., 106,502, 108,027, 108,871.

³ *Münchener med. W.*, 49 (1898).

The simplest local anæsthetic of this type is ethyl para-amino-benzoate, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$, known as *Anæsthesine*. It resembles orthoform in most of its properties, and is said to be free from any toxic action. It is insoluble in cold water, but its solution in olive-oil may be used for hypodermic injection. *Novocaine* is the diethylamine derivative of anæsthesine, having the formula—



which, it will be seen, contains the previously mentioned grouping—



It is a non-irritant and powerful local anæsthetic, only one-seventh as toxic as cocaine.

CHAPTER VIII

MORPHINE GROUP AND ISOQUINOLINE GROUPS OF ALKALOIDS

MORPHINE GROUP

MORPHINE is the most important of the opium alkaloids, and is the one to which most of the physiological effects of opium are due. The principal alkaloids present in opium may be divided into two well-defined groups:—

(1) *The Morphine Group*, consisting of morphine, codeine, and thebaine, all of them very poisonous substances, and containing a phenanthrene nucleus, as well as a nitrogen ring.

(2) *The Papaverine Group*, consisting of narcotine, papaverine, narceine, laudanosine, oxynarcotine, etc. These substances, which are derivatives of isoquinoline, are far less physiologically active than those of the first group. These alkaloids and some of their derivatives will be considered in the next section, and for the present attention will be directed to the members of the first group.

All the opium alkaloids produce nervous depression, beginning in the psychic centres of the brain, and extending downwards through the various cerebral centres in the reverse order of the development, and they also have a strychnine-like action on the cord, giving rise to convulsions. In some of these alkaloids, such as morphine, the depressant (*i.e.* narcotic and analgesic) action predominates, twitchings or convulsions being extremely rare, while in others, such as thebaine, the convulsant action is far stronger, and practically masks the weak narcotic action. Codeine stands between the two, having marked narcotic properties, but in a weaker degree than morphine, while, on the other hand, it is more liable than morphine to give rise to increased reflexes and spasmodic twitchings.

The following table indicates which of these effects predominates:—¹

Morphine (most narcotic),
Papaverine,
Codeine,
Narcotine,
Thebaine,
Laudanine (most convulsant).

Morphine has never been synthesized, and its structure is not even known with certainty, so that this section will deal mainly with the efforts that have been made to synthesize derivatives of morphine, which should differ from it in certain respects with regard to their physiological action, and also with the attempts that have been made to obtain synthetic products, which should possess a similar action to morphine owing to the presence of similar groupings in the molecule. These attempts are hampered by the fact that we do not know which portion of the molecule plays the chief part in determining the physiological action.

Nevertheless, it is necessary to indicate the basis on which our knowledge of the structure of morphine rests. The formula of morphine is $C_{17}H_{19}O_3N$; it is a tertiary base, and contains two hydroxyl groups, one of which is phenolic, and the other alcoholic in character. The alkaloid, *codeine*, $C_{18}H_{21}O_3N$, differs from morphine by CH_2 , and as it contains *one* hydroxyl group,² it therefore appeared probable that it was morphine in which the hydrogen of one of the hydroxyl groups had been replaced by CH_3 . This assumption was shown to be highly probable by the work of Matthiessen and Wright,³ and confirmed in 1881 by Grimaux, who⁴ converted morphine into codeine by direct methylation. Therefore the constitution of codeine and that of morphine can be considered together, the former being $C_{17}H_{17}ON(OH)(OCH_3)$, and the latter $C_{17}H_{17}ON(OH)_2$; the complex $C_{17}H_{17}ON$ being the same in both, it is clear that a knowledge of this complex will reveal the structure of both alkaloids.

¹ Dixon, "Manual of Pharmacology" (1906), p. 131.

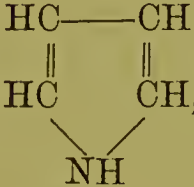

² Wright, *J. C. S.*, **27** (1874), 1031.

³ Matthiessen and Wright, *J. C. S.*, **25** (1872), 506.

⁴ Grimaux, *C. R.*, **93** (1881), 591.

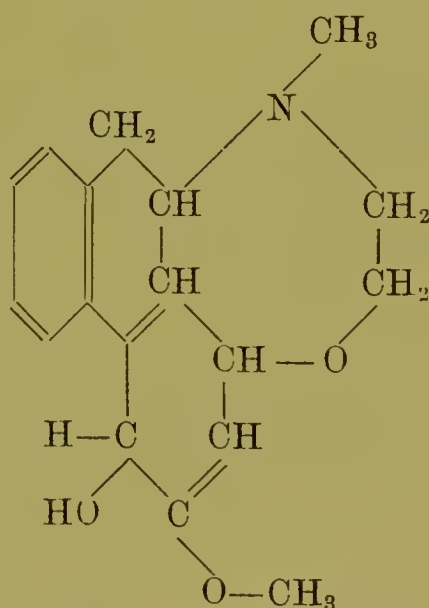
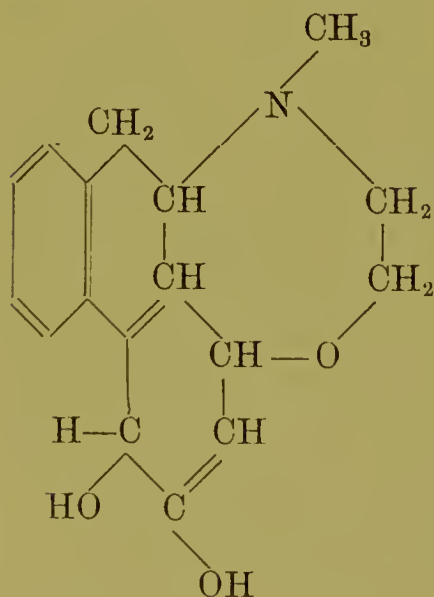
The study of this question has occupied the attention of many chemists, and thanks mainly to the labours of Von-gerichten, Schrötter, Knorr, and Pschorr, we have gained a tolerably clear insight of the nature of this grouping. Von-gerichten and Schrötter by distillation of morphine with zinc

dust obtained phenanthrene, , together


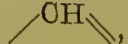
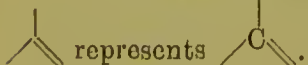

with pyrrol, , pyridine, , trimethylamine,

$N(CH_3)_3$, and ammonia. A detailed account of the numerous investigations that have been carried out on morphine and codeine is beyond the scope of this chapter; an account of the recent work on this subject is given by Dr. H. E. Watt in *Science Progress*, **4**, 279 (1909), and the reader desiring further information is referred to this and to Pictet's "Vegetable Alkaloids." As a result of his own and other investigations, Knorr has suggested the following formula* for morphine—

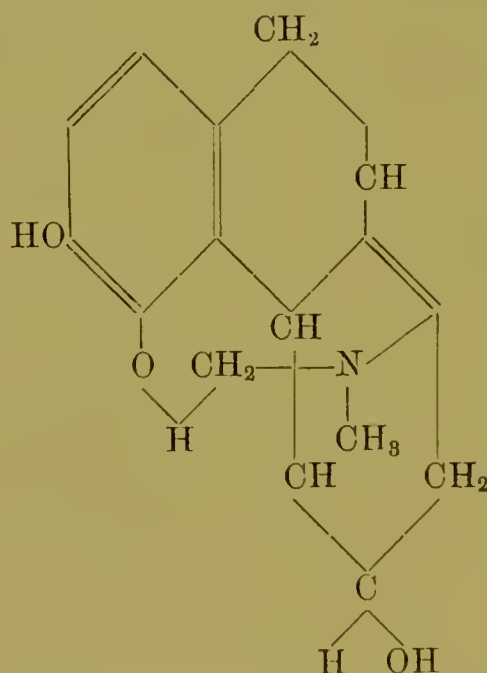
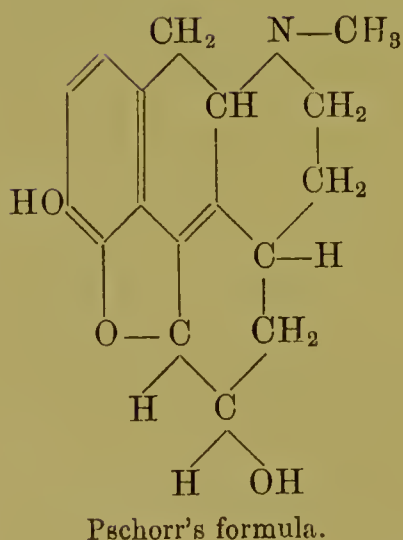
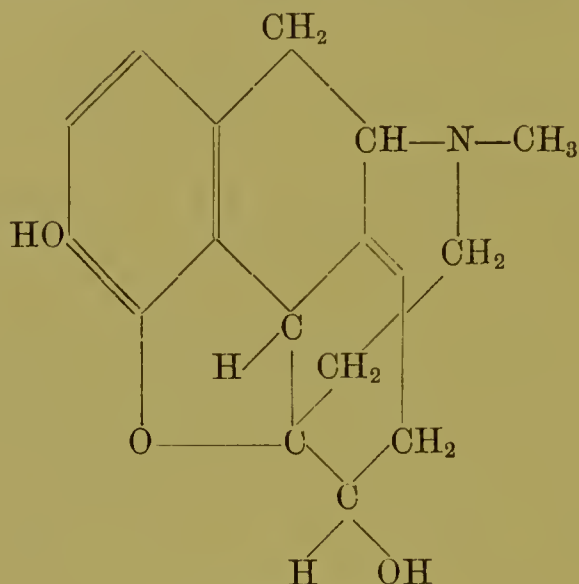
that of codeine being—



More recently Knorr has somewhat modified this formula, as

* In all cases, an unoccupied corner such as  represents , and  represents .

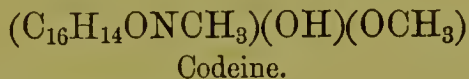
shown below, and Pschorr, Jaeckel, and Fecht have suggested a formula for morphine which depicts it as a derivative of N.-methyl-piperidine. This formula is based on a study of apomorphine, $C_{17}H_{17}O_2N$, a dehydration product of morphine.



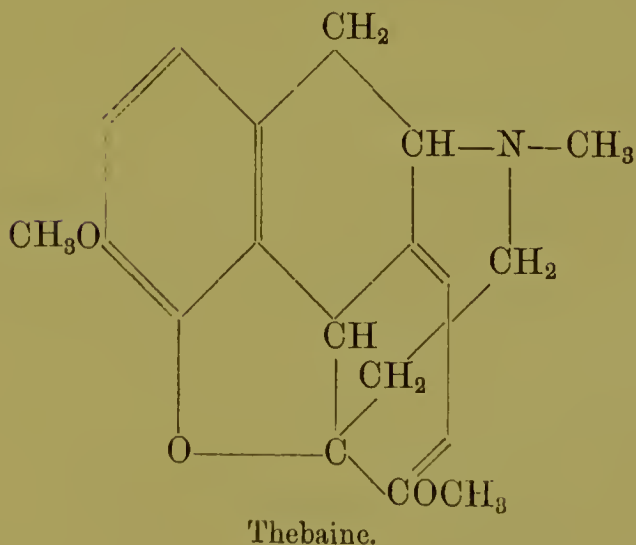
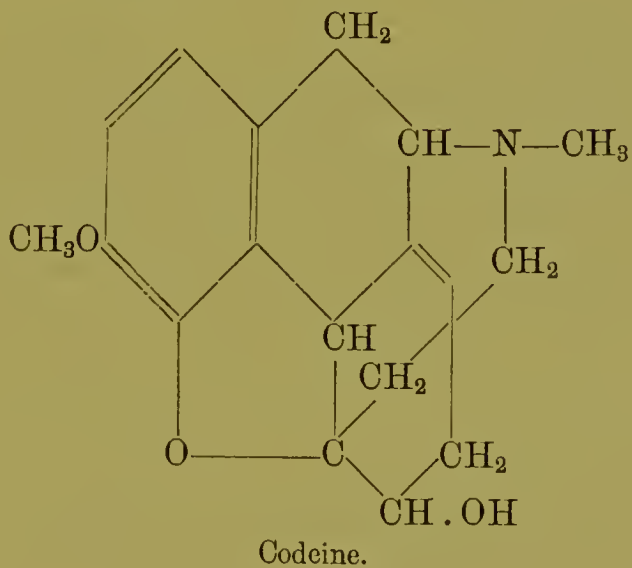
An important difference between these two formulæ and Knorr's earlier formula is that they show the O and N in separate ring systems. Bucherer's formula, as modified by

Knorr, is a link between the two types. In all of these codeine is the same but for the phenolic OH being replaced by OCH_3 .

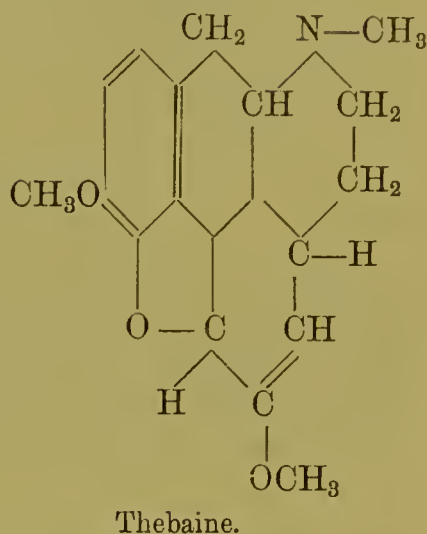
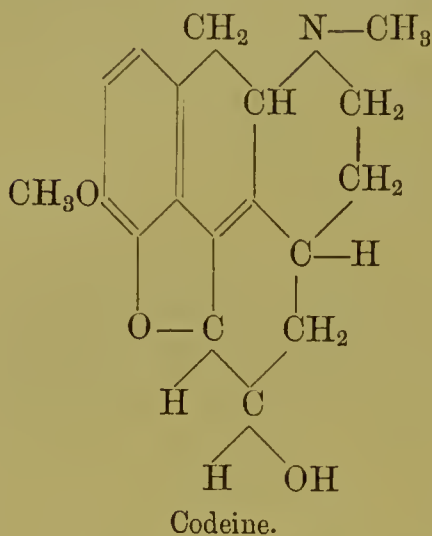
The alkaloid thebaine has been shown by the work of many investigators to be closely related to morphine and codeine.



It differs from morphine and codeine in having *both* the hydroxyl groups replaced by methoxy (OCH_3) groups, and in having two atoms of hydrogen less in the rest of the molecule. Accordingly, if we accept Knorr's formula for codeine, we obtain the following formula for thebaine:—



and on the basis of Pschorr's formula for codeine, the corresponding formula for thebaine is as shown below—



Of the various derivatives prepared from morphine which are used in medicine, the naturally occurring alkaloid codeine is the one which most closely resembles morphine. As already stated, it was first prepared directly from morphine by Grimaux,¹ who also prepared ethylmorphine (codethyline), but since then many other manufacturing methods have been devised in order to obtain better yields. It was first prepared on a large scale by Knoll,² and Pechmann's method of methylation by means of diazo-methane³ has also been applied to the preparation of codeine from morphine,⁴ but by this method also the yields do not appear to be very satisfactory. Methyl sulphate is at the present time a favourite methylating agent, and Merck has devised a means of preparing codeine by the action of methyl sulphate on morphine in the presence of alcohol and sodium.⁵ The neutral alkyl esters of phosphoric and nitric acids can also be used in the same way as the sulphate.⁶

The pharmacology of morphine, codeine, monacetyl-, diacetyl-, and benzoyl-morphine has been investigated by Stockman and Dott,⁷ and that of the homologues of codeine, together with a

¹ Grimaux, *C.R.*, **92** (1881), 1140, 1228; **93** (1881), 67, 217, 591.

² D. R. P., 39,887.

³ *Ber.*, **27** (1894), 1888; **28** (1895), 855, 1624.

⁴ D. R. P., 95,644, 96,145.

⁵ *Ibid.*, 102,634.

⁶ *Ibid.*, 107,225, 108,075.

⁷ Stockman and Dott, *B. M. J.* (1891), 24th Jan. (1890); II. 189; *Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinb.*, 17 (1890), 321.

large number of morphine derivatives by Mering.¹ The action of the higher homologues of codeine is similar to but somewhat weaker than that of codeine itself. Ethyl morphine is somewhat exceptional in having a stronger and more prolonged action than codeine, and is recommended against irritant coughing. Its hydrochloride has been introduced into therapeutics under the name of *Dionine*. The benzyl, ($\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CH}_2$), derivative of morphine also resembles codeine in its action, and has been introduced by Mering in the form of its hydrochloride, under the name of *Peronine*. It is obtained by the action of sodium ethoxide and benzyl chloride on morphine in alcoholic solution.²

The carbonic acid esters of morphine are very unstable, but the acyl derivatives are quite stable, and some of them have attained great practical importance. The acyl derivatives of morphine, in which only the phenolic hydrogen is replaced, mono-acetyl-, propionyl- and benzoyl-morphines closely resemble morphine itself in their physiological action, being intermediate between it and the diacetyl compounds to be described later. (It should be pointed out that in the case of codeine, dionine, and peronine, it is also the hydrogen of the *phenolic* hydroxyl which is replaced by CH_3 , C_2H_5 , and $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.CH}_3$ respectively. These are phenolic *ethers* containing the group —OR , but monoacetyl-, propionyl-, and benzoyl-morphine are phenolic *esters*, containing the group O—CO—R , and are more readily hydrolyzed than the *ethers*.) The derivatives of morphine, in which *both* hydroxyl groups are esterified by acid radicles, have also been investigated by Mering. He investigated the diacetyl, di-propionyl, di-isobutyryl, and di-valeryl derivatives, and found, in confirmation of the work of Stockman and Dott, that these possessed a more decided narcotic action on dogs than codeine, and a stronger tetanic action than morphine. Clinically, they have proved valuable in lowering reflex irritability and calming spasmodic coughing, but in checking pain they are less active than morphine. Under the name of *Heroin*, the diacetyl derivative has attained considerable practical importance in checking coughing arising from irritation, etc.

By the action of dehydrating agents, such as concentrated

¹ Mering, *Merck's Jahresber.* (1898), 5.

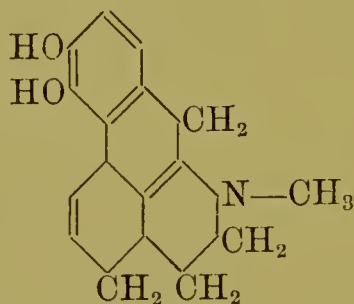
² D. R. P., 91,813.

HCl at 140° C., on morphine, a substance is formed which differs from morphine by the elements of water, and is called *apomorphine*, $C_{17}H_{19}O_3N - H_2O \rightarrow C_{17}H_{17}O_2N$. It differs very greatly from morphine in its physiological action, being a most powerful emetic, and in large doses stimulating the respiratory centre, with consequent quickening of the rate of breathing. Its action is therefore quite opposite to that of morphine. The emetic action of this substance is not local, but is of central-nervous origin through stimulation of the medulla. In therapeutics the hydrochloride is usually used, and is given hypodermically, the dose being soon followed by vomiting without harmful by-effects. The fact that apomorphine can be given in this manner constitutes one of its chief advantages over the peripheral purgatives, which act locally on the alimentary canal.

With regard to the chemical nature of apomorphine, it was first thought that one of the oxygen atoms was present in a hydroxyl group, and the other in an ether group,



as only a mono-acetyl derivative had been prepared,¹ but Pschorr, Jaeckel, and Fecht have shown that both oxygen atoms are present as hydroxyl groups.²



They also prepared a monomethyl ether of apomorphine, which has been shown³ to be identical with the so-called "pseudo"-apocodeine, obtained by heating codeine with anhydrous oxalic acid at 150° C.⁴

Apocodeine, codeine, apomorphine, and morphine all produce

¹ Dankwortt, *Annalen*, **228** (1885), 572.

² *Ber.*, **35** (1902), 4377.

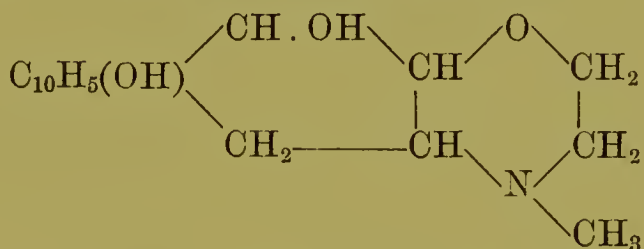
³ Knorr and Raabe, *Ber.*, **41** (1908), 3050.

⁴ *Ber.*, **40** (1907), 3355.

purgation in dogs and cats, but this action is greatest in apocodeine, and diminishes in the order given down to morphine. In the case of apocodeine, the purgative action is greater than the vomiting, and it is stated, when given hypodermically in suitable doses, to produce purgation without vomiting, and its use as a hypodermic purgative has been suggested by Dixon.¹ Such a substance is greatly needed, and should apocodeine come into use for this purpose, it would be one of the most important of artificial drugs.

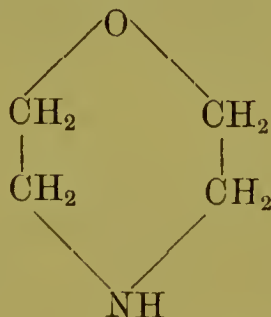
The endeavours that have been made to synthesize substances analogous to morphine do not appear to have been very successful. This is not surprising considering that, apart from any doubt as to the actual constitution of morphine, there is still no means of judging which part of the molecule is most intimately connected with the action of the substance.

The early work of Knorr led him to the conclusion that morphine might be represented by the formula—



a conclusion which was subsequently disproved by his own work.

Knorr gave the name "morpholine" to the grouping—

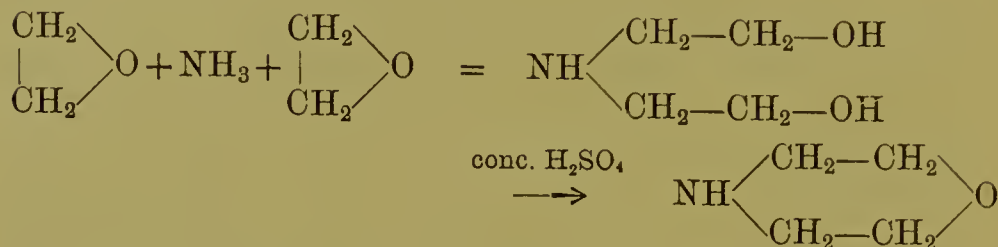


as he regarded it as the parent substance of morphine. A general method of preparing morpholine and its derivatives which was devised by Knorr,² consists in splitting off water

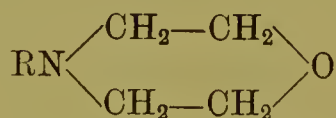
¹ Dixon, *B. M. J.*, Oct. 18, 1902.

² Knorr, *Ber.*, **30** (1897), 909; **31** (1898), 1070, 1969; *D. R. P.*, 95,854.

from dihydroxyethylamines by means of condensing agents, such as 70 per cent. sulphuric acid, acetic anhydride, etc. The dihydroxyethylamines are prepared by the condensation of ethylene-oxide with amines.

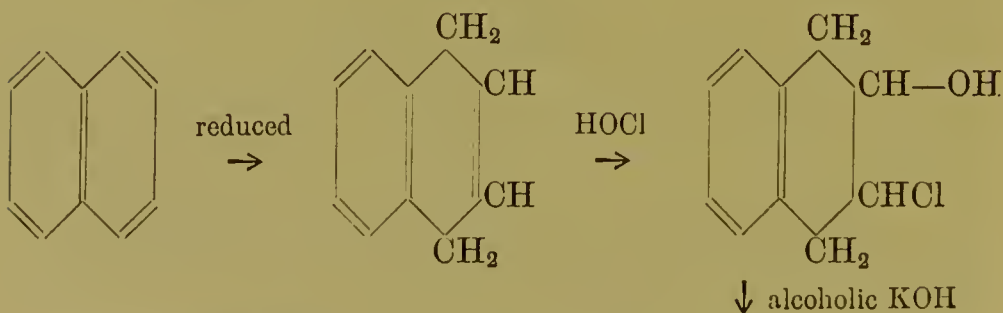


The parent substance, morpholine itself, was prepared in this way, using HCl at 160° as the condensing agent.¹ By using various primary amines of the type RNH₂ instead of ammonia, substituted morpholines of the type—



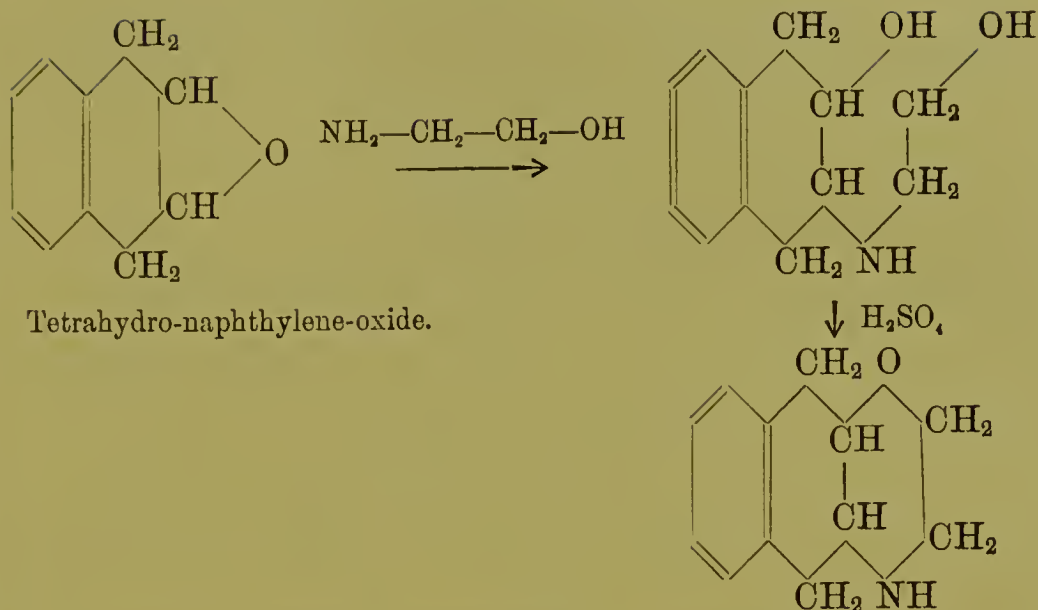
may be obtained, and by using substituted derivatives of ethylene-oxide, such as $\begin{array}{c} \text{R—CH} \\ | \\ \text{R—CH} \end{array} \text{O}$, derivatives of morpholine

can be obtained, some of which are not unlike morphine in their properties. As an example, tetrahydro-naphthalene-morpholine may be mentioned, as it resembles morphine most closely.² It was obtained by condensing an alicyclic derivative of ethylene-oxide, namely, tetrahydro-naphthylene-oxide with hydroxyethylamine.

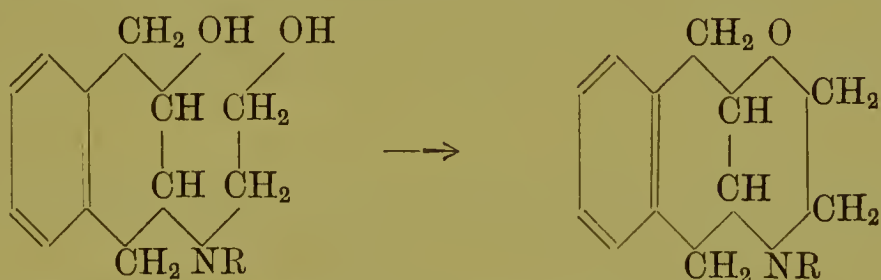


¹ *Ber.*, **22** (1889), 2081.

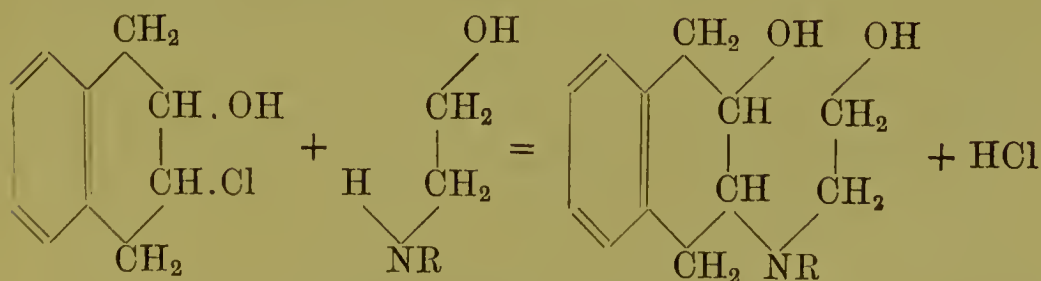
² *Annalen*, **301** (1898), 1; **307** (1899), 171, 187. *Ber.*, **32** (1899), 732.



Another method of preparing derivatives of tetrahydro-naphthalene-morpholine which has been devised by Knorr¹ is by means of the action of hot dilute sulphuric acid on the hydramines of the naphthalene series.



These hydramines can be obtained by the action of the ethanolamines on the chlorhydrin (see above), or on the oxide of dihydronaphthalene.

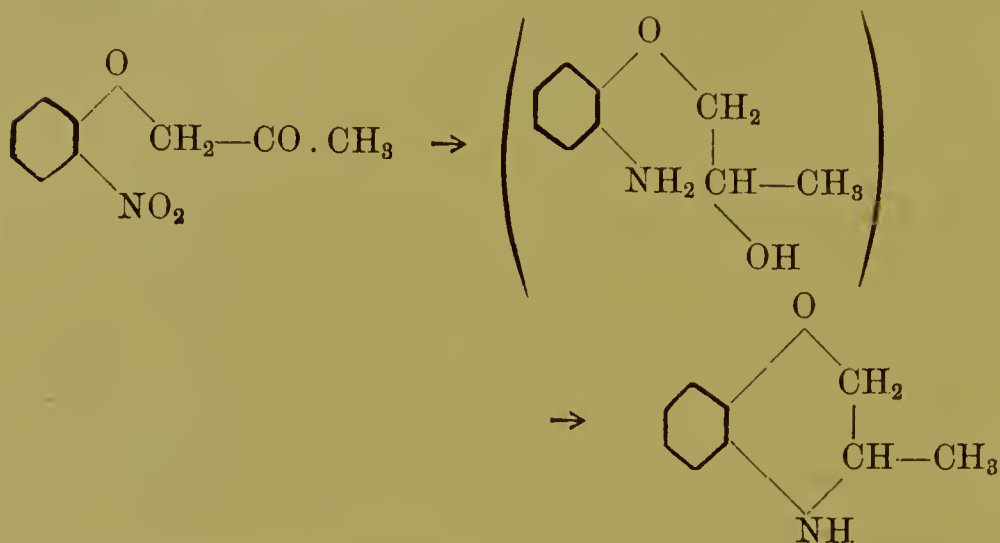


A somewhat different method of obtaining a morpholine derivative has been devised by Störmer,² and consists in reducing a boiling alcoholic solution of ortho-nitro-phenacetol

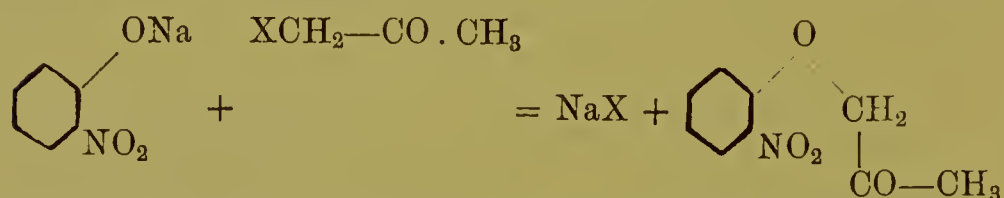
¹ D. R. P., 105,498.

² *Annalen*, 288 (1895), 89.

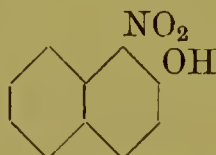
with tin and hydrochloric acid, whereby 2-methyl-phenomorpholine is obtained.



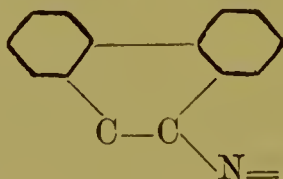
Nitro-phenacetol is obtained by the action of a mono-halogen ketone on the sodium salt of o.-nitrophenol.¹



In a similar way a naphtho-morpholine may be obtained from—



On the other hand, Vahlen² differs from Knorr, and considers that it is the phenanthrene portion of the molecule which is of greatest importance in determining the physiological action of morphine. (Overton has shown that phenanthrene itself has a narcotic action on tadpoles.) Vahlen considers that the "pharmacophore" of morphine is the grouping—



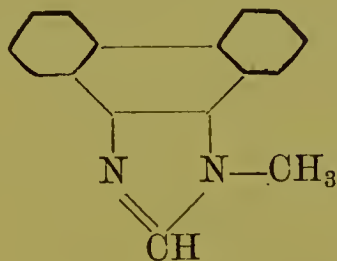
¹ D. R. P., 97,242.

² Vahlen, A. e. P. P., 47 (1901), 368.

and he prepared the hydrochloride of 9-amino 10-hydroxy-phenanthrene—



which he called “morphigenine,” and from this he obtained “epiosine”—



by heating it with sodium acetate, alcohol, and methylamine under pressure. Epiosine, which to a certain extent resembles morphine and codeine in some of its physiological effects, is identical with methyl-diphenylene-iminazole, which has also been prepared by other investigators.¹

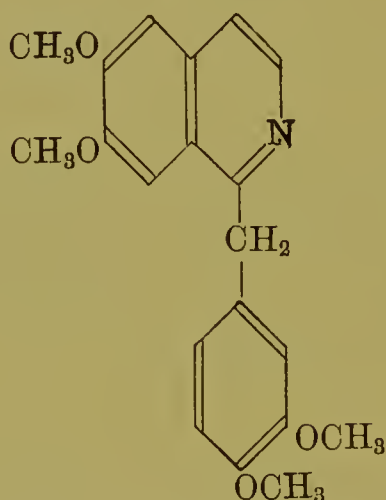
ISOQUINOLINE ALKALOIDS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

The most important of the opium alkaloids have already been dealt with, but there are several others of some importance, most of which are derivatives of isoquinoline. These include narcotine, papaverine, narceine, laudanosine, and laudanine. The physiological action of these alkaloids is generally not so marked as that of the members of the morphine group. The important alkaloids of *Hydrastis canadensis*, namely, hydrastine, berberine, and canadine, are also derivatives of isoquinoline, as also is corydaline, the chief alkaloid present in *Corydalis cava*. Of these various alkaloids, hydrastine is probably the most important from the medical point of view, but various artificial alkaloids have been prepared from many members of this series by simple processes such as oxidation, many of which are of considerable therapeutic importance (*e.g.* cotarnine).

¹ Japp and Davidson, *J. C. S.*, 67 (1895), 1; Zincke and Hof, *Ber.*, 12 (1879), 1644.

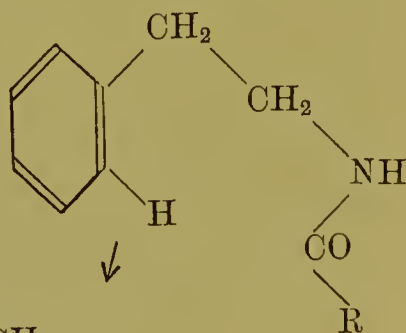
In considering these alkaloids, it will be found that our knowledge of their constitution is far more satisfactory than that of the alkaloids of the morphine group. In the majority of cases, not only is the constitution known with a high degree of certainty, but in recent years it has, in many cases, been confirmed by the synthesis of the alkaloid.

Of the alkaloids of this group found in opium, *narcotine* and *papaverine* are present in the largest quantities. The constitution of the latter has been determined chiefly by the work of Goldschmidt,¹ which leaves no doubt that the structure of this alkaloid is represented by the formula—

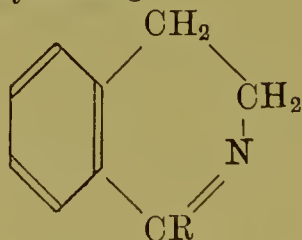


Quite recently this has been confirmed by the brilliant synthesis of papaverine by Pictet of Geneva.²

Pictet had already shown³ that substances of the type—



on treatment with dehydrating agents, lose a molecule of water, giving dihydro - isoquinoline derivatives of the type—

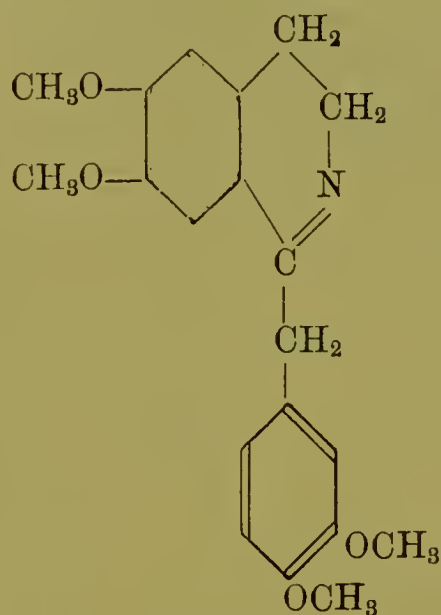


¹ *Monatsh.*, **4**, 714; **6**, 372, 667, 954; **7**, 485; **8**, 510; **9**, 42, 327, 349, 762, 778; **10**, 156, 673, 692; **13**, 697; **17**, 491 (1883-1896).

² Pictet and Gans, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 2943; *C. R.*, **149** (1909), 210.

³ Pictet and Kay, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 1973.

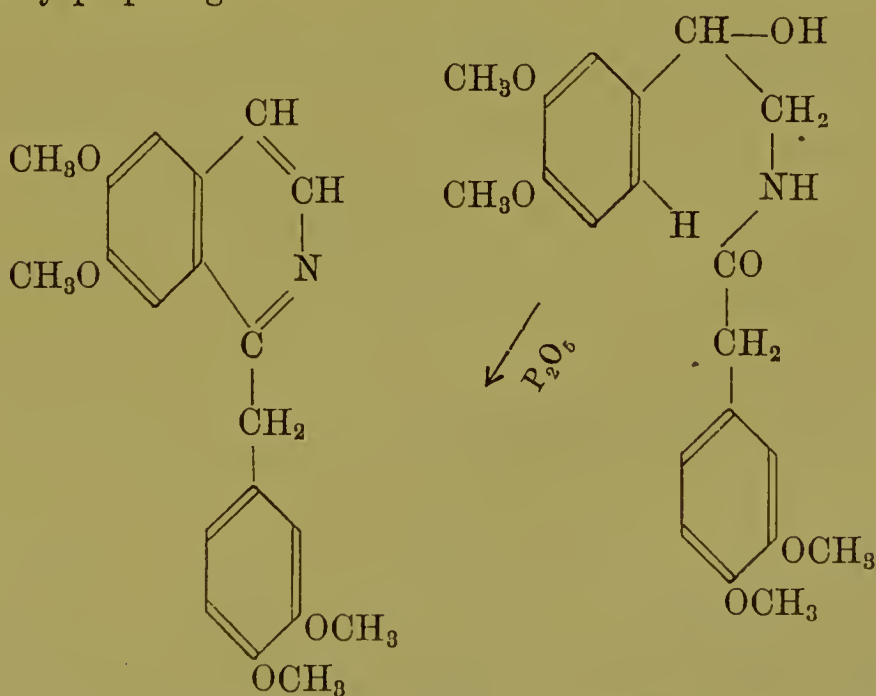
In this way he succeeded in obtaining dihydro-papaverine¹—



but this cannot be converted into papaverine by oxidation, as any attempt to do this leads to the disruption of the whole molecule. Papaverine could not be obtained directly by using $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}=\text{CH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ instead of—

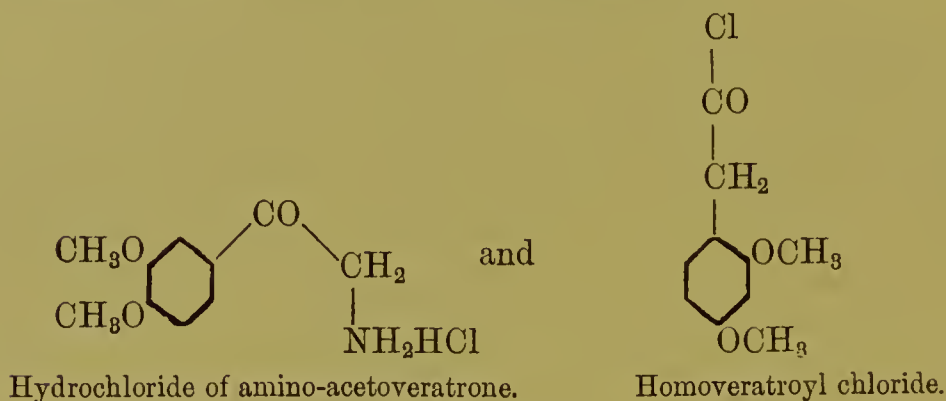


at the beginning of the synthesis, as the former substance is too unstable for this purpose. The difficulty was finally overcome by preparing—

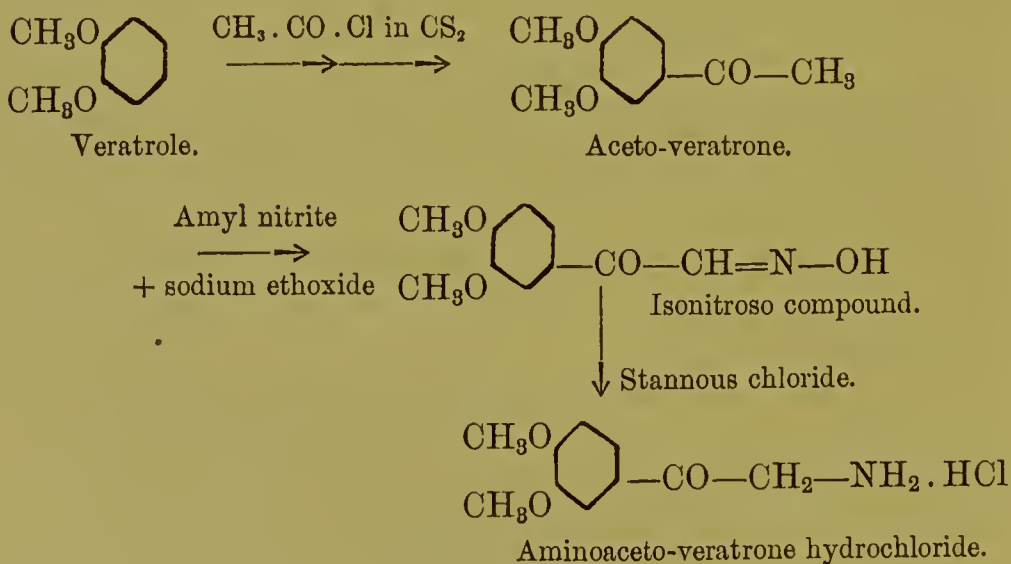


¹ Pictet and Finkelstein, *C. R.*, **148** (1909), 925.

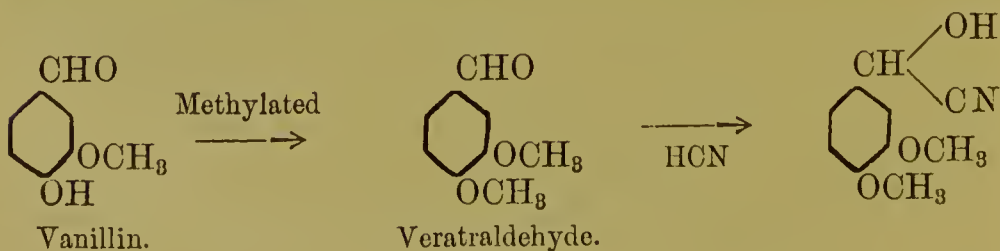
which on treatment with phosphorus pentoxide in xylene solution loses *two* molecules of water with the formation of papaverine. The product thus obtained was in every way identical with papaverine obtained from opium. The first stages of the synthesis are concerned with the preparation of—

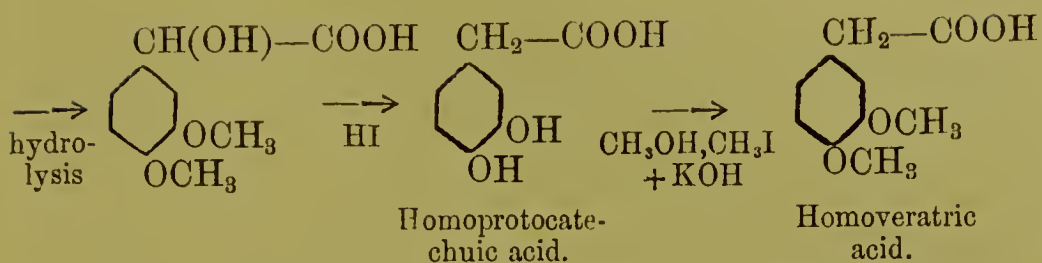


The first mentioned is prepared according to the following scheme:—

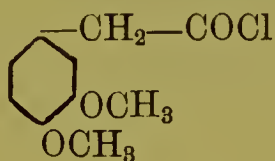


The starting-point of the other half of the synthesis is vanillin—

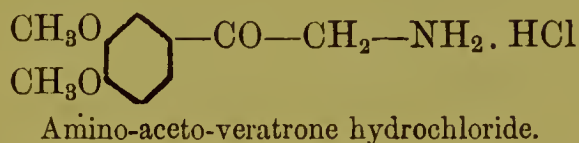




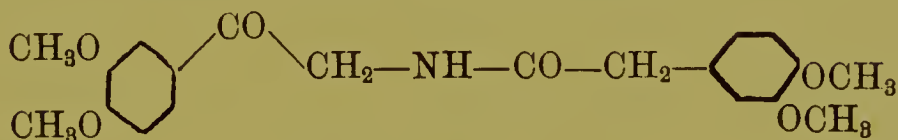
This homoveratric acid, treated with PCl_5 , yields the chloride—



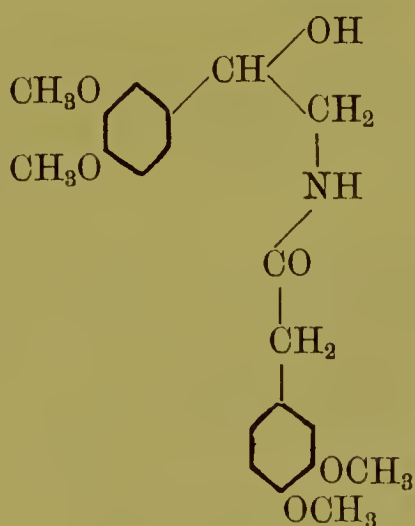
This on shaking with—



in cold potash solution gives, by loss of HCl —



which by reduction with sodium amalgam in alcohol yields—

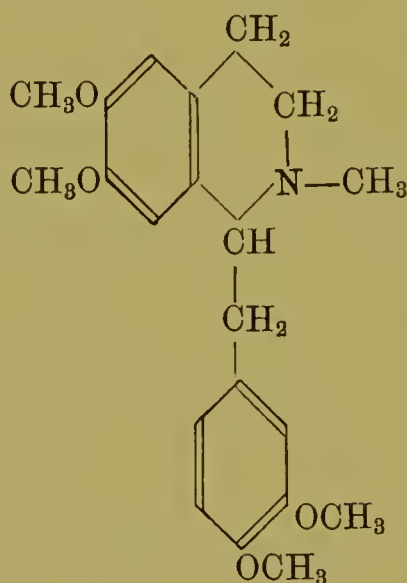


which on dehydration gives papaverine, as previously described.

Papaverine has only a slight narcotic action, being

intermediate in this respect between morphine and codeine.¹ According to Bernard,² the chief opium alkaloids stand in the following order in regard to their power of causing convulsions: Thebaine, papaverine, narcotine, codeine, and morphine. Of these, thebaine is the only one producing strong tetanic convulsions. Of the alkaloids not mentioned in this list, laudanosine and laudanine have this property strongly marked, the former being slightly less and the latter slightly more active than thebaine itself in this respect.

Laudanosine closely resembles papaverine in its structure, being the methyl derivative of tetra-hydro-papaverine.



This was shown by Pictet and Athanescu,³ who obtained it by the reduction of the metho-chloride of papaverine with tin and hydrochloric acid, and resolution of the racemic compound thus obtained with quinic acid. The dextro-compound was found to be identical with laudanosine. It has also been obtained by the reduction of papaverine to tetrahydro-papaverine, and methylation of the latter,⁴ but its complete synthesis, which has been recently accomplished by Pictet and Finkelstein,⁵ is of greater interest. Dihydro-papaverine was synthesized by Pictet's general method for the preparation of this type of

¹ Schröder, *A. e. P. P.*, **17** (1883), 96.

² Bernard, *C. R.*, **59** (1864), 406.

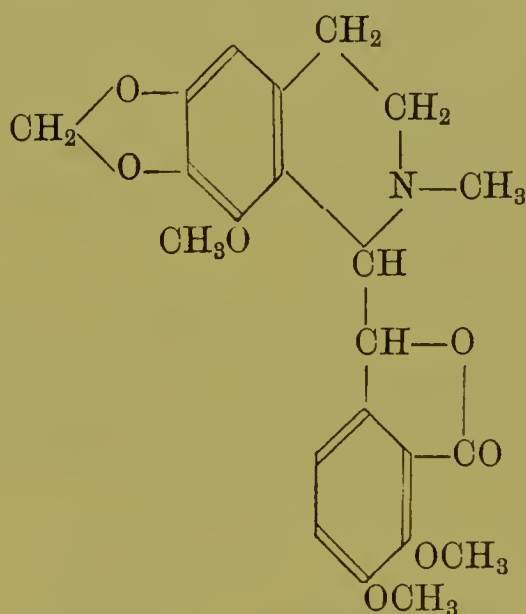
³ *Ber.*, **33** (1900), 2346; *C. R.*, **131** (1900), 689.

⁴ Pyman, *J. C. S.*, **95** (1909), 1610.

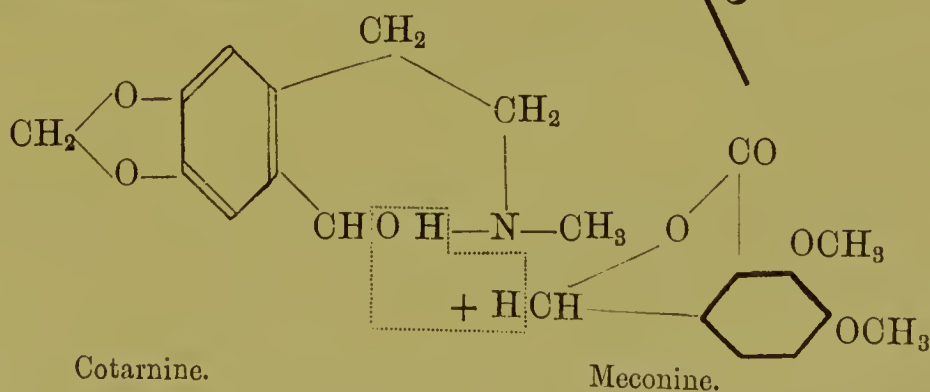
⁵ Pictet and Finkelstein, *C. R.*, **148** (1909), 295.

isoquinoline base (*cf.* previous pages), and the metho-chloride of this compound gave by reduction racemic laudanosine, which was then resolved as described above. This synthesis was carried out a short while before that of papaverine, and was therefore the first complete synthesis of an opium alkaloid.

Narcotine and its decomposition products have provided material for an enormous number of researches. These are too numerous to be described here, but they point to the probability of the structure shown in the accompanying formula.*



Recently narcotine has been synthesized by Perkin and Robinson,¹ who combined cotarnine and meconine—

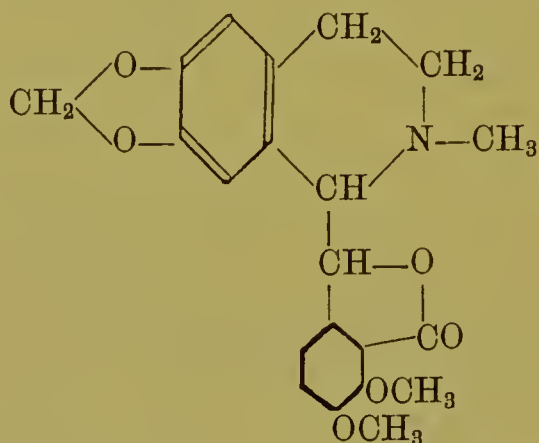


* The positions of the methoxyl, (OCH_3), and piperonyl, $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix}$, groups were doubtful, but have been finally established by Freund and Oppenheim. *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 1084.

¹ Perkin and Robinson, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, **26** (1910), 46 and 131.

thereby obtaining racemic narcotine (gnoscopine), which was then resolved into its optically active constituents. Meconine was synthesized by Fritsch¹ in 1898, and the synthesis of cotarnine has very recently been accomplished by Salway,² so that the synthesis of narcotine is now complete.

The physiological action of narcotine is similar to that of morphine, but less intense. Chemically it is closely related to *hydrastine*, the alkaloid to which the physiological action of *Hydrastis canadensis* is chiefly due. This latter alkaloid, which is an astringent and styptic, is used in uterine hæmorrhage, etc. It was first isolated in a pure condition by Perrins in 1862,³ and the first observations bearing on its structure were made by Power⁴ in 1884. Since then the numerous investigations of Freund and of Schmidt have fully established the structure of this alkaloid. They have shown that it is represented by the formula—



which only differs from that of narcotine by the absence of one methoxy group.

The alkaloid present in largest quantities in *hydrastis* is *berberine*, but its physiological action is not very marked, and hence it does not play so important a part as hydrastine. It is also found in a large number of other plants, and was first discovered in 1826 in the bark of the prickly ash.⁵ It has the formula $C_{20}H_{17}NO_4 + H_2O$, and the work of W. H. Perkin, jun.,

¹ Fritsch, *Annalen*, **301** (1898), 351.

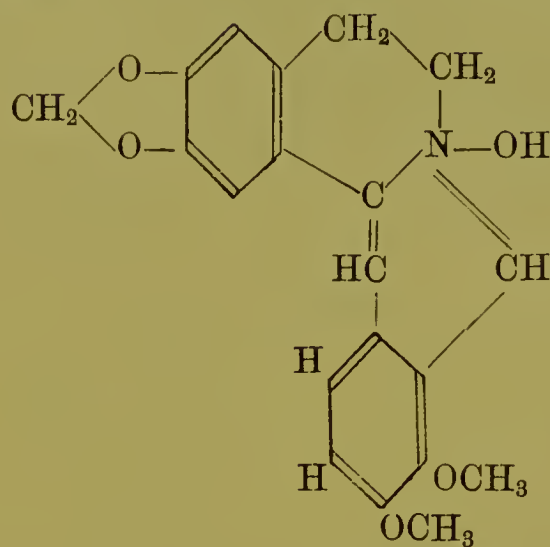
² Salway, *J. C. S.*, **97** (1910), 1208.

³ *Pharmaceutical Journal* [2], **3** (1862), 546.

⁴ *Ibid.* [3], **15** (1884), 297.

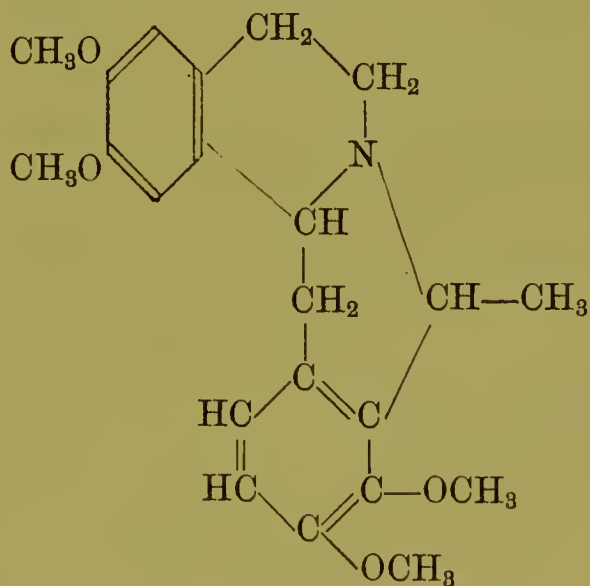
⁵ Chevalier and Pelletan, *Journal de Chimie Medicale*, **2** (1826), 314.

and others indicates that the probable formula of the substance is as shown.¹



Berberine.

This is related to that of hydrastine and narcotine, and is still more closely related to that of corydaline, the chief alkaloid in *Corydalis cava*. *Corydaline* was discovered in 1826 by Wackenroder,² and the formula shown herewith was suggested for it by Dobbie and Lauder.³



An alkaloid which may be regarded as an isoquinoline derivative, although it does not actually contain the isoquinoline ring, is *narceine*. It is found in opium, but does not have a

¹ Perkin and Robinson, *J. C. S.*, 97 (1910), 305.

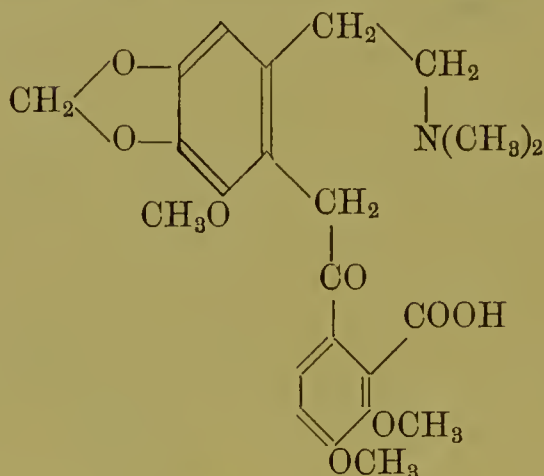
² Berz., *Jahresb.*, 7 (1828), 220.

³ *J. C. S.*, 83 (1903), 605.

well-marked physiological action. It can be obtained from narcotine by heating the metho-chloride of the latter with alkali.

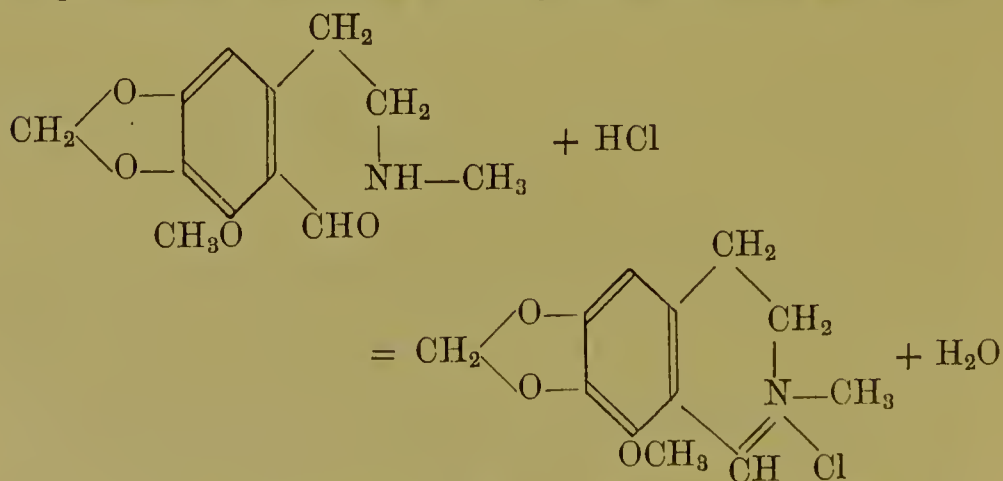


This fact led Freund and Frankforter¹ to suggest the formula—



for narceine, which indicates that it is formed from narcotine by the rupture of both the lactone and the pyridine rings.

One of the most important "artificial alkaloids" that are obtained from the true alkaloids of the isoquinoline series is cotarnine. It was first obtained, together with opianic acid, by Wöhler² in 1844, by the oxidation of narcotine with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid. This substance resembles narceine in the fact that in the free base the pyridine ring is opened out, but in the salts which are formed with elimination of water, the ring closes and derivatives of di-hydro-isoquinoline are formed.



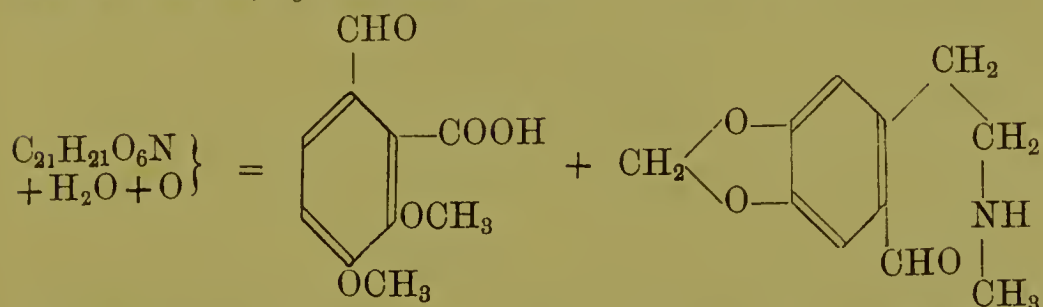
There is some evidence that the free base also exists as an isoquinoline derivative of this quaternary ammonium form

¹ *Annalen*, 277 (1893), 20.

² *Annalen*, 50 (1844), 1.

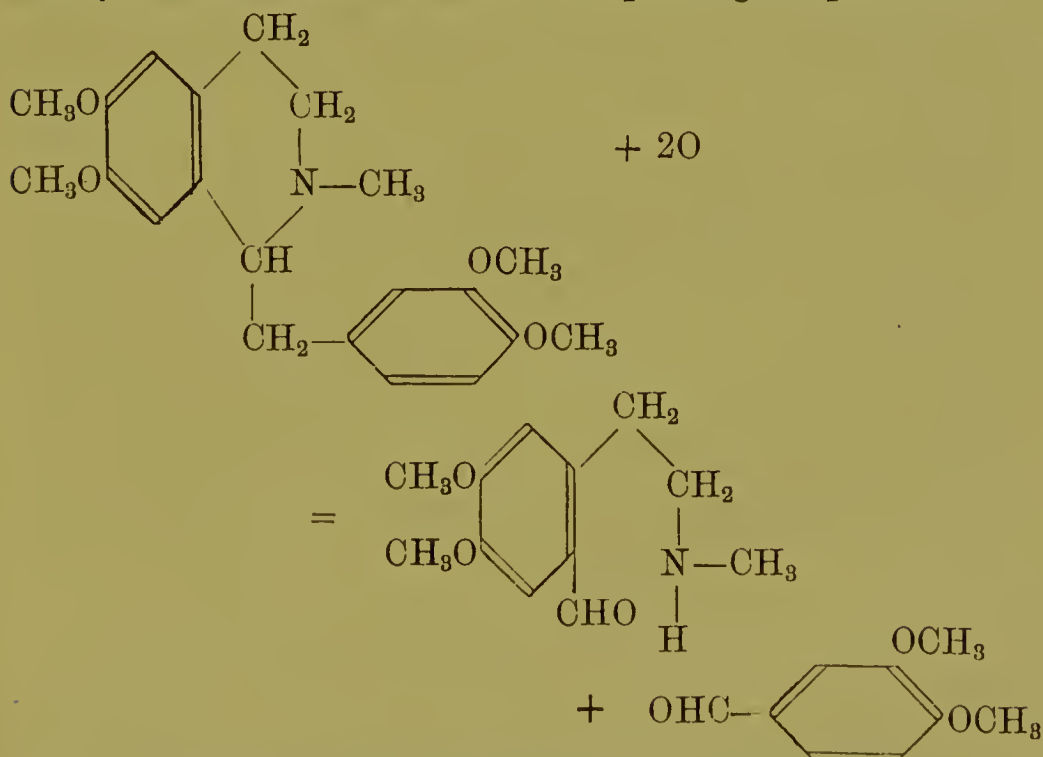
when dissolved in alcohol.¹ This alkaloid is of importance in medicine as a styptic and as a uterine sedative, and has been brought into the market under the name of "*Stypticine*," and its phthalic acid salt under the name of "*Styptol*."

Hydrastine, on oxidation with MnO_2 and H_2SO_4 , behaves in a very similar way to narcotine, yielding opianic acid and a basic substance, *hydrastinine*, which corresponds to *cotarnine*—



Physiologically, hydrastinine resembles cotarnine very closely.

It has recently been shown by Pyman,² that laudanosine, on oxidation with MnO_2 and H_2SO_4 , behaves in a precisely similar way to narcotine and hydrastine. The products are a basic substance, 4-5 dimethoxy-2 β methylaminoethyl-benzaldehyde, and veratraldehyde, the former being analogous to cotarnine and hydrastinine, and the latter corresponding to opianic acid.

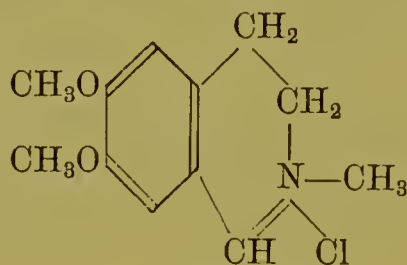


¹ Dobbie, Lauder, and Tinkler, *J. C. S.*, **83** (1903), 593.

² Pyman, *J. C. S.*, **95** (1909), 1266.

The former combines with acids to form salts of the isomeric iso-quinolinium hydroxide, in just the same way as do cotarnine and hydrastinine.

Of these, the chloride, which is 6-7 dimethoxy-2 methyl-3-4-dihydro-isoquinolinium chloride, has been introduced into practice under the name "*Lodal*"—¹



It causes a rise of blood pressure, and renders the heart-beat slower and stronger.

Other pressor substances which have been obtained from isoquinoline alkaloids will be considered in the next chapter.

It is of interest to note that the N-methyl derivatives of tetrahydro-isoquinoline (narcotine, laudanosine, and hydrastine) are convulsant poisons, while those derived from dihydro-isoquinoline (cotarnine, "*Lodal*," and hydrastinine) are not. This relation does not hold for those derivatives, such as papaverine, which contain no methyl group attached to the nitrogen.

¹ Wellcome and Pyman, English Patent (1909), 314.

CHAPTER IX

ADRENALINE AND OTHER DERIVATIVES OF ETHYLAMINE

WITHIN recent years, a large number of ethylamine derivatives, possessing powerful physiological action, have been isolated from various plant and animal sources. Many of these are derivatives of para-hydroxyphenylethylamine, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$, and have the property of producing effects very similar to those produced by stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system,* one of the most notable of these being rise of blood pressure. Para-hydroxyphenylethylamine is present in aqueous extracts of ergot, and other closely related substances are also found in various plants, but the most important compound of this class is adrenaline, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \underset{\text{HO}}{\text{CH}}(\text{OH}) \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH} \text{---} \text{CH}_3$, an active

principle which has been isolated from the suprarenal glands. It was first obtained in the impure condition by Abel and Crawford, in 1897,¹ and in a more pure condition as the benzoyl derivative by Abel, in 1899.² It was called epinephrine by these investigators, and it was also isolated by von Fürth,³ who gave it the name suprarenine. The name adrenaline was first given to it by Takamine,⁴ who was also the first to obtain it in a crystalline condition. He proposed the formula $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{13}\text{O}_3\text{N}$ from the results of his analyses, and also made the first observations throwing some light on its constitution, as he obtained

* Barger and Dale suggest the term "sympathomimetic" to describe this action.

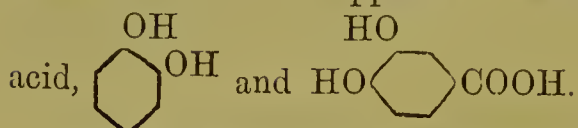
¹ *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **28** (1898), 318.

² *Amer. Jour. of Physiol.*, **3** (1900), xvii.-xviii.; *Proc. of Amer. Physiol. Soc.* (1898), 3.

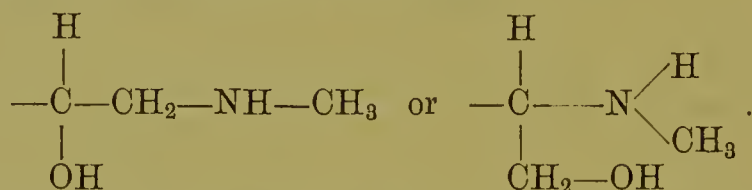
³ Von Fürth, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **29** (1900), 105.

⁴ Takamine, *Amer. Journ. Pharm.*, **73** (1901), 523; *Proc. Physiol. Soc.* (1901), xxix.-xxx.; D. R. P., 131,496.

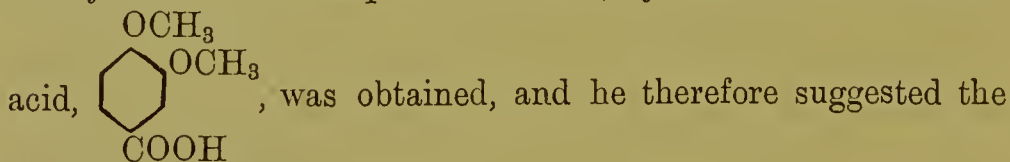
substances from it supposed to be catechol and protocatechuic



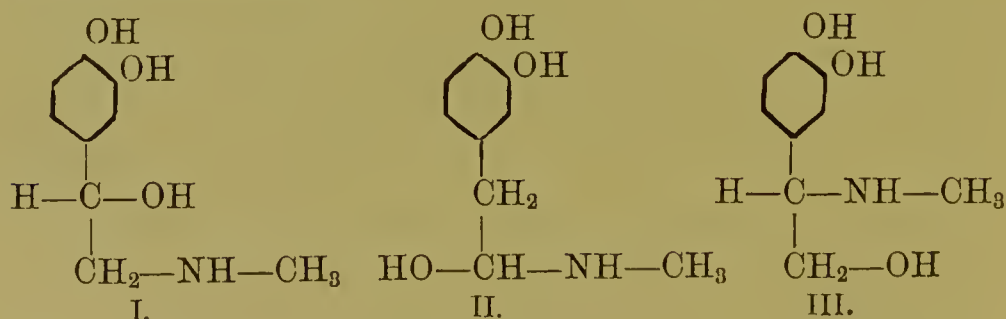
Shortly afterwards it was isolated by Aldrich by means of a somewhat different method, and he gave to it the formula $C_9H_{13}O_3N$, which is now universally accepted. Abel still preferred the formula $C_{10}H_{13}O_3N, \frac{1}{2}H_2O$, which corresponds to almost identically the same composition as $C_9H_{13}O_3N$, but he brought forward no evidence to show that it contained water of crystallization. Pauly¹ confirmed the formula $C_9H_{13}O_3N$, and suggested that it contained the groupings—



Von Fürth² had already suggested the formula $(HO)_2C_6H_3-[C_2H_3(OH)NH-CH_3]$, as he had found that it did not contain a methoxy group, and that it yielded methylamine salts on treatment with concentrated acids. Jowett³ confirmed the formula $C_9H_{13}O_3N$, and from the products of a potash fusion isolated a small quantity of a substance believed to be protocatechuic acid, but obtained more positive evidence by methylation and subsequent oxidation, by which means veratric



alternative formulæ—



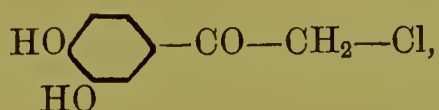
¹ Pauly, *Ber.*, **36** (1903), 2944.

² Von Fürth, *Beitr. Chem. Physiol. Path.*, **1** (1901), 243.

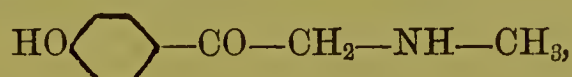
³ Jowett, *J. C. S.*, **85** (1904), 192.

with a preference in favour of I., which is the formula at present accepted as representing the constitution of adrenaline.

In 1904, Friedmann¹ showed that the benzenesulphonyl derivative of adrenaline on oxidation yielded the corresponding derivative of a ketone *adrenalone*, which he also obtained by the action of methylamine on chloracetyl-catechol—

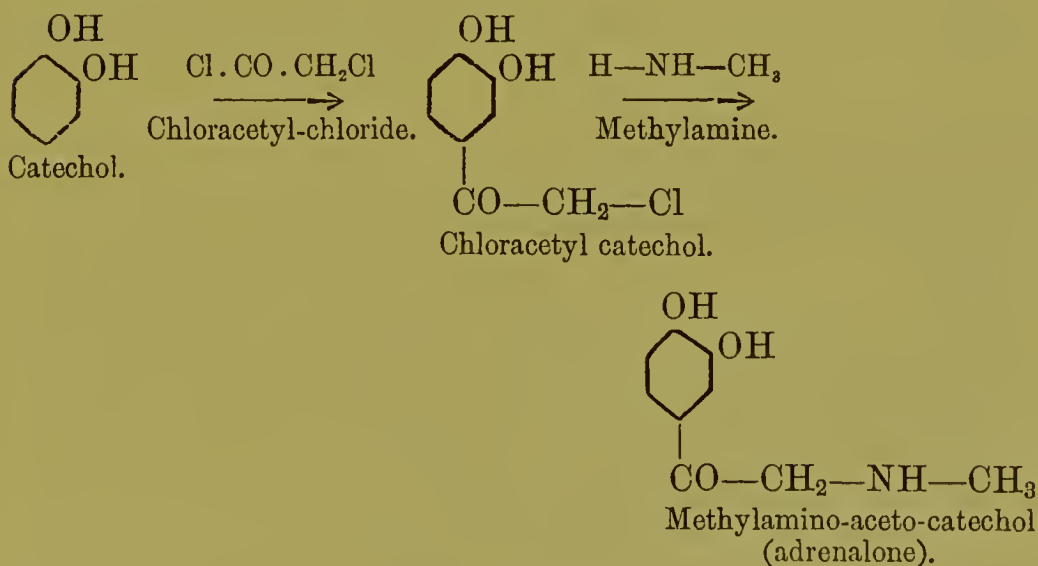


and which, therefore, has the constitution—



and this confirms Jowett's formula for adrenaline.

From this time onwards, the chemical investigations of adrenaline have had as their chief object the synthesis of this important and valuable substance. The adrenalone of Friedmann can be obtained by the action of an excess of methylamine on chloracetyl-catechol, the resultant base being precipitated by ammonia.²

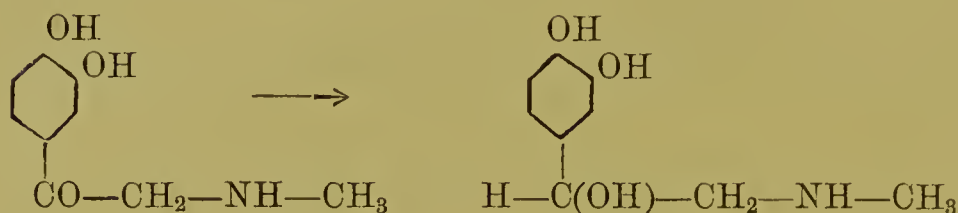


The reduction of this ketone to the corresponding secondary alcohol (adrenaline) presented great difficulty, but it was

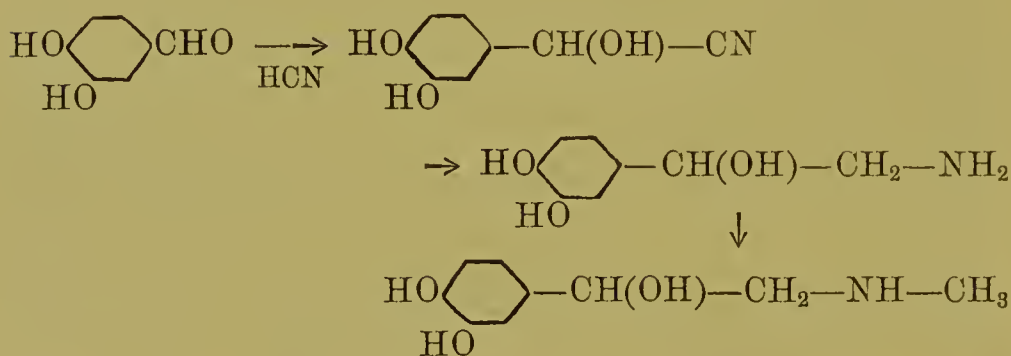
¹ *Beitr. Chem. Physiol. und Pathologie*, **6** (1904), 92.

² Stolz, *Ber.*, **37** (1904), 4149; D. R. P., 152,814; English Patent (1903), 25,480. Dakin, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **76**, B (1905), 491.

successfully accomplished by electrolytic reduction or by the action of aluminium amalgam on the sparingly soluble sulphate of the ketonic base.¹



Another method for the synthesis of adrenaline starts from protocatechuic aldehyde. This on treatment with hydrocyanic acid yields the cyanhydrin, which is then reduced to an amine which can be converted to adrenaline by methylation. This method is not used commercially.



The product thus obtained is the racemic form of adrenaline, which is less active than the naturally occurring lævo-rotatory variety.

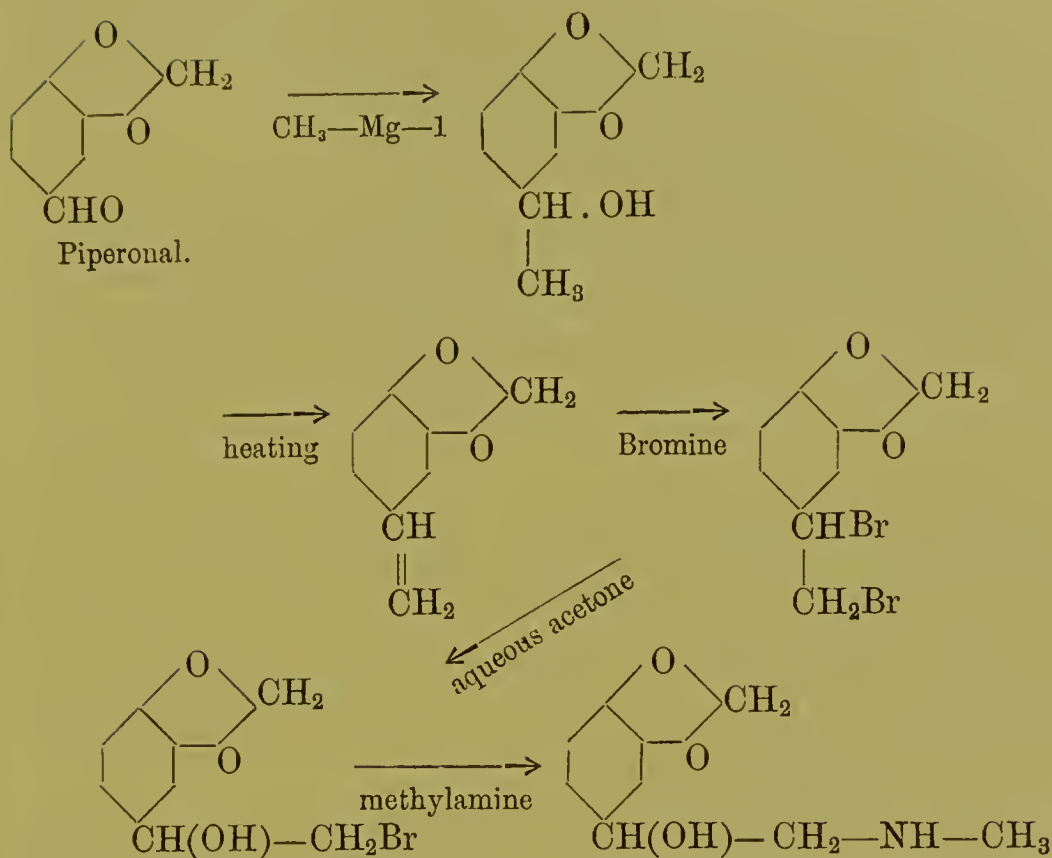
The resolution of racemic adrenaline into its two optically active components has been accomplished by means of the fractional precipitation of its salts with tartaric acid, and also by means of *Penicillium glaucum*.² The synthesis of natural adrenaline is therefore complete.

The methylene and dimethyl ethers of adrenaline have been synthesized by means of a different method,³ but unfortunately these could not be transformed into adrenaline itself.

¹ D. R. P., 157,300. Also Dakin, *loc. cit.*

² Flücher, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 58 (1908), 185, 189; and also Meister, Lucius, and Brüning, D. R. P., 222,451.

³ Barger and Jowett, *J. C. S.*, 87 (1905), 967.

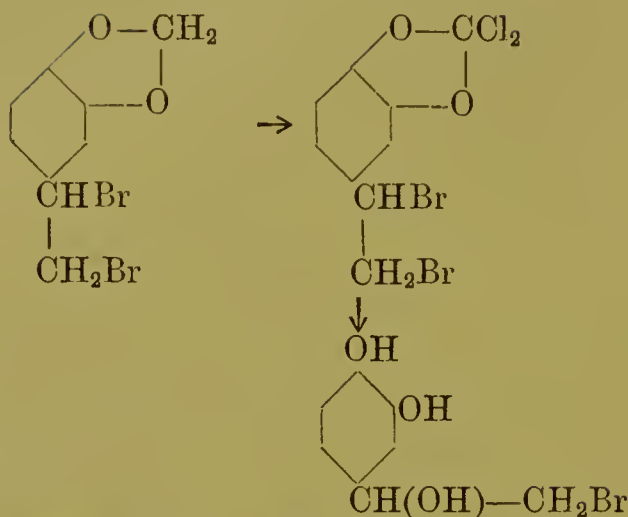


The methylene ether of adrenaline thus formed has a physiological action similar to that of adrenaline itself. Similarly

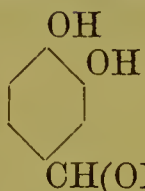
veratraldehyde, was transformed into the dimethyl-

ether of adrenaline, , although

this was only obtained as a syrup. Although by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on the methylene ether, Barger and Jowett (*loc. cit.*) were unable to obtain a chlorinated compound which should yield the dihydroxy-compound with water—

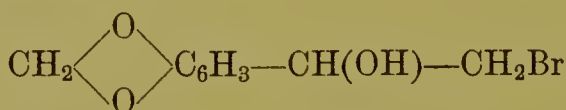


Böttcher¹ states that an excess of phosphorus pentachloride

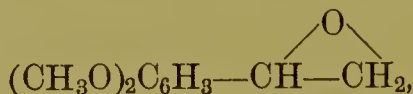
gives , which with aqueous methylamine

yields a physiologically active base, supposed to be adrenaline. Pauly,² however, considers that Böttcher has not proved the formation of adrenaline by this method.

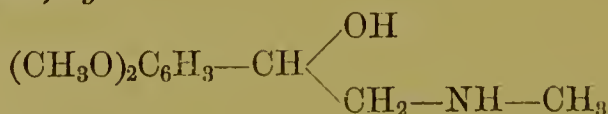
Considerable light has been thrown on this reaction by Mannich,³ who showed that a mere direct replacement of the halogen by the methylamino group does not take place in chlor- or bromhydrins of the types—



and $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{—CH}(\text{OH})\text{—CH}_2\text{Br}$. Under the influence of methylamine, hydrobromic or hydrochloric acid is lost, resulting in the formation of an unstable oxide of the type—



which then reacts with more methylamine to form bases of the adrenaline series, *e.g.*—

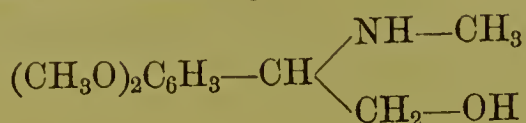


¹ Böttcher, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 253.

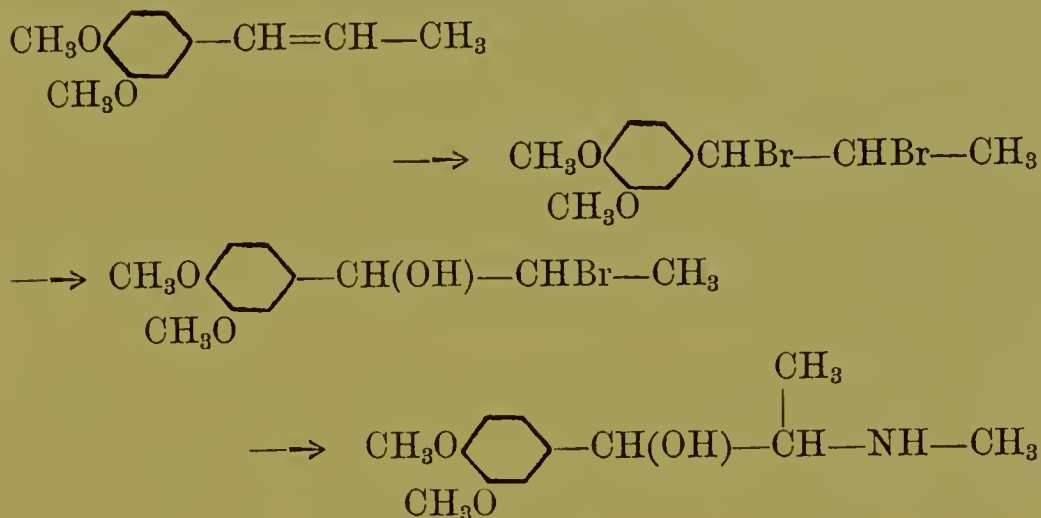
² Pauly, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 484.

³ Mannich, *Arch. Pharm.*, **248** (1910), 127.

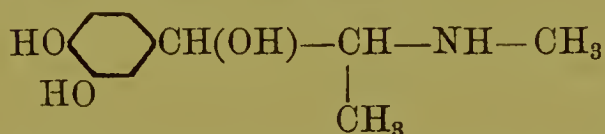
or of the isoadrenaline series, *e.g.*—



Mannich and Jacobsohn¹ succeeded in preparing the methylene and dimethyl ethers of adrenaline in a pure state, and they also obtained the methyl ether of β -methyl-adrenaline by the action of bromine on methyl-isoeugenole.



This then gives β -methyl-adrenaline—



on treatment with hydriodic acid. According to Kobert this substance has not the physiological action of adrenaline.

Meanwhile an extended physiological investigation of adrenaline was carried out by Elliott,² who confirmed and extended the earlier work which Schäfer and Oliver, and Langley had carried out with extracts of the gland. In general, the effect of adrenaline on any structure is similar to that which follows excitation of the sympathetic nerves supplying the tissue. If administered subcutaneously or locally to mucous surfaces, it causes very marked constriction of the blood-vessels, and so arrests bleeding. In moderate doses, subcutaneous injections produce no general systemic effect, very much larger doses being needed to raise the blood pressure by this means.

¹ Mannich and Jacobsohn, *Apothek. Zeitg.*, **24** (1909), 60.

² Elliott, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **32** (1905), 401.

It is of interest to note that there is a very marked difference in the physiological activity of the naturally occurring lævo-adrenaline and the dextro isomeride, this being one of the very best examples of difference in physiological behaviour between stereo-isomerides. It was shown by Cushny¹ that natural lævo-adrenaline acts approximately twice as strongly in increasing the blood pressure as synthetic racemic-adrenaline, and presumably also on the other organs affected by adrenaline. From this it was inferred that *d*-adrenaline was inactive on these tissues, and this view was apparently confirmed by an examination of partly isolated *d*-adrenaline. The general character of these results was confirmed by other workers,² but subsequently Cushny³ showed that *d*-adrenaline is not quite inert in this respect, but has an activity about one-twelfth of that of *l*-adrenaline, so that the action of *r*-adrenaline is almost entirely due to the *l*-adrenaline contained in it.

The synthetic racemic mixture can be completely converted into the desired active component. Either the dextro or the lævo compound can be racemized by treatment with acids; the inactive mixture is then resolved into its components, and the isomeride not required can then be again racemized and subsequently resolved, this process being repeated as often as required.⁴ The authors of this method state that the dextro compound also possesses valuable therapeutic properties.

The therapeutic uses of adrenaline are very numerous, and a mere list of the references to the literature of this subject would fill pages; an account of many of these publications is given in Merck's Reports for the last six or eight years. Adrenaline is largely used in conjunction with cocaine and eucaine, as it produces a localized anæmia, and so checks bleeding, and it also appears to neutralize the toxic effect of cocaine. The action of adrenaline in producing ischæmia finds application in a variety of complaints, hay-fever being an example.

Adrenaline is also met with under the names of hemisime, adrenine, epinephrine, suprarenine, etc.

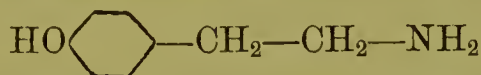
¹ Cushny, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **37** (1908), 130.

² Abderhalden and Müller, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **58** (1908), 185; Abderhalden and Thies, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **59** (1909), 22; Abderhalden and Slavy, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **55** (1909), 129.

³ Cushny, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **38** (1909), 259.

⁴ D. R. P., 220,355.

Recently various substances chemically related to adrenaline, and to a large extent resembling it in their physiological action, have been isolated from various plant and animal sources. Of these, *para*-hydroxyphenylethylamine,



which may be regarded as the mother substance of the series, is the most important. It was first prepared in small quantities

by heating tyrosine,¹ $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{CH}} \text{---} \text{COOH}$, and it has

since been obtained in small quantities from various animal sources. Putrid meat has for some time been known to produce a rise of blood pressure (pressor action), and in 1909 it was found that this action was due to a number of amines,² of which *para*-hydroxy-phenyl-ethylamine had the most powerful action. The amines which showed this action in a weaker degree were iso-amylamine, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$, and phenylethylamine. It is almost certain that these bases are produced in the process of putrefaction by loss of carbon dioxide from the corresponding amino acids:—

Para-hydroxyphenylethylamine, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$,

from tyrosine, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{CH}} \begin{matrix} \text{COOH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{matrix}$.

Phenylethylamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$, from phenyl-

alanine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{CH}} \begin{matrix} \text{COOH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{matrix}$.

And isoamylamine, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{NH}_2$, from

leucine, $(\text{CH}_3)_2 \text{---} \text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{CH}} \begin{matrix} \text{COOH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{matrix}$.

Putrid placental extracts had also been shown to produce a pressor action,³ and *para*-hydroxyphenylethylamine has been isolated from such extracts.⁴

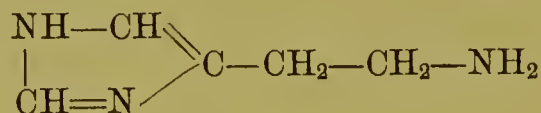
¹ Schmidt and Nasse, *Annalen*, **133** (1865), 214.

² Barger and Walpole, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **38** (1909), 343; Dale and Dixon, *ibid.*, **39** (1909), 25.

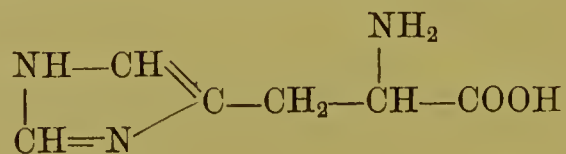
³ Dixon and Taylor, *B. M. J.*, II. (1907), 1150.

⁴ Rosenheim, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **38** (1909), 337.

The drug ergot has long been used on account of its therapeutic properties, but it is very variable in its activity, and requires to be physiologically standardized owing to the unsatisfactory state of our knowledge of the alkaloids present in ergot. Recently, however, a great deal of light has been thrown on the chemistry of ergot by the work of Barger, Dale, and others. The amorphous alkaloid ergotoxine¹ is physiologically active, but it does not possess all the characteristics of the action of ergot, and the small amount of this alkaloid present in most pharmacopœial preparations of ergot led to the postulation of an active principle soluble in water.² The physiological properties of para-hydroxyphenylethylamine suggested that it might be the expected active principle, and this expectation was realized when it was shown to be present in aqueous extracts of ergot,³ and to be the chief cause of their physiological action. Not only has this substance been isolated from ergot,⁴ but synthetic methods for its preparation have been devised which have rendered practicable its introduction into therapeutics. These syntheses will be discussed together with those of other compounds of this series, but mention should be made at this point of another base isolated from ergot.⁵ This is β iminazoly-ethylamine—



and it is formed from the amino-acid, histidine—



by loss of carbon dioxide in just the same way as p.-hydroxyphenylethylamine is formed from tyrosine. The action of ergot in producing gangrene of the cock's comb is regarded⁶ as

¹ Barger and Carr, *J. C. S.*, **91** (1907), 357.

² Barger and Dale, *Bio-Chemical Journal*, **2** (1907), 286.

³ Barger and Dale, *Proc. Physiol. Soc.*, May 15, 1909.

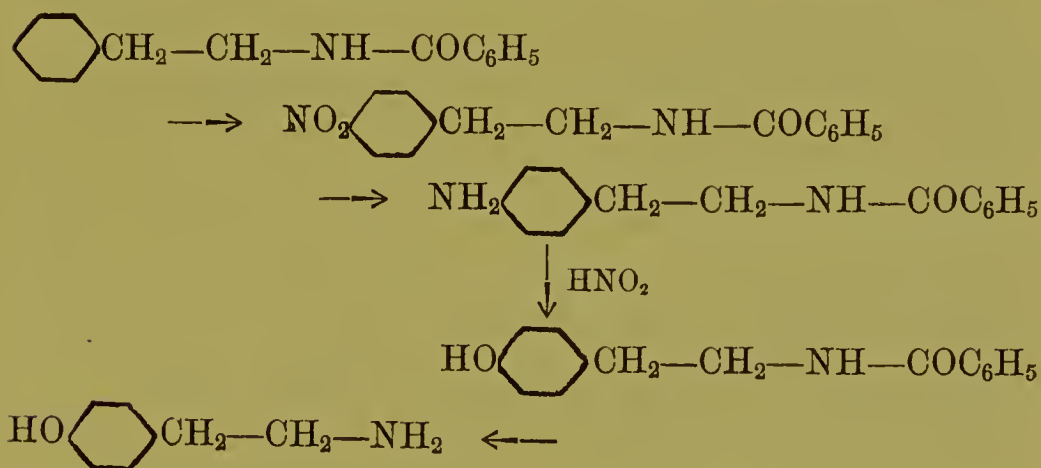
⁴ Barger, *J. C. S.*, **95** (1909), 1123; English Patent (1909), 814.

⁵ Barger and Dale, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, **26** (1910), 128; *J. C. S.*, **97** (1910), 2592.

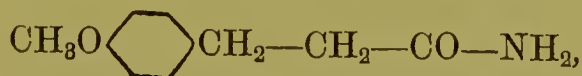
⁶ Barger and Dale, *Proc. Physiol. Soc.*, 1st July, 1910, xxxviii.

being due to the alkaloid ergotoxine, and the rise in blood pressure is attributed to p.-hydroxyphenylethylamine, while the powerful action of ergot in stimulating the isolated uterus to tonic contraction is caused by β iminazoly-ethylamine. This substance, although it has a very powerful physiological action, differs from all the other active derivatives of ethylamine described in this chapter in causing a lowering instead of a rise of blood pressure.

The original method for the synthesis of p.-hydroxyphenylethylamine was by the reduction of p.-hydroxyphenylacetonitrile,¹ $\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CN}$, and subsequently two other methods of synthesis were described.² One of these is by the nitration of benzoyl-phenylethylamine, reduction of the resulting para-nitro compound to the amine, which yields the benzoyl derivative of the desired product when diazotized in boiling solution. This benzoyl derivative is then hydrolyzed.



The other method starts from anisic aldehyde, $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CHO}$, which, by the method of Perkin and Robinson,³ yields the acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH}$. This is then converted into the chloride, and thence into the amide—



which by the Hofmann reaction is made to yield the amine

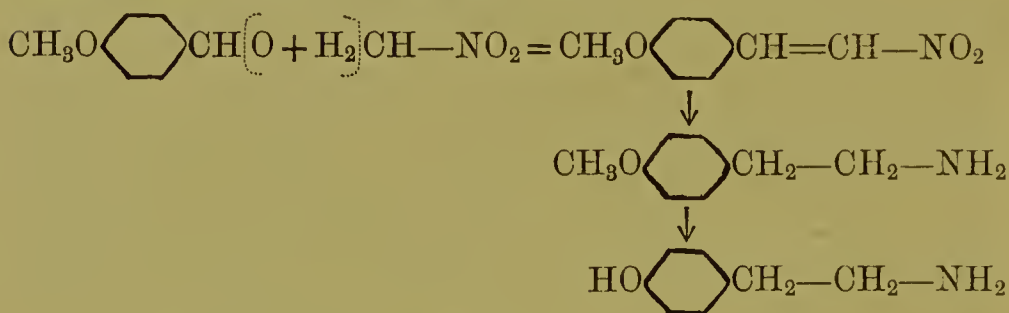
¹ Barger, *J. C. S.*, 95 (1909), 1123; English Patent (1909), 314.

² Barger and Walpole, *J. C. S.*, 95 (1909), 1720; English Patent (1909), 1561.

³ Perkin and Robinson, *J. C. S.*, 91 (1907), 1079.

$\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$. By means of strong hydrobromic acid, the methoxy group is converted into hydroxy, giving para-hydroxyphenylethylamine.

p.-Hydroxyphenylethylamine has also been prepared from anisaldehyde by Rosenmund,¹ who condensed the latter substance with nitromethane to prepare β -nitro-p.-methoxystyrene. This is then reduced to p.-methoxyphenylethylamine, which is demethylated with hydriodic acid.



This substance has been introduced into practice under the name of "*Tyramine*" as the chief active pressor principle of aqueous extracts of ergot, and being a pure chemical compound, it has the advantage in being certain and uniform in its action.

Tyramine and adrenaline are representatives of two important subdivisions of these pressor amines, the former being the simplest member of those derivatives of phenylethylamine containing *one* phenolic hydroxyl group in the para position to the ethylamine group, and the latter being a representative of the compounds containing *two* phenolic hydroxyl groups in the 3-4 position. Many other compounds of this type have been obtained by synthetic methods, and their physiological action determined. The syntheses of some of the most important will now be considered, and the physiological action dealt with subsequently.

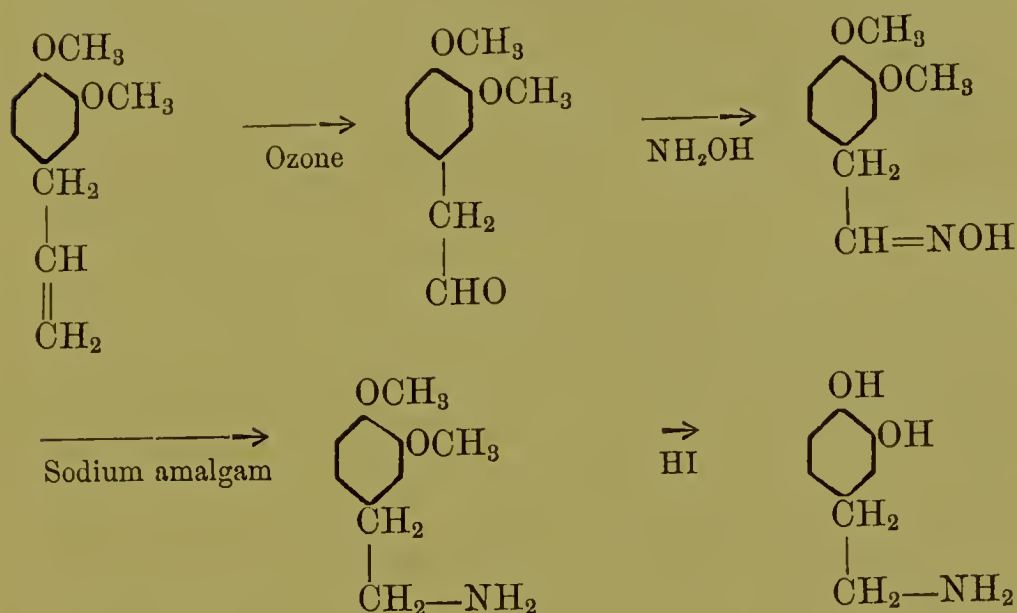
The simplest member of the adrenaline series (*i.e.* those with two phenolic hydroxyl groups in the 3-4 position) is 3-4 dihydroxyphenylethylamine, $\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{OH})-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$.

This compound has been synthesized² from eugenol methyl

¹ Rosenmund, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 4778.

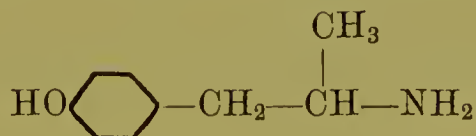
² Mannich and Jacobsohn, *Ber.*, **43** (1910), 189.

ether, which by oxidation with ozone in benzene solution in presence of water gives the aldehyde of homoveratric acid.

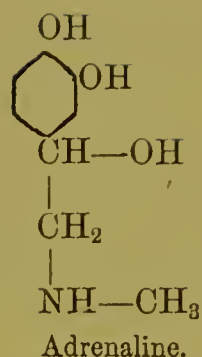
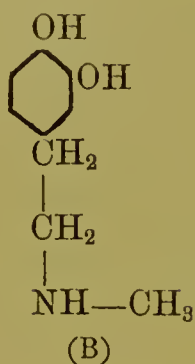
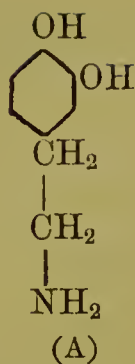


This is converted into the oxime, which on reduction with sodium amalgam and glacial acetic acid yields the dimethyl ether of the desired compound. This ether is then converted into the dihydroxy compound with hydriodic acid in the usual manner.

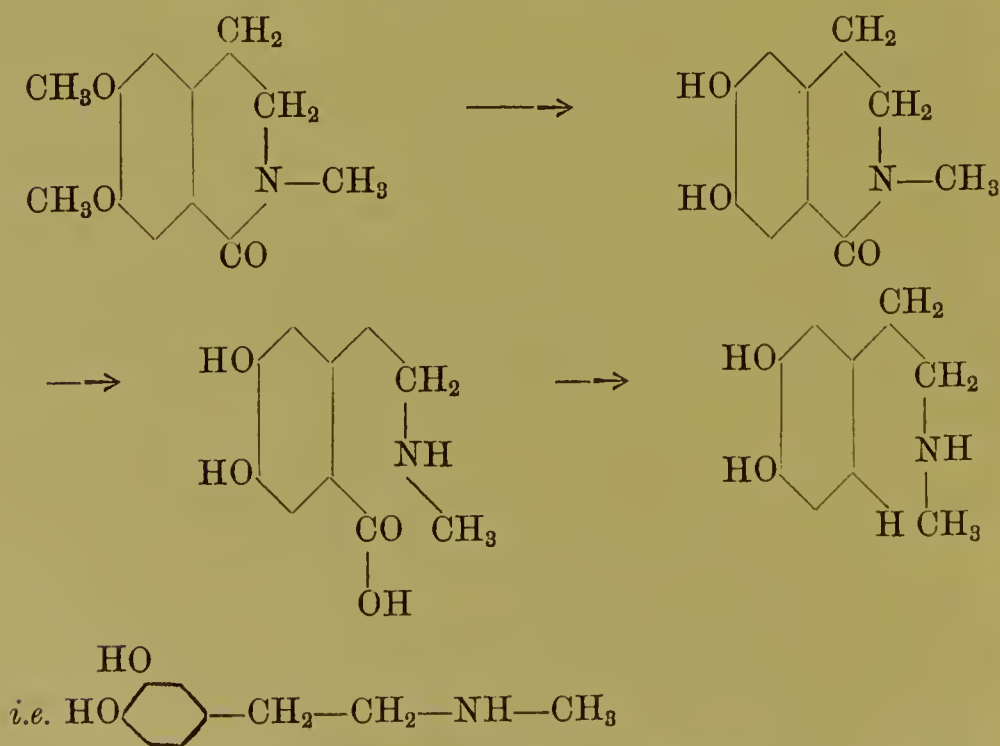
By the reduction of the oximes of other aldehydes and ketones, other members of these two series may be obtained. For example, homoanisic aldehyde, $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHO}$, gives p.-hydroxyphenylethylamine; and para-methoxybenzyl-methyl-ketone, $\text{CH}_3\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_3$, gives, when treated in the same way, p.-hydroxyphenyl-isopropylamine—



3-4 dihydroxyphenylethylamine (A) differs from adrenaline by the absence of a methyl group attached to the nitrogen and of an aliphatic hydroxyl group on the side chain. An interesting intermediate compound between these two is 3-4 dihydroxyphenylethylmethylaniline (B).



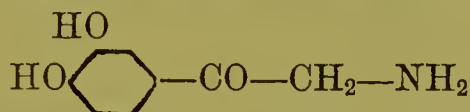
This, it will be observed, differs from adrenaline only by the absence of the aliphatic hydroxyl group, and it is of interest in being a connecting link between that substance and the pressor derivatives obtained from isoquinoline alkaloids (*e.g.* "Lodal," *cf.* previous chapter). It differs very little from adrenaline in the qualitative nature of its physiological action, but the rise of blood pressure, although not so intense, is more prolonged. This substance has very recently been introduced into therapeutics under the name of "*Epinine*." It was obtained from 1-keto-6-7 dimethoxy-2 methyl-tetrahydroisoquinoline¹ by heating it with hydrochloric acid at 170–175°. The reaction probably takes place in the following stages:—



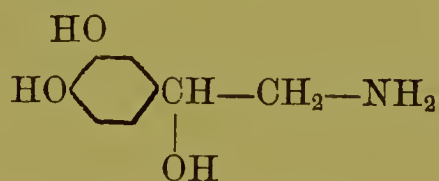
¹ Pyman, *J. C. S.*, **97** (1910), 264.

The corresponding propyl and ethyl derivatives were prepared in a precisely similar fashion.

The other derivatives of 3-4 dihydroxyphenylethylamine to be considered, are mostly prepared by the same method as that used for preparing the ketone adrenalone and adrenaline itself. In that method, which has been already described, the methylamine used in the last stage of the synthesis of adrenalone may be replaced by other amines or by ammonia. In this way Dakin¹ and Stolz¹ obtained the ketone—



and its reduction product—



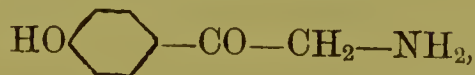
and also the substituted ketones of the type—



Before considering the physiological action of these substances with two phenolic hydroxyl groups, attention must be given to those synthetic products containing one phenolic hydroxyl group in the para position (*i.e.* those related to tyramine). Most of the compounds of this type resemble tyramine in being derivatives of phenylethylamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{---CH}_2\text{---CH}_2\text{---NH}_2$, rather than of phenylethanolamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{---CH(OH)---CH}_2\text{---NH}_2$, but one member of the latter class, and also the corresponding ketone, have been prepared and physiologically examined. These are p.-hydroxyphenyl-ethanolamine—



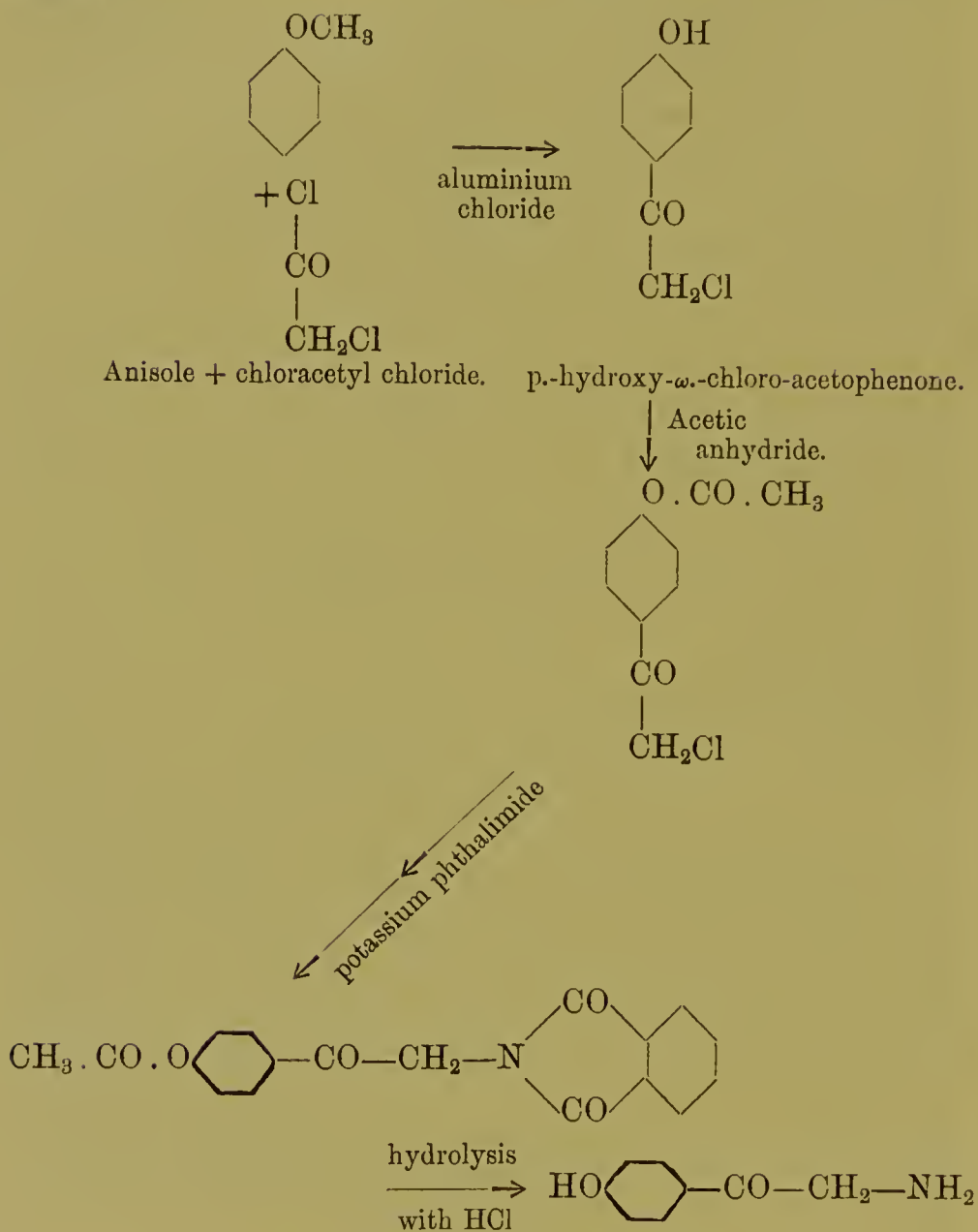
and p.-hydroxy- ω .-amino-acetophenone—



which could not be prepared by the method employed in the adrenaline series by using phenol instead of catechol, but

¹ *Loc. cit.*

which have been prepared instead by the following synthesis¹:—



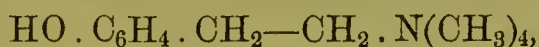
p-Hydroxy- ω -chloro-acetophenone could not be condensed with ammonia, but its acetate could be condensed with potassium phthalimide, and the resultant compound, on removal of the phthalic acid by hydrolysis, yields the desired compound.

The ketone then gives the corresponding secondary alcohol, $\text{HO-CH(OH)-CH}_2\text{-NH}_2$, by reduction with sodium and alcohol.

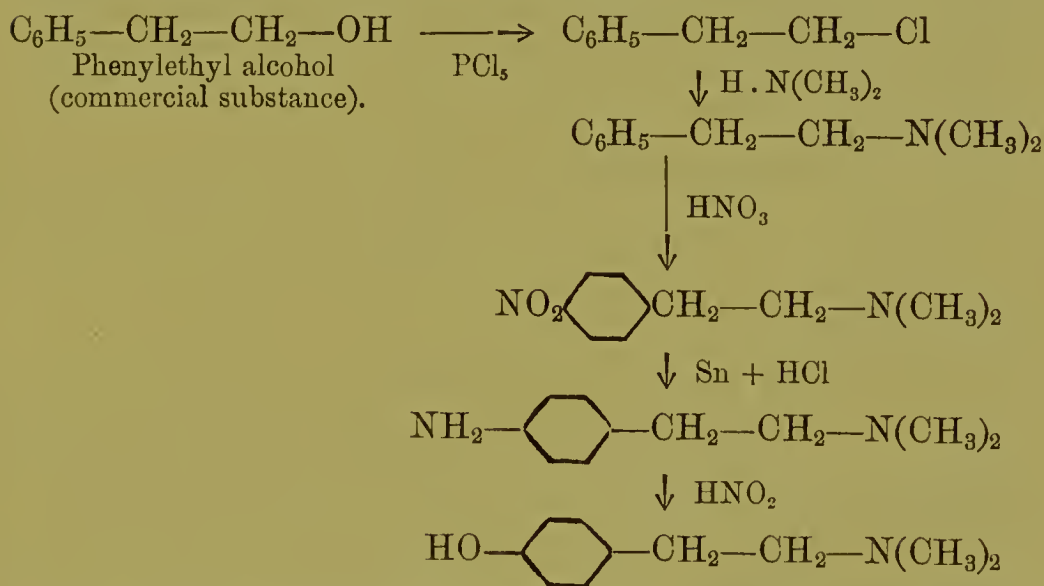
¹ Tutin, Caton, and Hann, *J. C. S.*, 95 (1909), 2113.

The other compounds of this series which have been physiologically examined differ from tyramine only in having one or more of the hydrogen atoms of the amine group replaced by alkyl groups.

Of these, *hordenine*, $\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, is an alkaloid, first obtained from barley germs,¹ but it cannot be obtained from tyramine by methylation, as on attempting to do this, no compound but the completely methylated quaternary substance, hordenine-methiodide—



could be isolated.² *A fortiori* this method of direct methylation is inapplicable to the preparation of p.-hydroxyphenylethyl-methylamine, $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$. Both these compounds have, however, been prepared by synthetic methods. The synthesis of hordenine was first accomplished according to the following scheme, which is self-explanatory:—³



Very shortly afterwards, Rosenmund⁴ obtained hordenine by the direct methylation of p.-methoxyphenylethylamine with alcoholic potash and methyl iodide, and separation of the primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary compounds thus obtained. The methoxy group is then converted into hydroxyl with hydriodic acid. Hordenine was also obtained by this

¹ Léger, *C. R.*, **142** (1906), 108; **143**, 234, 916.

² Barger, *J. C. S.*, **95** (1909), 2193.

³ *Ibid.*

⁴ Rosenmund, *Ber.*, **43** (1910), 306.

concentrated HCl in sealed tubes. The benzene-sulphonyl derivative is treated in a similar manner, and the corresponding ethyl-amine is obtained by using ethyl iodide instead of methyl iodide.

The Physiological Action of these Compounds.—The relation between the chemical structure and the physiological (sympathomimetic) action of amines has formed the subject of an extended investigation by Barger and Dale.¹ Dakin² and Loewi and Meyer³ had examined many of the ketones of the general formula $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{—CO—CH}_2\text{—NR}_1\text{R}_2$, and the corresponding secondary alcohols of the type—



and they found that in most cases, as for example with adrenaline itself, reduction to the secondary alcohol greatly increased the adrenaline-like action, but where R_1 and R_2 represent relatively complex radicles, Dakin found no such increase of activity on reduction. The physiological effects examined by Barger and Dale were not confined to rise of blood pressure, but included dilatation of the pupil, action on the cat's uterus, etc., for the details of which the original paper should be consulted. Besides the various compounds that have been described in the preceding sections of this chapter, various other amines were examined.

Of the various aliphatic amines that were investigated, the only ones which were found to produce a marked rise of blood pressure were the higher open-chain primary amines, such as amylamine, $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\cdot\text{NH}_2$, and hexylamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\cdot\text{NH}_2$. Of these, the normal compounds with unbranched side chain, were found to be more active than the corresponding *iso* compounds with branched side chains. Trimethylamine, $\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3$, has practically no pressor action, and neither has tetraethylammonium iodide, $\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4\text{I}$. Cadaverine, $\text{NH}_2\cdot[\text{CH}_2]_5\cdot\text{NH}_2$, the only diamine examined, was found to have the opposite action (depressor instead of pressor).

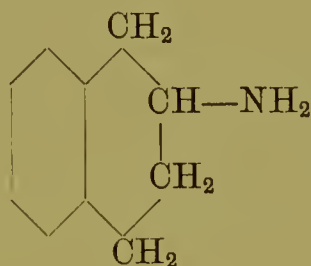
A large number of *fatty-aromatic amines without a phenolic hydroxyl group* were also investigated, and it was found that marked sympathomimetic action was associated only with those

¹ Barger and Dale, *Journ. of Physiol.*, **41** (1910), 19-59.

² Dakin, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **76 B** (1905), 498.

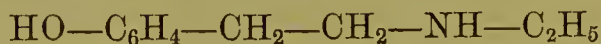
³ Loewi and Meyer, *A. e. P. P.*, **53** (1905), 213.

containing an amino group attached to the second carbon atom of the side chain. β -phenyl-ethylamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—NH}_2$, for example, produces all the characteristic sympathomimetic effects. In the series containing two phenolic hydroxyl groups in the 3-4 position, the introduction of an aliphatic hydroxyl in the β -position of the side chain, and the methylation of the amino group have an important effect in intensifying the action, but in the present series, this does not hold, methyl-phenylethylamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, phenylethanolamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CH(OH)—CH}_2\text{—NH}_2$, and methyl-phenylethanolamine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—CH(OH)—CH}_2\text{—NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$, differing but little in their action from phenylethylamine itself. *Ac.*-tetrahydro- β -naphthylamine —



which may be regarded as a derivative of this type, is more active than phenylethylamine in producing a rise of blood-pressure, but is less active than *p*-hydroxyphenylethylamine (tyramine), the simplest member of the next series, namely:—

Amines with one Phenolic Hydroxyl Group.—The sources and preparation of many of these have already been mentioned. Methylation of the amino group produces very little increase in the activity, $\text{HO—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ (see page 144), being only very slightly more active than the primary amine, while the ethyl derivative—



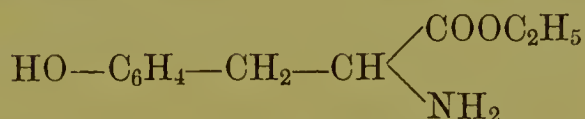
is less active than either the methyl derivative or the parent substance. The tertiary base, $\text{HO—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—N(CH}_3)_2$, which is the alkaloid hordenine, has a relatively very weak action, but the quaternary base, hordenine methiodide, $\text{HO—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—N(CH}_3)_3\text{I}$, although it has no sympathomimetic action, is of interest as it is one of the few exceptions to the rule of Crum Brown and Fraser that quaternary bases have a curare-like action. Instead, its action

resembles that of nicotine, which is a physiological antagonist of curare.

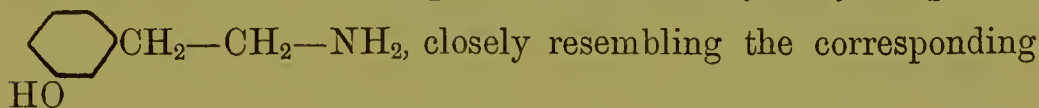
Destruction of the basic property is accompanied by loss of activity, acetyl *p*-hydroxyphenylethylamine—



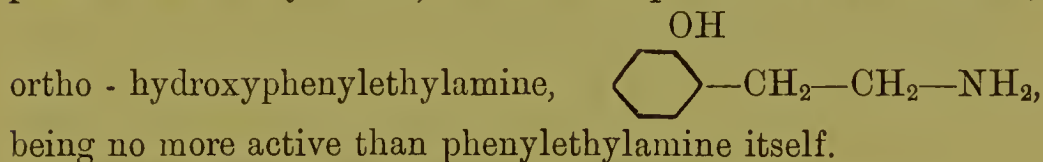
for example, being inactive. Tyrosine ethyl ester—



is also inactive. A phenolic hydroxyl group in the 3 position is about as active as in the 4 position, the meta-hydroxy compound,



para-derivative (tyramine), but in the 2 position it has no effect,



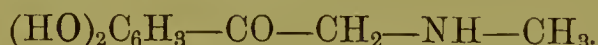
being no more active than phenylethylamine itself.

Amines with Two Phenolic Hydroxyl Compounds.—The following compounds in which the two hydroxyl groups are in the 3-4 position were tested:—

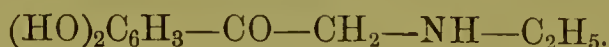
(a) *Derivatives of aceto-catechol (ketones).*

(1) Amino-aceto-catechol, $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$.

(2) Methylamino-aceto-catechol—



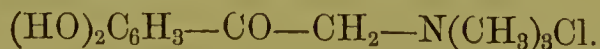
(3) Ethylamino-aceto-catechol—



(4) Propylamino-aceto-catechol—



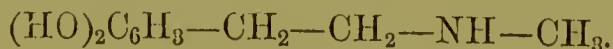
(5) Trimethylamino-aceto-catechol chloride—



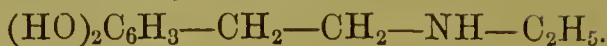
(b) *Derivatives of ethyl-catechol.*

(6) Amino-ethyl-catechol, $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$.

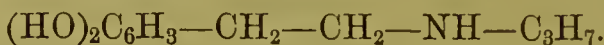
(7) Methylamino-ethyl-catechol—



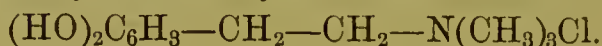
(8) Ethylamino-ethyl-catechol—



(9) Propylamino-ethyl-catechol—



(10) Trimethylamino-ethyl-catechol chloride—

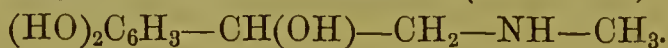


(c) *Derivatives of ethanol-catechol (secondary alcohols).*

(11) Amino-ethanol-catechol—



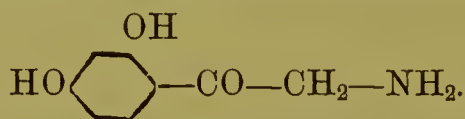
(12) Methylamino-ethanol-catechol (adrenaline)—



And also—

(d)

(13) 2-4 dihydroxy- ω -amino-acetophenone¹—



It was found that catechol itself has no sympathomimetic action, although it produces a rise of blood-pressure. The following table shows the comparative strength of the action of the various amines in causing a rise of blood-pressure:—

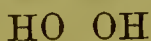
Substance (numbered as before).	Ratio of activity.
(1) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$	1.5
(2) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_3$	
(3) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	2.25
(4) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{C}_3\text{H}_7$	0.25
(6) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$	1.0
(7) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_3$	5.0
(8) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	1.5
(9) $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{C}_3\text{H}_7$	0.25
(11) $r\text{---}(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$	50
(12) $r\text{---}(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3-\text{CH}(\text{OH})-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_3$ (<i>r</i> -adrenaline)	35

The ratios shown are only approximate, and vary to some extent with the sensitiveness of the animal. The compound numbered (7), which was obtained from an isoquinoline derivative, causes a more prolonged rise of blood-pressure than adrenaline. The quaternary bases numbered (5) and (10) resemble hordenine-methiodide in having a nicotine-like action.

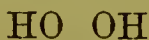
¹ Tutin, *J. C. S.*, 97 (1910), 2495-2524.

This is less than that of hordenine-methiodide in the case of (5), and greater in the case of (10). Although these bases produce a rise of blood-pressure, they are not included in the above table, as their action is not truly sympathomimetic, as is evidenced by their action on other organs. The substance numbered (13) on the list, having the hydroxyl groups in the 2-4 position, is no more active than the corresponding compound $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{---} \text{CO---CH}_2\text{---NH}_2$, having one hydroxyl in the 4 position.

Further evidence of the non-significance of an hydroxyl group in the 2 position is shown by the trihydroxy compounds,



amino-aceto-pyrogallol, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{---} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{---NH}_2$, and amino-



ethyl-pyrogallol, $\text{HO} \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{---} \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}_2\text{---NH}_2$, which, although more susceptible to oxidation than the 3-4-dihydroxy compounds, show no increased sympathomimetic action in comparison with the latter.

The main conclusions are summed up by these investigators as follows :—

“(1) An action simulating that of the true sympathetic nervous system is not peculiar to adrenine, but is possessed by a large series of amines, the simplest being primary fatty amines. We describe all such amines and their action as ‘sympathomimetic.’

“(2) Approximation to adrenine in structure is, on the whole, attended with increasing intensity of sympathomimetic activity, and with increasing specificity of the action.

“(3) All the substances producing this action in characteristic manner are primary and secondary amines. The quaternary amines corresponding to the aromatic members of the series have an action closely similar to that of nicotine.

“(4) The optimum carbon skeleton for sympathomimetic activity consists of a benzene ring with a side chain of two carbon atoms, the terminal one bearing the amino group. Another optimum condition is the presence of two phenolic hydroxyls in the 3-4 position relative to the side chain; when these are present, an alcoholic hydroxyl still further intensifies

the activity. A phenolic hydroxyl in the 2 position does not increase the activity.


“(5) Catechol has no sympathomimetic action.


“(6) Motor and inhibitor sympathomimetic activity vary to some extent independently. Of the catechol bases those with a methylamino group, including adrenine, reproduce inhibitor sympathetic effects more powerfully than motor effects: the opposite is true of the primary amines of the same series.

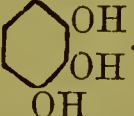
“(7) Instability and activity show no parallelism in the series.”

CHAPTER X

DERIVATIVES OF PHENOL (ANTISEPTICS)

THE entrance of an hydroxyl group into the benzene nucleus increases its solubility and its reactivity, and, as might be expected, these changes are accompanied by an increase in its physiological activity and its antiseptic powers. Phenol, C_6H_5OH , was the first antiseptic to be widely used, and its antiseptic powers are increased by the entrance of halogen or additional hydroxyl groups into the nucleus. The entrance of more hydroxyl groups adjacent to the first, also increases the toxicity of the substance, phenol, ^{OH}, being less toxic than

catechol, ^{OH}_{OH}, and this in its turn being less toxic than

pyrogallol, ^{OH}_{OH}_{OH}.

On the other hand, the entrance of alkyl groups into the nucleus lowers the toxicity and increases the antiseptic properties, and for this reason the three isomeric *cresols*, $C_6H_4(OH)(CH_3)$, are better antiseptics than phenol. Unfortunately this advantage is marred by the fact that they are much less soluble in water than phenol, and hence many attempts have been made to obtain derivatives of cresol which should retain their antiseptic properties, and yet be more soluble in water.

The cresols form an emulsion with (hard) yellow soap, and an emulsion of this sort is known as *Creolin*, but it suffers from the drawback that it is demulsified by mineral acids, alkalies, or common salt. A solution of the cresols in soft soap is known as *Lysol*, and has attained wide use as an antiseptic. It is prepared by mixing the crude coal-tar cresol (cresylic acid) with linseed oil in presence of alcohol until completely saponified, and the final product dissolves easily in water.¹

¹ D. R. P., 52,129.

Lysol solutions suffer from the drawback that they vary in their antiseptic power according to the amount of cresol present, and hence they have to be tested bacteriologically, but they possess the advantage of being less poisonous than phenol or mercuric chloride.

The cresols can also be rendered soluble in water by mixing them with the sodium salts of organic sulphonic acids. Thus the cresols and other insoluble substances can be brought into solution by mixing them with the neutralized products obtained from the action of sulphuric acid on resinous oils, etc.

The sodium salts of cresotinic acid, $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{COOH} \end{matrix}$, salicylic acid, and of various fatty acids, can also be used to render the cresols soluble. The only substances of this type which are of practical importance are solutions of cresol in soap, but a solution of cresol in sodium cresotinate has been sometimes used internally under the name of *Solveol*, as a substitute for

guaiacol and creosote. Thymol, $\text{CH}_3 \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} \text{CH} \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{matrix}$, is used as an antiseptic and antihelminthic,* but for the latter purpose thymol carbonate has been recommended instead. It is prepared from thymol by the action of carbonyl chloride, COCl_2 , and is called *Thymatol*.

The polyhydric phenols have not been much used in therapeutics. Resorcinol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{matrix}$, has found a slight application in

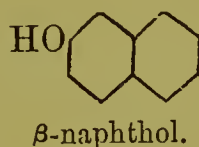
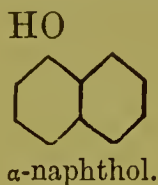
dermatology, and pyrogallol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{matrix}$, is also used in some skin diseases on account of its reducing properties. The high

price of phloroglucinol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{matrix} \text{HO} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{HO} \end{matrix}$, has prevented it from coming into therapeutic use.

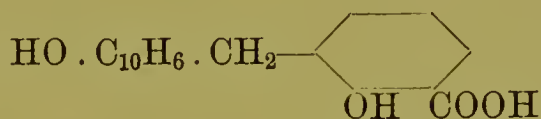
* Antihelminthic is a term denoting a substance used as a poison for intestinal parasites, such as tape-worms, thread-worms, etc.

A mixture of various phenyl-sulphuric acids, known as *Aseptol*, is obtained by allowing cold fuming sulphuric acid to act on phenol, and adding alcohol to the reaction product. The substance thus obtained is unstable and liberates phenol, but has no special value.

The naphthols are not much used in therapeutics; α -naphthol



is more poisonous than β -naphthol, and so only the latter finds any therapeutic application. Its sodium salt is soluble in water, and has received the name *Microcidin*. A better-known derivative is *Epicarin*—



a non-corrosive antiseptic which is strongly acid and forms soluble salts. It is said to be useful in skin diseases, such as scabies.


An extended investigation on the effect of substituting halogen atoms or alkyl groups for hydrogen in the nucleus of phenol, and on the germicidal power of other phenolic derivatives, has been carried out by Bechhold and Ehrlich.¹ The antiseptic power of these compounds was compared by finding the amount of the phenol required to prevent the growth of certain bacteria under standard conditions, the diphtheria bacillus being the one usually chosen. It was found that the entrance of chlorine or bromine into the nucleus of phenol is accompanied by an increase in the antiseptic power. Trichlor-phenol was found to be twenty-five times and tri-brom-phenol forty-six times as active as phenol itself. Tetrachlor-, pentachlor-, and pentabrom-phenols were increasingly active in the order given, the last-named being five-hundred times as powerful in its action as phenol itself. In the early part of this chapter it was stated that the entrance of alkyl groups into the nucleus of phenol (as in the cresols) increases the antiseptic power, and this was found to be the

¹ *Zeit. Physiol. Chem.*, 47 (1906), 173.

case with the halogen derivatives of the phenols also. The tetrabrom derivatives of all three cresols were found to be far more active in their germicidal properties than tetrachlor- or tetrabrom-phenol, the derivative of ortho-cresol being slightly more powerful than the meta or para isomerides. A one-per-cent. solution of this substance takes less than two minutes to kill the diphtheria bacillus, whereas a corresponding solution of phenol requires more than ten. As the toxicity of this compound is stated to be comparatively slight, it might find useful application, but the toxicity is apparently still too great to permit of its being used internally.

In fact, although it was found that the entrance of a bromine atom reduces the toxicity and characteristic convulsive action of phenol itself, nevertheless the conclusion was arrived at that none of these compounds were suitable for use as internal disinfectants, as they were no more damaging to bacteria than to the animal body. The further introduction of halogen is accompanied by a rise of toxicity, that of the tribrom- and trichlor-phenols being about equal to that of phenol itself, while the tetra- and penta-halogen derivatives are extremely toxic.

The simple phenolic compounds and their halogen derivatives are therefore not suitable for internal disinfection, but greater success has attended the use of phenolic derivatives containing a second group in the molecule, which lowers the toxicity of the compound.

The introduction of a carboxyl group, as is usually the case, lowers the toxicity. It is true that it greatly lowers the antiseptic power of phenol, but in spite of this, the ortho-carboxylic acid of phenol,  (salicylic acid), has marked antiseptic properties, and it has proved to be of great value medicinally.

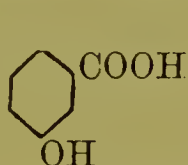
Another type of phenolic derivative which has proved of value as an internal antiseptic, is represented by guaiacol,



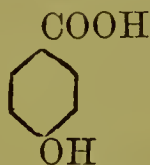
Salicylic acid and its derivatives are used more on account of their value in lowering the temperature and diminishing the pain in rheumatism rather than for the sake of their antiseptic properties, but the acid and its ester with phenol (salol) are also used as antiseptics. The derivatives of salicylic

acid will be discussed in the next section, and those of guaiacol in the one after that.

Salicylic Acid and Salols.—As has been so frequently pointed out, the introduction of a carboxyl group into phenol lowers its physiological activity. Meta-hydroxy- and para-hydroxy-benzoic acids are practically inert physiologically, but *salicylic acid*, in addition to having a very slight toxicity, possesses special therapeutic properties which are of very great value.



m-hydroxy-benzoic acid.



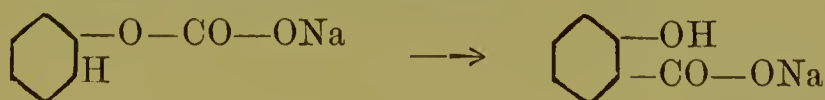
p-hydroxy-benzoic acid.



Salicylic acid.

The most important of these is a powerful action against most of the symptoms of acute rheumatism, which is marvellous in its intensity. Salicylic acid also possesses marked antiseptic properties, for which it is often used to check gastric fermentation, as its irritant action on the stomach is much less than that of phenol, and for the same reason it is often used to prevent putrefaction in milk, beer, etc. In the body it is rapidly absorbed, and circulates as the sodium salt, which is often used therapeutically instead of the free acid, as of course its action is the same, and it has the advantage of being more soluble in water.

Salicylic acid was first synthesized by Kolbe¹ by the action of carbon dioxide on phenol. Originally this was carried out by passing carbon dioxide into hot phenol in the presence of sodium, but it was found better for technical purposes to prepare dry sodium phenate, C_6H_5ONa , and to pass carbon dioxide into this. Even by this method, however, only a 50-per-cent. yield of salicylic acid was obtained, and if potash were used instead of soda, para-hydroxybenzoic acid was the chief product. This process was greatly improved by Schmitt,² who heated sodium phenyl carbonate—




under pressure at $140^\circ C.$, by which means a quantitative yield of

¹ *Annalen*, 113 (1860), 115; 125 (1865), 201; D. R. P., 426.

² D. R. P., 29,939.

sodium salicylate was obtained. This process is also applicable to the preparation of naphthol-carboxylic acid and oxyquinoline-carboxylic acid.¹

Salicylic acid and its sodium salt frequently produce unpleasant gastric symptoms, and to overcome this defect various derivatives have been prepared, one of which, acetyl-salicylic acid,

acid,  $\text{O}-\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$
 $\text{CO} \cdot \text{OH}$, is of very great importance. This

substance is known under various trade names, such as *Aspirin*, *Xaxa*, etc., and is free from the unpleasant taste of salicylic acid and its salts. Being insoluble in the acid gastric contents, it does not cause any unpleasant symptoms, and it only begins to exert its action in the intestine, where it is hydrolyzed with liberation of sodium salicylate.

It is first obtained by heating salicylic acid with excess of acetic anhydride or acetyl chloride, but a better yield is obtained by carrying out the acetylation in the presence of a condensing agent, such as sulphuric acid, zinc chloride, or sodium acetate. Propionyl, butyryl, and other acyl derivatives of salicylic acid have been obtained in the same way. The lithium salt of acetyl-salicylic acid has been introduced into therapeutics under the name of *Hydropirin*. It is more soluble than acetyl salicylic acid, which it resembles in its physiological properties, as well as having the characteristic action of lithium salts.

A substance which is isomeric with aspirin has been obtained by the action of acetyl chloride on salicylic acid in presence of ferric chloride. It is an aceto-salicylic acid of the formula $(\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot (\text{OH})(\text{COOH})$, and is not toxic, but it has far less antiseptic power than salicylic acid itself. Salicyl-

acetic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{COOH} \\ \text{O}-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH} \end{cases}$, in which the hydroxylic

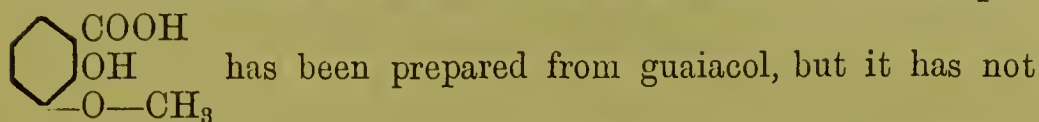
hydrogen is replaced by an acetic acid residue, $(-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH})$, instead of by the acetyl group, $(\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3)$, was first obtained by the oxidation of the ortho-aldehyde of hydroxyphenyl-acetic acid.² Subsequently, improved methods of preparing it were devised,³ but this substance does not appear to have come into use as a drug.

¹ D. R. P., 31,240.

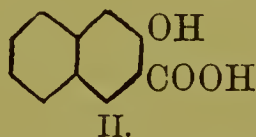
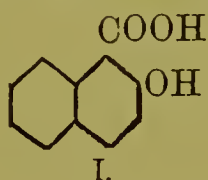
² Ber., 17 (1884), 2995.

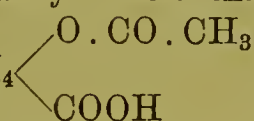
³ D. R. P., 93,110, 110,370.

Schmitt's modification of Kolbe's salicylic acid synthesis has been extended to several other substances. For example,

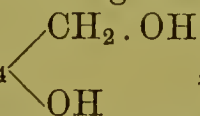


found its way into therapeutics, and from α - and β -naphthols the corresponding carboxylic acids have been obtained, in each of which the carboxyl group is in the ortho position to the hydroxyl group. The acid (I.) thus obtained from β -naphthol is very unstable, splitting up into naphthol and carbon dioxide, but if the temperature at which the synthesis is carried out be raised to 200°–250° C., a stable acid (II.) is obtained.

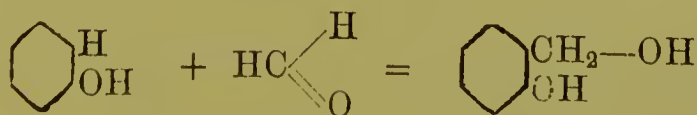



Of the various derivatives of salicylic acid that have been mentioned, acetyl-salicylic acid, C_6H_4
, is the only

one of real practical value, but other substances have been used instead of salicylic acid itself, chiefly on account of the distrust with which synthetic salicylic acid was at one time viewed. This distrust arose from the fact that the synthetic acid used often to contain the therapeutically useless para-hydroxybenzoic acid, as well as sometimes being contaminated with the positively harmful cresols. To make sure of obtaining a natural product, some physicians preferred to prescribe the glucoside *salicin* instead of salicylic acid itself. This glucoside is hydrolyzed by the organism, with liberation of *saligenin*

(salicyl alcohol), C_6H_4
, which then forms salicylic

acid by slow oxidation. In this way, the use of saligenin or salicin ensures a gradual action of the salicylic acid. Saligenin may be synthesized by the action of formaldehyde on phenol—



Ortho-coumaric acid,  $\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{COOH}$, bears the same

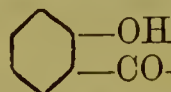
relationship to cinnamic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5-\text{CH}=\text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$, as salicylic acid does to benzoic acid, and as cinnamic acid is more physiologically active than benzoic acid, it was to be expected that *o*-coumaric acid would have even more powerful anti-septic properties than salicylic acid. This was found to be the case, all three coumaric acids having a marked germicidal action, which is strongest in the case of the ortho acid.

Incidentally, it should be noted that *sodium cinnamate* has been found to be active in promoting leucocytosis, and has been recommended in cases of tuberculosis. Its esters with guaiacol, phenol, ortho and para-cresol are too irritant to be of use, but its meta-cresol ester is free from these drawbacks, and is used under the name of *Hetocresol* as a dusting powder for tuberculous wounds. A similar compound of cinnamic acid with thymol has also been prepared.¹

A dilute aqueous solution of sodium cinnamate has been used in Germany under the name *Hetol*, and a glycerol solution of this substance which has certain advantages over the aqueous one was advocated by Morgan in 1902. The use of drugs, such as sodium cinnamate and sodium ortho-coumarate, which produce leucocytosis* appears to have given promising results in the treatment of inoperable cancer when combined with local treatment with substances such as copper oleate and antimony oxide.²

The acetyl derivative of *o*-coumaric acid which is suitable for being given by the mouth has been introduced by Martindale under the name of *Tylmarin*.

Salol and Esters of a Similar Type.—The first ester, both the components of which are physiologically active, to be used

in medicine was *salol*,  $\text{CO}-\text{O}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ (phenyl salicylate).

The introduction of this substance by Nencki marked an important development in pharmacology, and many other attempts have been made to convert substances which are too toxic for ordinary use into esters from which the active

* Leucocytosis denotes an increase in the count of the white blood-corpuscles.

¹ D. R. P., 99,567, 107,230.

² H. Lovell Drago, *Lancet*, November 7, 1908, p. 1367.

component is liberated so slowly that it produces no injurious by-effects. In the case of salol itself, the ester on hydrolysis in the intestine liberates phenol and salicylic acid, the hydrolysis taking place so gradually that the former component can exert its antiseptic effect without, under ordinary conditions, giving rise to its characteristic toxic symptoms. In this case both components of the ester are active, but this "salol principle," as it is called, can be extended to esters in which only the acid or the alcohol is active, but the use of which in the free state is hindered owing to the possession of toxic or corrosive properties.

Derivatives of this kind may be classed as "partial salols," and comprise two types:—

(1) Esters in which an active (aromatic) acid is esterified with an inert hydroxylic substance (alcohol), and which therefore bear a general resemblance in their physiological action to the acid from which they are derived, but which may differ from it in being free from harmful by-effects.

(2) Esters in which an active hydroxyl compound (alcohol or phenol) is esterified by an inactive acid. In this case the action of the substance resembles that of the alcohol or phenol, the sodium salt of the acid being inert.

It must not be lost sight of, however, that the ester itself may exert a specific action in the unhydrolyzed state (*e.g.* triacetin: see Chap. II., p. 22), and therefore in every case the physiological action of the ester must be experimentally demonstrated before it can be used in therapeutics, as *a priori* reasoning based on the behaviour of the component acid and alcohol might be upset by the specific action of the ester.

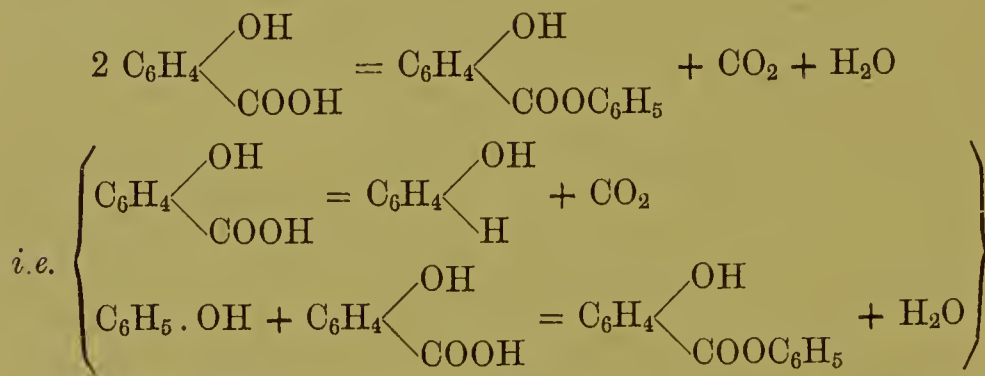
Dealing first with the true salols themselves, it may be said with confidence that no other ester of this class is nearly as important as salol itself. It was found by Nencki that fatty or aromatic acids when allowed to react with phenols in presence of zinc chloride, aluminium chloride, etc., yielded ketones, but if POCl_3 were employed as the condensing agent, esters were

formed. Thus salol itself, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \text{OH} \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$, is produced by heating two molecules of phenol, two molecules of salicylic acid and one of POCl_3 at 120°C .¹ This method has also been applied

¹ D. R. P., 38,973, 39,184, 43,173.

to the preparation of the esters of salicylic acid with many other phenols, naphthols, resorcin, etc., and also to the preparation of the esters of other acids, such as nitro-salicylic and oxynaphthoic. A cheaper and simpler modification of this method of preparation is to allow carbonyl chloride to react with an equi-molecular mixture of the sodium salts of the phenol and of the acid. The ester thus formed can usually be separated from the reaction mixture by distilling it off with steam. In this way an enormous number of esters of a similar type to salol have been prepared.¹

Salol is also obtained by heating salicylic acid alone at 160°–240° C., provided that the water split off by the reaction be removed by distillation, and that the access of air be prevented.²



Another method for the preparation of salol is by heating polysalicylide (obtained by heating salicylic acid with POCl_3 , see Chap. IV.), $\text{C}_7\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$, alone with phenol.³

The higher members of the salol series may be prepared by heating salol itself with the higher phenol, whereby the lower phenol is replaced by the higher. This method is especially suitable for use with phenols which are too reactive to be treated with the vigorous condensing agents used in the first methods; *e.g.* hydroquinone, eugenol, carvacrol, etc.⁴

“Partial Salols” of the First Type.—*Methyl salicylate* (oil of wintergreen) is the best known of these. The synthetic product is superior to the natural in being free from the irritant effects of the latter. It is slower in its action than salicylic acid itself. Ethyl salicylate appears to have a specific action

¹ D. R. P., 46,756, 57,941, 68,111, 70,487; and also Nencki, C. R., 108 (1889), 254.

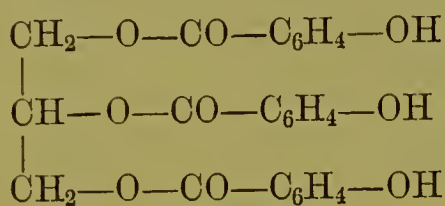
² D. R. P., 62,275.

³ Ibid., 73,452.

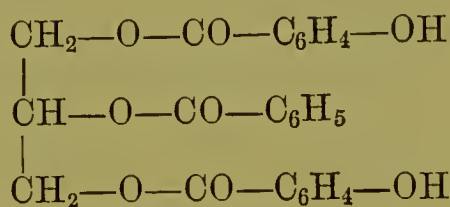
⁴ Ibid., 111,656.

of its own, and produces undesirable effects, and hence is not used in therapeutics. *Mesotan* is the methoxy-methyl ester of

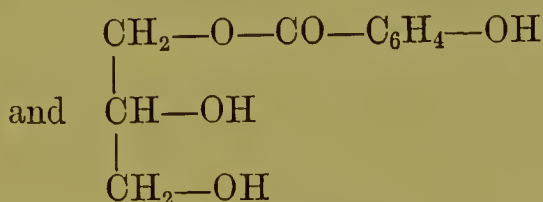
salicylic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{cases} \text{OH} \\ \text{CO—O—CH}_2\text{—OCH}_3 \end{cases}$. Many esters of glycerol with salicylic acid, benzoic acid, *p*-cresotinic acid, and anisic acid have been prepared, such as—



Trisalicylin.



Disalicylbenzoin.

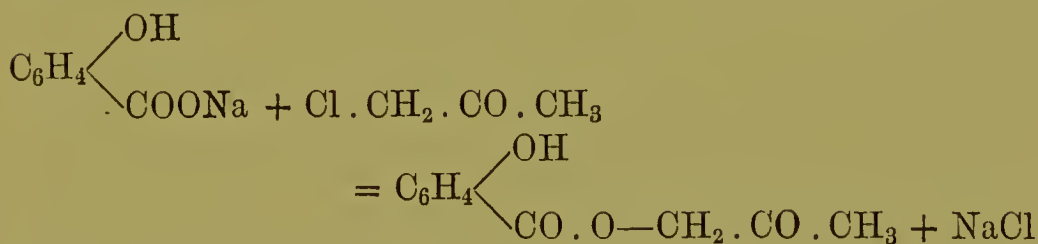


and

Monosalicylin.

The last named is used under the name of *Glycosal*.¹

Salacetol is obtained by the action of monochloracetone on sodium salicylate—



and is therefore the salicylic ester of acetol, $\text{HO—CH}_2\text{—CO—CH}_3$. It is rapidly saponified in the intestine, but has no particular advantage over salicylic acid.²

“Partial Salols” of the Second Type, in which only the phenol is the active part, comprise carbonates and esters of fatty acids. Of these, the esters of guaiacol and creosote are of special importance, and will be considered in the next section of this chapter (which deals with creosote and guaiacol derivatives), together with the general methods of their preparation.

Of esters of the type of salol in which both components

¹ D. R. P., 58,396, 126,311, 127,139.

² Ibid., 70,054.

are active, salol itself is the most important, and next to it

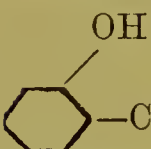
comes β -naphthol salicylate, . In

general it is only the monobasic acids which lend themselves in an economical manner for use as salols, as the esters of polybasic acids usually only split off one molecule of the phenol, the rest being excreted still in combination with the acid. Thus, for example, triphenyl phosphate, $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_3\text{PO}$, is hydrolyzed in the intestine into diphenyl-phosphoric acid,

$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{P}\begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \diagup \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$, and phenol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$, the former not being

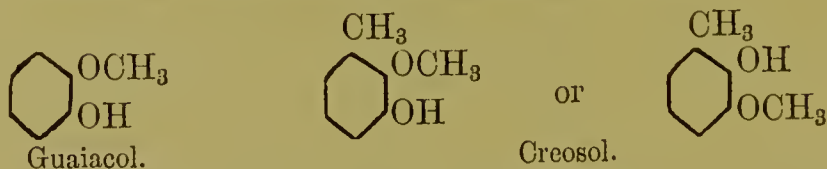
further decomposed in the organism, and thus only a third of the phenol is utilized.

Another type of salicylic acid derivative comprises those in which it is combined with basic radicles. Salicyl-amide,


— CO—NH_2 , is more soluble than salicylic acid, and has

a more marked analgesic action. Many compounds have been prepared in which salicylic acid is combined with substances having antipyretic and analgesic properties, especially the derivatives of acetyl-para-amino-phenol. The salicylate of acetyl-para-amino-phenol, $\text{HO}\langle\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\rangle\text{NH}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$, is known as *Salophen*.¹ In the same manner lactylamino-phenol can be condensed with salicylic acid.²

Guaiacol, Creosote, and their Derivatives.—Beechwood tar has long been used in the treatment of phthisis, and the chief active ingredients appear to be guaiacol and creosol.



These can be obtained from the beechwood tar, but *guaiacol* is also largely produced by synthetic methods. It can be obtained

by the partial methylation of catechol, , but this method

¹ D. R. P., 62,533, 69,789.

² Ibid., 82,635. See also Chap. V.

is too expensive for technical use, and a cheaper synthesis is that which starts from ortho-anisidine. This substance is prepared from ortho-nitro-phenol by methylation and subsequent reduction. It is then diazotized, and the solution poured into sulphuric acid containing a large quantity of sodium sulphate, and heated to 135°–160° C., whereupon the guaiacol distils over with the steam as it is formed. In this way the production of by-products is diminished.



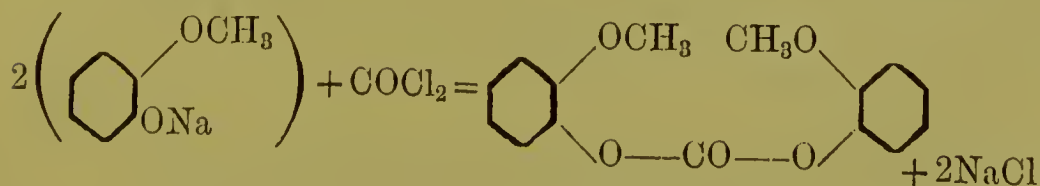
Creosol has been obtained in a similar way from $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3)(\text{OH})(\text{NO}_2)$, but the preparation of this compound from ortho-cresol is apparently too expensive for it to be used commercially.

Guaiacol, like phenol, is corrosive and poisonous, and it is probable that creosol would be less toxic, though more strongly antiseptic, in the same way as cresol and phenol.

Guaiathol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)$, and other higher homologues have been prepared by heating catechol and the required alcohol under pressure with zinc chloride at 160°–220° C., but they are more expensive than guaiacol and have no advantage over it.

With the object of diminishing the unpleasant and toxic properties of guaiacol and creosote, various derivatives have been prepared in which the hydroxyl group is esterified with an acid according to Nencki's salol principle. Carbonic acid was the first used, and various other organic and inorganic acids have also been tried with varying degrees of success. In every case, the action of the compound is due to the guaiacol split off in the intestine.

Guaiacol carbonate, known as *Duotal*, is prepared by the action of carbonyl chloride on an alkaline solution of guaiacol.¹



¹ D. R. P., 58,129.

Duotal is thus obtained as an insoluble preparation, which has less toxicity and unpleasant taste than guaiacol itself, but which is not quite tasteless. In the same way, carbonates of menthol, borneol, carvacrol, creosol, eugenol, etc., have been prepared, and also the corresponding esters of carbamic acid using chlorocarbonic amide instead of COCl_2 —¹

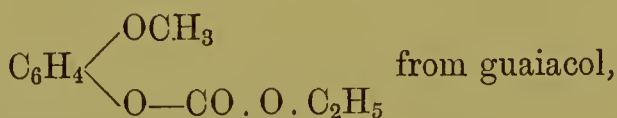


This process, besides being used for the pure substances, may also be applied to the mixture of phenols comprising creosote, by which means a mixture of neutral carbonic esters free from corrosive properties is obtained, which is called creosote carbonate.

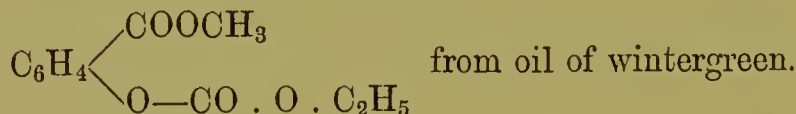
Phenolic substances, such as guaiacol, can also be converted into alkyl carbonates instead of carbonates by the action of chloroformic ester on the hydroxyl compound or its sodium salt—



e.g.—



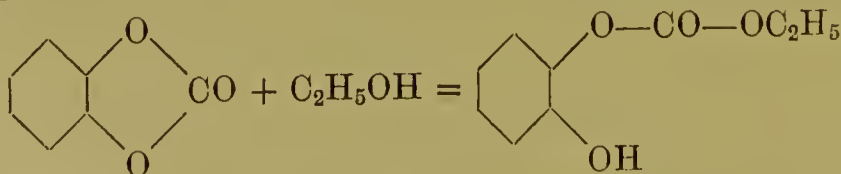
and



The carbonate of catechol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$, forms addition

products with compounds containing an alcoholic hydroxyl group or a primary or secondary amino group, whereby one of the hydroxyl groups of the catechol is regenerated with the formation of a mixed ester of carbonic acid.²

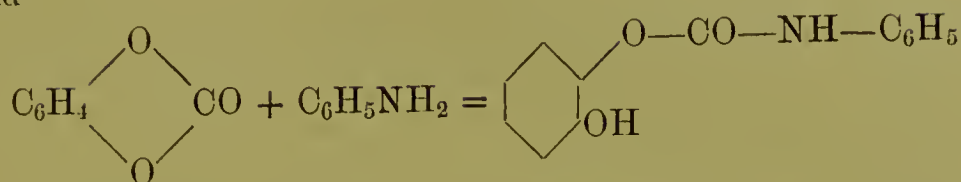
e.g.—



¹ D. R. P., 11,856, 116,366, for variations of this method.

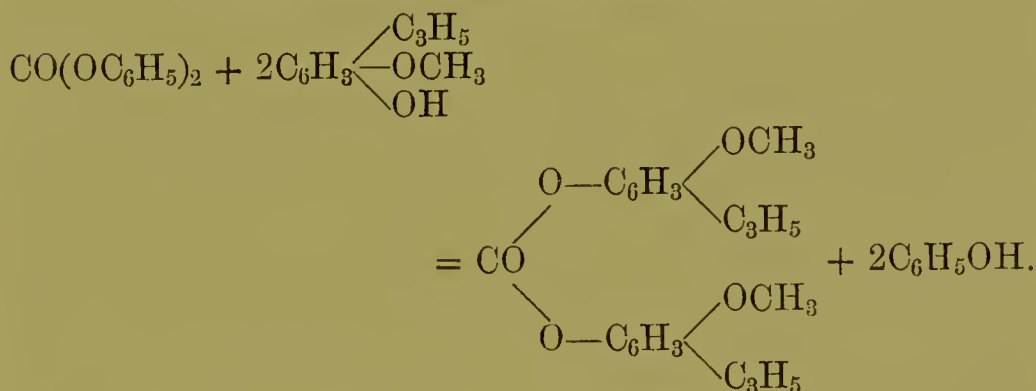
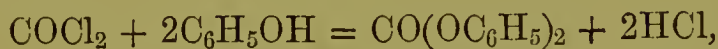
² Ibid., 92,535.

and



In the preparation of carbonates of phenols by the phosgene method, it may happen that those which are easily decomposed, such as the derivatives of iso-eugenol or menthol, are broken up, and therefore the method requires modification. In these cases, diphenyl or diethyl carbonate is first prepared, and this then made to react with the desired phenol.¹

For example, with iso-eugenol—



As the phosphites are said to be useful in the treatment of tuberculosis, it is not surprising that guaiacol phosphite, $\text{P}(\text{—O—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—OCH}_3)_3$, has been prepared. It is a crystalline powder, which has the advantage over the carbonate and phosphate of guaiacol in being soluble in fatty oils, and it is prepared by suspending guaiacol and an equivalent of soda in alcohol and adding one molecular proportion of PCl_3 to the cooled mixture. It is then heated to boiling and the alcohol distilled off.² Substances such as this are known under the names of *Phosphatol*, *Creosote-phosphite*, etc.

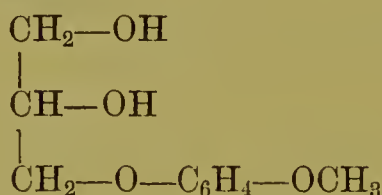
Guaiacol benzoate is known as “*Benzosol*,” and the cinnamate, which is known under the name of “*Styracol*,” is said to be a very good antiseptic and antitubercular, free from harmful effects.

Another type of guaiacol derivatives is that in which the

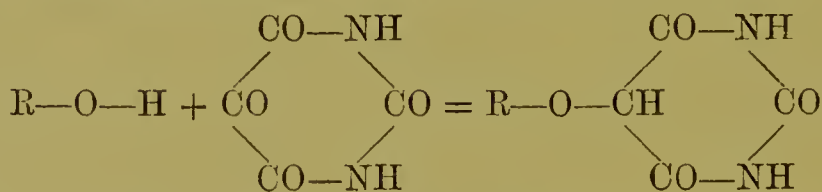
¹ D. R. P., 99,057.

² Ibid., 95,578.

hydroxylic hydrogen is replaced by alkyl groups or other groups in which the hydroxylic oxygen is directly united to carbon. Veratrol may be included in this class, but it does not show the physiological action of guaiacol in any great degree, and probably does not split off any guaiacol in the organism. If, however, instead of replacing the hydrogen by a methyl group as in veratrol, one replaces it by a larger group, then the resulting compound is less stable, and guaiacol is regenerated to a greater or less extent in the organism. The glycerol ether of guaiacol—



known as "*Guaiamar*," is one of the most important of this type. It is soluble in water and is prepared by the action of mono-chlorhydrin, $\text{CH}_2(\text{OH})\text{—CH}(\text{OH})\text{—CH}_2\text{Cl}$, on an alkaline salt of guaiacol, or by the interaction of guaiacol and glycerol in presence of condensing agents. Glycerol ethers of other phenols have been prepared in the same manner. Tasteless soluble derivatives of guaiacol and other phenolic substances are obtained by the action of alloxan on phenols in presence of certain condensing agents, such as H_2SO_4 , HCl , ZnCl_2 , etc.¹



An insoluble guaiacol preparation, known as "*Cetiacol*" or "*Palmaicol*," is obtained by the action of guaiacol in sodium ethylate on spermaceti oil at 80°C .² It is said to be without irritant action on the alimentary canal.

Guaiaperol is an addition product of guaiacol and piperidine, having the formula $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{N}(\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{O}_2)_2$. The object aimed at is to combine the action of guaiacol with the tonic action of piperidine on the heart and circulation. It is said to be without irritant action.³

¹ D. R. P., 113,722.

² Engl. Pat., 16,349.

³ Chaplin and Tunnicliffe, *B. M. J.* (1897), p. 137.

Creosoform is a product obtained by the condensation of formaldehyde and creosote, and has been recommended as an internal antiseptic. A substance of this type recently introduced is "*Hexamecoll*," a preparation of guaiacol and hexamethylene-tetramine.¹ It is a powder which readily splits up into its components (*e.g.* when rubbed on the skin), and is recommended as an external disinfectant.

Another class of guaiacol derivatives comprises substances which do not regenerate guaiacol in the organism. It was to be expected that the entrance of a sulphonic acid group into guaiacol would lower its activity, and such is found to be the

case. By sulphonating guaiacol at 70°–80° C., $C_6H_3 \begin{cases} \text{OH} & (1) \\ \text{OCH}_3 & (2) \\ \text{SO}_3\text{H} & (3) \end{cases}$,

is obtained, which is therapeutically useful, but if the sulphonation be carried out at 140°–150° C., the chief product is

$C_6H_3 \begin{cases} \text{OH} & (1) \\ \text{OCH}_3 & (2) \\ \text{SO}_3\text{H} & (4) \end{cases}$, which is of no therapeutic value. The potassium

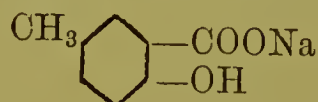
salt of the former is known as "*Thiocoll*," and is soluble and

non-irritant. The sodium salt of $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{cases} \text{OH} \\ \text{O}-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH} \end{cases}$, known as "*Guaiacetin*," is soluble in water and nearly tasteless, and can be obtained by the action of chloracetic acid on catechol in the presence of alkali.² Guaiacol-carboxylic acid,

$C_6H_3 \begin{cases} \text{OH} \\ \text{OCH}_3 \\ \text{COOH} \end{cases}$, is sparingly soluble, and has antiseptic properties,

but has no advantage over guaiacol.

Although not a derivative of guaiacol, "*Solveol*" is used as a cheap substitute for guaiacol to which it has a similar action. It is a solution of creosols in sodium para-cresotinate—



¹ Cf. Chap. IX.

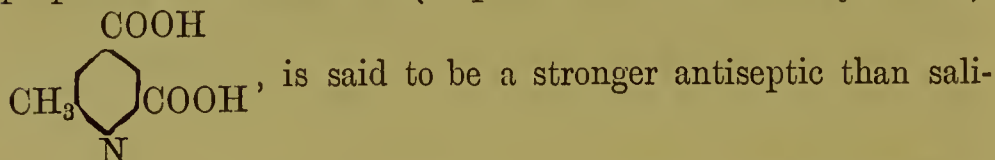
² D. R. P., 87,386; see also *Ibid.*, 87,668 and 87,669.

CHAPTER XI

OTHER ORGANIC ANTISEPTICS, EXCLUDING IODINE COMPOUNDS

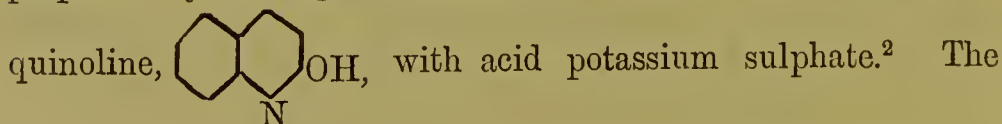
Naphthalene, Pyridine, and Quinoline Derivatives.—The antiseptics derived from other cyclic systems, such as naphthalene, pyridine and quinoline, are none of them so important as certain benzene derivatives, such as phenol. The naphthols and their derivatives have already been mentioned in connection with the phenols, but naphthalene itself has antiseptic properties, and on account of its volatility is a useful insecticide, and has largely replaced camphor as a means of protecting clothes and other fabrics from moths. It is often sold for this purpose under the name of "carbon."

All the pyridine carboxylic acids have strong antiseptic properties. *Uvitonic acid* (2 - picoline - 4 - 6 - dicarboxylic acid),



cyclic acid, but the expense of its preparation has prevented it from being used for this purpose. It is produced by the action of alcoholic ammonia on pyruvic acid.¹

Quinoline has an antiseptic action, which is increased by the entrance of methyl groups. A quinoline derivative has been placed on the market under the name of *Chinosol*, and is prepared by boiling an alcoholic solution of ortho-hydroxy-



product appears to consist of ortho-hydroxy-quinoline sulphate

¹ Böttinger, *Annalen*, **188** (1877), 330; **208** (1881), 138; *Ber.*, **13** (1890), 2032; De Jong, *Rec. Trav. Chim.*, **23** (1904), 136.

² D. R. P., 88,520.

and potassium sulphate. It has been used as an antiseptic both internal and external.

Formaldehyde.—The strong antiseptic properties of formaldehyde have only recently been made use of in medicine, as the application of this substance has been hindered by its corrosive and toxic action. It readily polymerizes, forming

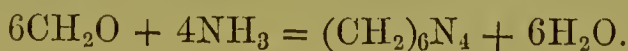


tri-oxy-methylene, $\text{HO.CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH} \end{array} \text{CH.OH}$, which is also strongly antiseptic, but gives rise to bad effects when taken internally. Formaldehyde has long been used for the disinfection of rooms, for which purpose its volatility renders it eminently suitable, but its use as a drug depends on the manufacture of compounds which slowly split off formaldehyde under the influence of the secretions of the organism.

One of the earliest compounds of this class was *Glutol*, obtained by the action of formaldehyde on gelatine; other compounds of this type have been prepared with formaldehyde and casein,¹ and formaldehyde and nucleic acid, the latter compound yielding soluble alkali salts.² The compounds of formaldehyde and carbohydrates are of greater importance. Classen found that formaldehyde reacts with starch, dextrin, etc., yielding insoluble, odourless, non-irritant substances, which slowly split off formaldehyde, and are antiseptic without being poisonous.³ Soluble condensation products of dextrin and formaldehyde (*Dextroform*) can be obtained by a modification of this process.⁴ A condensation product of formaldehyde with lactose has, under the name of *Formamint*, attained great popularity. This substance is used in the form of tablets, which, when allowed to dissolve in the mouth, liberate formaldehyde, and so check and prevent septic conditions in the throat and mouth.

Hexamecoll, a condensation product of guaiacol and hexamethylenetetramine, has been considered in the previous chapter.

Formaldehyde reacts readily with ammonia, forming *hexamethylenetetramine*, $(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{N}_4$, discovered by Butlerow⁵ in 1860.



¹ D. R. P., 13,565.

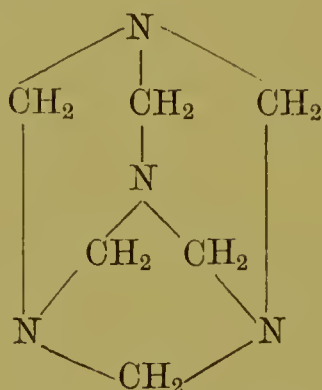
² Ibid., 139,907.

³ Ibid., 92,259, 93,111, 94,628, 99,378.

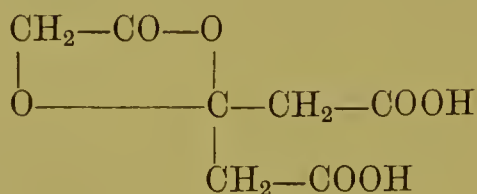
⁴ Ibid., 94,282.

⁵ Butlerow, *Annalen*, 115 (1860), 322.

It is a basic substance, very soluble in water, and its constitution is probably represented by the formula—



This substance has strong antiseptic properties, but its aqueous solutions can be taken internally without causing poisonous or irritant symptoms. It has been largely used in medicine, under the name of *Urotropin*, as a urinary antiseptic, for which purpose it is stated to be better than salicylic acid or any of the older preparations. It has some solvent action on uric acid, but it is improbable that it is capable of dissolving uric acid to any extent in the concentrations in which it can be present in the organism (*cf.* Chapter XV.). It is also said to be of value in laryngitis, pharyngitis, etc. The anhydro-methylene-citric-acid—



derivative of urotropine has been introduced under the names of *New Urotropin* and *Helmitol*.

Tannic and Gallic Acids.—Tannic acid is distinguished by its astringent and styptic action, and its freedom from toxic effects; gallic acid is more irritant and five times as antiseptic

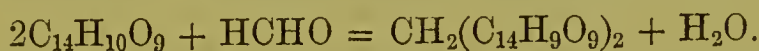
as tannic acid.¹ Gallic acid has the structure, ,

but that of tannic acid is not known with certainty. Its

¹ Heinz and Liebrecht, *Ber. klin. W.* (1891), 584.

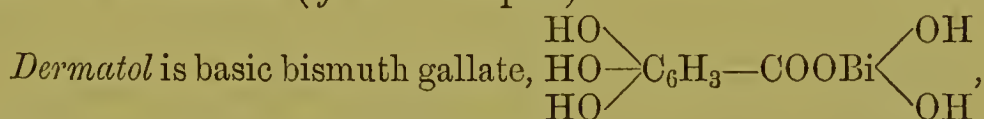
empirical formula is $C_{14}H_{10}O_9$, from which it appears to be a digallic acid.

In order to avoid the unpleasant taste of tannic acid itself, various insoluble derivatives have been prepared, which pass unchanged through the stomach, and are decomposed in the intestine, where they liberate free tannic acid. *Tannigen* is an insoluble acetyl derivative of tannic acid, soluble in alkalies.¹ *Tannoform*, one of the best examples of this class, is a condensation product of tannic acid and formaldehyde²—



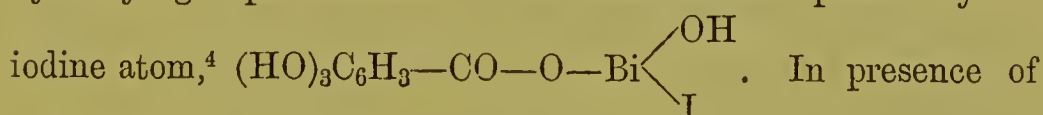
It combines the antiseptic properties of formaldehyde with the astringent action of tannic acid, and is used internally as an astringent and antidiarrhoeic; externally it is used as an antiseptic for wounds, etc.

Similar preparations of gallic acid have been devised, but the compounds of this acid containing bismuth are of more importance. Bismuth has a beneficent action on wounds, causing the surface to dry without impairing the healing power,³ and therefore its insoluble compounds with antiseptic and astringent substances readily lend themselves for use as iodoform substitutes (*cf.* next chapter).



and is a favourite iodoform substitute.

Airol is a derivative of *Dermatol*, in which one of the hydroxyl groups attached to the bismuth is replaced by an



moisture, it liberates free iodine, and it can therefore be regarded as a true iodoform substitute, owing its antiseptic action to the actual liberation of iodine. The presence of the bismuth and gallic acid confers also an astringent action on this substance. It is used externally as an iodoform substitute (*cf.* Chapter XII.).

¹ D. R. P., 78,879; H. Meyer, *Deut. med. W.*, 31 (1894).

² D. R. P., 88,082.

³ Steinfeld and H. Meyer, *A. e. P. P.*, 20 (1886), 40.

⁴ D. R. P., 80,399, 82,593.

CHAPTER XII

ODOFORM AND ITS SUBSTITUTES—OTHER IODINE AND BROMINE COMPOUNDS

ODOFORM has been very extensively used in surgery as a dressing for wounds, as it seems to promote healing as well as exerting an antiseptic action. In laboratory experiments *in vitro*, iodoform has so slight a bactericidal power as to indicate that it would be useless for such a purpose, and its antiseptic action appears to be due to the free iodine liberated when it comes into contact with fat, putrefactive material, etc.

Iodoform is prepared according to a well-known method by the action of free iodine on a warm mixture of acetone or alcohol and sodium hydroxide or carbonate solution. In this process, part of the iodine is used up in forming alkaline iodide, from which free iodine has to be again regenerated before it can be used for the manufacture of a further quantity of iodoform. For this reason, various electrolytic methods for preparing iodoform have been devised. One of these consists in electrolyzing in a current of carbon dioxide a warm solution of potassium iodide to which alcohol has been added.¹

The same method can be applied to the preparation of chloroform and bromoform, but in these cases the stream of carbon dioxide is unnecessary. Iodoform is also manufactured by passing ozone through a solution of potassium iodide and sodium carbonate in 30 per cent. alcohol, at a temperature of 50° C. The ozone is passed into the liquid until all the potassium iodide has been decomposed.²

Iodoform, in spite of its many valuable properties, suffers from some serious drawbacks, the chief of these being its powerful odour and the fact that it often has an irritant action on the skin, giving rise to a kind of eczema. It also has toxic properties, which sometimes give rise to definite

¹ D. R. P., 29,771.

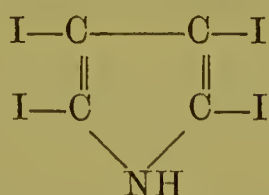
² Ibid., 109,013.

symptoms of poisoning. In order to mask the odour of iodoform, many preparations have been introduced in which it is mixed with strong and pleasantly scented substances, but these need not be mentioned here. On the other hand, by combining iodoform with inodorous substances, its volatility can be lowered and its odour destroyed.

For example, a compound of iodoform with hexa-methylene-tetramine is inodorous, and is known as *iodoformin*,¹ and a similar compound with hexamethylene-tetramine-ethyl iodide was introduced under the name *iodoformal*,² but both of these compounds are decomposed by water into their components, and hence in practice they possess no advantage over a mere mixture.

Of far greater importance are the efforts that have been made to produce other insoluble compounds which should possess the valuable properties of iodoform in promoting the healing of wounds, and have the further advantage of being less irritant and toxic than iodoform, and free from any powerful odour. Many substances have been prepared in attempting to meet these requirements, and these comprise derivatives of iodine as well as those of other halogens and of various metals such as bismuth. Of the various iodine derivatives, pure and simple, that have come into use, only one of them, *iodol* (tetraiodo-pyrrol), resembles iodoform in the fact that its action is due to the actual liberation of iodine. Airol, a bismuth compound, which also liberates free iodine, has been considered in the previous chapter.

In aromatic compounds it is true that the antiseptic power is generally increased by the replacement of hydrogen by iodine, but nevertheless the latter is too firmly united to the nucleus to be liberated by the action of the tissues, and therefore these compounds cannot be compared in their action with iodoform. In the case of the pyrrol ring, however, the iodine is in a more labile state, and tetraiodo-pyrrol—

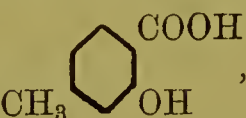


¹ D. R. P., 87,812.

² Ibid., 89,243.

resembles iodoform in its action, and has the advantage of being odourless and non-irritant, as well as insoluble. It is used as an iodoform substitute under the name of *iodol*, and is prepared by the action of iodine on an alkaline solution of pyrrol, the latter being obtained from "bone-oil."¹

There are, however, many other organic derivatives of iodine which possess antiseptic properties, and are used as iodoform substitutes, although their mode of action is quite different. For example, by the addition of a solution of iodine in potassium iodide to an alkaline solution of a phenol, compounds are produced containing two atoms of iodine, one of which replaces a nuclear hydrogen atom, and the other the hydrogen of the hydroxyl group. By the action of sodium sulphite, the iodine atom can be removed from the OI group and the mono-iodo-substituted phenol formed. A different type of iodophenol is produced by the action of iodine in potassium iodide on phenol-carboxylic acids in presence of an exact amount of alkali, whereby the COOH group is removed by loss of CO₂, and iodine enters the nucleus but not the

hydroxyl group.² For example, , when treated in

this way, yields tri-iodo-meta-cresol, . The same

product may also be prepared by adding a solution of iodine in potassium iodide to a very dilute solution of meta-cresol in alkali.³

The iodoxyl compounds, containing the group —OI, possess marked antiseptic and anti-syphilitic properties, but the iodophenols containing iodine in the nucleus do not differ very much from the phenols in their action, but they are sometimes used, as they are convenient crystalline insoluble antiseptics.

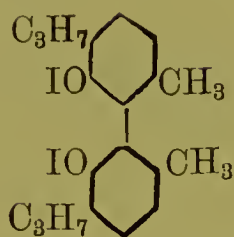
The best known of the iodoxyl compounds is *Aristol*, dithymol-diodide—⁴

¹ D. R. P., 35,130, 38,423.

³ Ibid., 106,504.

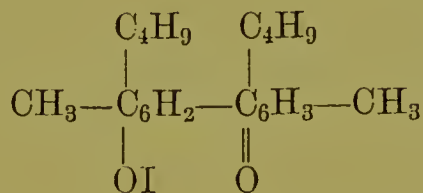
² Ibid., 72,996.

⁴ Ibid., 49,739.



which is a favourite antiseptic, but suffers from the drawback of being rather unstable and expensive.¹

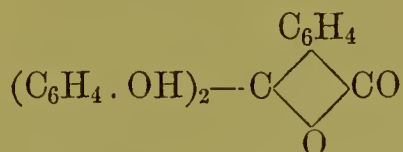
Europhen—



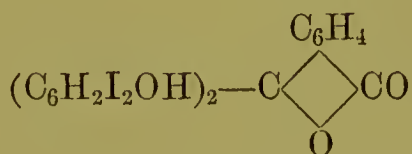
is another substance of this type which serves as an odourless and non-irritant iodoform substitute.²

Tri-iodo-cresol, known by the fancy-name of *Losophan*, is an example of a phenolic compound in which the hydrogen atoms of the nucleus are replaced by iodine. These substances possess the antiseptic properties of phenols in an enhanced degree, but they cannot be regarded as iodoform substitutes, as they do not possess the characteristic iodine action, and are also too corrosive in their action on the skin.

Tetra-iodo-phenolphthalein has been prepared by many different methods.³ Phenolphthalein itself—



when taken internally has a mild purgative action, but is otherwise physiologically inert; but the tetra-iodo-derivative—



¹ Eichhoff, *Monatsh. f. pr. Derm.* (1890), 2; Neisser, *Berl. klin. W.* (1890), Nr. 19.

² D. R. P., 56,830, 61,575.

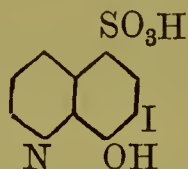
³ Classen, *Ber.*, 28 (1895), 1606; D. R. P., 85,930, 86,069, 88,390; Kalle & Co., D. R. P., 143,596.

called *Nosophen*, has powerful antiseptic properties. As this substance contains two hydroxyl groups, salts can be prepared with the heavy metals such as zinc, iron, mercury, and bismuth, but these have not come into use, although they combine the antiseptic action of nosophen with the useful properties of the metal.

Isoform is the name that has been given to para-iodoxy-anisol, $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{IO}_2$, a colourless insoluble powder that has been recommended as a dry antiseptic, and which is said to be especially valuable in the treatment of mercurial stomatitis.¹ It is obtained by the oxidation of para-iodo-toluene, $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{I}$, whereby $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{ICl}_2$ or $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{IO}$ is formed, either being easily oxidized to $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{IO}_2$.² Commercially, it is not met with in the pure state, but owing to its explosive nature is mixed with calcium phosphate or glycerol.

Sozoiodol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{I}_2(\text{OH})(\text{SO}_3\text{H})$,³ probably owes its antiseptic action partly to its strongly acid character. Its zinc and mercury salts are useful preparations for the administration of these metals.

Loretin is iodo hydroxy-quinoline sulphonic acid—



prepared by Claus by the sulphonation of hydroxy-quinoline with fuming sulphuric acid, and treating the reaction-product with iodine.⁴ This substance is said to be an iodoform substitute free from unpleasant effects. Its sodium salt has been used in tuberculosis under the name of *Griserin*.⁵ Other similarly constituted compounds with the same kind of action have been prepared, and iodo-chlor-hydroxy-quinoline⁶ has been introduced as a non-poisonous iodoform substitute under the name of *Vioform*.

Substitutes for Alkaline Iodides.—Another important class

¹ Siebert, *Deut. med. W.*, 7 (1907), 256.

³ *Ibid.*, 45, 226.

⁵ *Apoth. Ztg.* (1904), 908.

² D. R. P., 161,725.

⁴ *Ibid.*, 72,942.

⁶ D. R. P., 117,767.

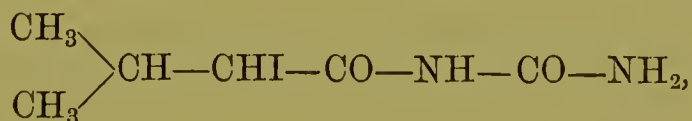
of iodine compounds includes those substances which have been prepared with the object of producing substitutes for the alkaline iodides. The latter are largely used in medicine, but are liable to cause unpleasant symptoms, to which the term "iodism" is given, and for this reason a very large number of drugs have been introduced with the object of furnishing substances which should possess the therapeutic value of the alkaline iodides without giving rise to the symptoms of iodism.

Iodoform has been used internally, being for the most part converted by the organism into alkaline iodides, but it has no real value in this respect. Compounds of iodine (and of bromine) with fats which gradually split off their iodine appear to be very good substitutes for the alkaline iodides, compared with which they are said to possess many advantages.¹

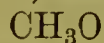
Iodipin is one of the best known substances of this type, and is a combination of iodine and sesame-oil.²

Iothion is di-iodo-hydroxypropane, $C_3H_5I_2OH$, and is used in the form of ointments as a substitute for tincture of iodine.

Iodival is mon-iodo-isovaleryl-urea—



and is administered internally as a substitute for iodine and the iodides. It is said to be specially useful in nervous diseases, (*cf.* valerobromine, p. 178) and in syphilis.



Para-iodo-guaiacol, $^3HO \text{---} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \text{---} I$, is decomposed into its components in the intestine, and has been recommended as a substitute for the iodides.

The thyroid gland contains iodine in organic combination, and various attempts have been made to prepare a similar substance to the so-called "iodo-thyrine" by combining iodine with proteins. The products thus obtained do not resemble iodo-thyrine in their physiological effects, but they form

¹ H. Winternitz, *Deut. med. W.*, 23 (1897).

² Merck, D. R. P., 159,748.

³ *Chemiker Zeitg.*, 31 (1907), 175.

useful substitutes for the alkaline iodides. Compounds of iodine with proteins are readily obtained by the addition of iodine in potassium iodide solution to aqueous protein solutions, or by adding finely powdered iodine to warm aqueous solutions, and coagulating the product with acetic acid.¹ One of the best known compounds of this type is *Iodoglidine*, a compound of iodine with gliadin, the vegetable protein obtained from wheat. It behaves in a similar manner to potassium iodide, but is said also to increase the metabolism, thus resembling iodo-thyrine in this respect.² Another compound of iodine and protein is *Iodalbin*, which is also used as a substitute for the alkaline iodides.

BROMINE DERIVATIVES

As in the case of iodine, the entrance of chlorine or bromine into aromatic compounds increases their antiseptic power, but the chloro- and bromo-phenols have so strong an irritant action that derivatives of that type have found no therapeutic application.

On the other hand, the alkaline bromides are used medicinally almost as much as the iodides, being especially important in the treatment of certain nervous disorders. Potassium bromide has some drawbacks precisely similar to those attending the use of potassium iodide, and so efforts have been made to find substitutes which will possess the useful sedative properties of potassium bromide without its drawbacks.

Bromipin is analogous to iodipin, and is said to be a valuable substitute for potassium bromide.

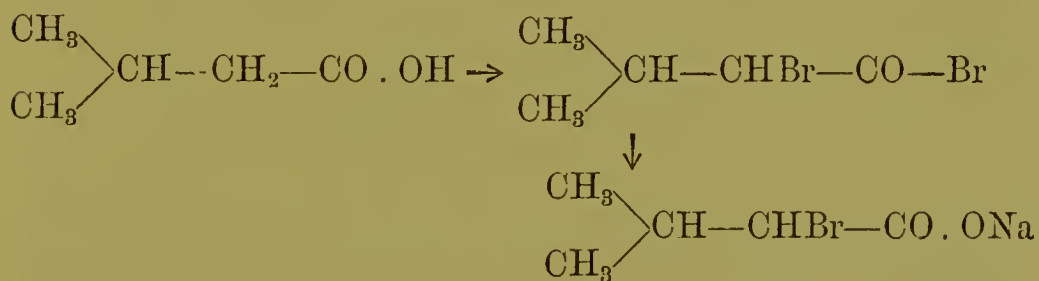
Valerobromine (cf. iodival), $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CH} - \text{CBr} - \text{COONa}$, is

said to be free from the drawbacks of potassium iodide, while retaining its sedative properties. It is also said to derive a

¹ Hopkins and Brook, *Journ. of Physiol.*, 22 (1897), 184.

² *Deut. med. W.*, 37 (1907), 1490.

sedative action from the presence of the valerianic acid grouping, but this seems doubtful. It is obtained by the action of bromine on valerianic acid, whereby bromo-valerianic bromide is obtained, which is then hydrolyzed with water and neutralized, giving Valerobromine—

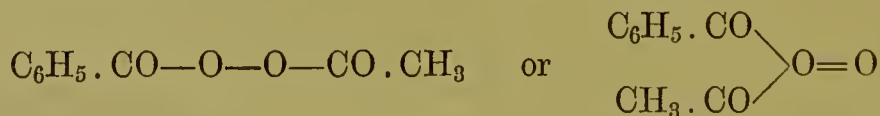


CHAPTER XIII

INORGANIC ANTISEPTICS, AND METALLIC COMPOUNDS

THE only non-metallic inorganic antiseptics are hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2 , and boric acid, H_3BO_3 . The former owes its antiseptic action to the liberation of oxygen, and has the great advantages compared with most disinfectants of being odourless, non-poisonous, and almost free from irritant action. Other advantages of hydrogen peroxide are that it does not precipitate albumen, and leaves only water when it has exerted all its antiseptic action. Formerly it was only obtainable in acid solutions, which were not suitable for the dressing of wounds, etc., but neutral 30 per cent. solutions may now be obtained under the name of *Perhydrol*, which can be diluted yielding solutions very well suited for the treatment of wounds and septic conditions. *Magnesium-perhydrol* (a mixture of MgO_2 and MgO) and *Zinc-perhydrol* (a mixture of ZnO_2 and ZnO) also owe their antiseptic action to the liberation of oxygen; the former is for internal and the latter for external use.

Various organic derivatives of hydrogen peroxide have been prepared, but as they owe their antiseptic properties solely to the liberated oxygen, they have not been considered in the chapters devoted to the true organic antiseptics. An example of this type is benzoyl-acetyl hydrogen peroxide—



known as *Acetozone*.

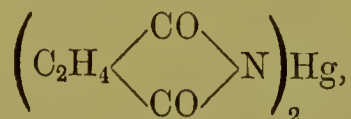
For a similar reason, various metallic salts of organic acids are also included in this chapter, rather than in that on the organic antiseptics, as their action depends on the metal and not on the organic acid radicle.

Derivatives of Mercury.—Mercury compounds are used very

considerably as antiseptics, and also in the treatment of syphilis. The part played by antiseptics in the specific treatment of protozoal diseases will be discussed in the following chapter; for the present, we shall confine our attention to the various preparations of mercury, and to the *raison d'être* of their existence.

As antiseptics, mercury salts suffer from the drawback that metallic instruments cannot be immersed in them, and for the treatment of syphilis, their corrosive, irritant and toxic nature is a serious disadvantage. For this reason, many efforts have been made to prepare soluble mercury salts which can be injected without giving rise to the bad effects of the simple soluble salts, such as the chloride. In another direction, attempts have been made to obtain soluble mercuric salts in which the electro-negative character of the mercury is masked, so that solutions may be used for the sterilization of metallic instruments without the former being reduced with liberation of metallic mercury. Another drawback of mercuric chloride is the fact that it is not very soluble, and only dissolves slowly.

None of the numerous preparations which have been introduced as injection media have proved completely satisfactory, and in many cases the older method of using mercurial ointment (the oleate or the free metal) is preferred, in spite of the indefinite amount of mercury that is absorbed through the skin, as compared with the exact amount administered by intra-muscular injection. Colloidal metallic mercury¹ has been tried as an injection medium, and various phenolic derivatives of mercury have been prepared,² such as the mercury salts of phenol, naphthol, resorcinol, and tribromophenol, but these latter do not appear to be suitable for injection. The dimethyl, diethyl, and diphenyl derivatives of mercury are too dangerously toxic to be of any therapeutic value. More satisfactory results seem to have been obtained with mercury derivatives of acid-amides, and amino-acids. Mercury derivatives of formamide, $(\text{H} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}—)_2\text{Hg}$, and of succinimide

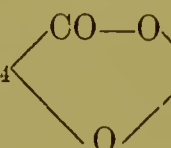


¹ Lottermoser, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, 57 (1898), 484.

² D. R. P., 48,539.


as well as those of asparagine, $[\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} - \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{COO}]_2\text{Hg}$, and alanine, $[\text{CH}_3 - \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) - \text{COO}]_2\text{Hg}$, have been prepared, of which mercury succinimide seems to be the only one that has been used in medicine.

Good results are said to have been obtained with secondary

mercury salicylate, C_6H_4  Hg , a substance from which

the mercury cannot be precipitated with H_2S . Although this compound is itself insoluble in water, it yields soluble double salts with the alkali chlorides. Mercurous tartrate, prepared by Lustgarten, is decomposed by the intestinal alkali, with liberation of finely divided mercury.

Of the various injection media that have been tried, the best results, so far, appear to have been obtained with various protein preparations. Some of these, obtained from glue, are soluble in water in any quantity, and are not precipitated by protein, nor acted on by alkalies with liberation of mercury (*cf.* Silver).

The mercury salt of para-phenol-sulphonic acid, known as *Hydrargyrol*, $(\text{HO} \text{  \text{SO}_2 - \text{O} -)_2\text{Hg}$, is said not to precipitate proteins, and not to attack metallic instruments. A double salt of this substance and ammonium tartrate is more stable, $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_8\text{S}_2\text{Hg}$, $4[\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6(\text{NH}_4)_2] + 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$,¹ and has been introduced into practice under the name of *Asterol*. It is soluble in water, giving a clear neutral solution, from which H_2S does not precipitate HgS . It is stated that aqueous solutions of asterol do not precipitate albumen,² and though the bactericidal action is only about half that of mercuric chloride, the solutions have the advantage of not losing any of their power in protein fluids, and of penetrating further into the tissues than solutions of sublimate. Asterol does not cauterize wound surfaces, and does not injure metallic instruments, and on account of these numerous advantages it is recommended for general surgical use.

Similar preparations have been obtained by the action of

¹ D. R. P., 157,663.

² Steinmann, *Ber. klin. W.*, 11 (1899), 229.

mercuric oxide on alkaline solutions of phenol-*disulphonic* acid in molecular proportions.¹ They are termed *Hermophenyl*, and are soluble in five parts water. Potassium mercury hyposulphite is also said to be non-irritant and easily soluble.²

Soluble mercury preparations which do not attack metallic objects have long been used in this country in the form of potassium mercury iodide, to which alkaline carbonate has been added. Recently, similar compounds have been introduced in Germany by adding mercuric cyanide, cyanate, or *p*-phenol-sulphonate to alkaline carbonates.³

Silver.—Silver nitrate, besides its well-known caustic action, possesses strong bactericidal properties, but as it is precipitated both by proteins and by chlorides, its use is confined to the surface of the body. It would be desirable to obtain a compound of silver which, while retaining its bactericidal properties, should be free from the caustic action of silver nitrate, and not be precipitated by chlorides or proteins. Brief mention need only be made of colloidal silver chloride and colloidal silver solutions, which were at one time in great vogue for disinfection of the tissues by intravenous injection. Such methods are useless, as the damage done to the tissues is greater than to the bacteria, and treatment of this kind is only justifiable for local infections (*cf.* following chapter).

These colloidal solutions, as also solutions of silver phosphate in ethylene-diamine, fulfil most of the chemical requirements outlined above, but they suffer from various drawbacks which have prevented their general application. The compound

of silver nitrate and ethylene-diamine,
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{—NH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{—NH}_2 \end{array}$$
, however, is

used as a substitute for silver nitrate under the name *Argentamin*.

As in the case of mercury, better results have been obtained with protein compounds. *Argonin* is a compound of silver and casein, but is difficultly soluble in water and sensitive to light. *Protargol* is a compound of this type which has a higher percentage of silver, is free from caustic effects, does not precipitate chlorides, and has the bactericidal effects of silver. To

¹ Lumière and Chevotier, *C. R.*, **132** (1901), 145.

² Dreser, *A. e. P. P.*, **32** (1893), 456.

³ *D. R. P.*, 104,904, 121,656.

prepare it, a peptone solution is precipitated with silver nitrate solution or shaken with moist silver oxide, and the insoluble compound thus obtained, digested with protalbumose. Soluble protargol is formed in this way, and is separated from the solution by evaporation *in vacuo*. Similar compounds can be obtained from plant globulins, and the corresponding compounds have also been obtained from mercury, iron, copper, lead, zinc, and bismuth.¹ Other silver albumen compounds have been obtained from gelatoses (hydrolytic products from glue).² *Albargin*, a powder readily soluble in water and of neutral reaction, is a substance of this type. It is recommended in various septic conditions as a non-irritant antiseptic.

Zinc.—Many salts of zinc possess astringent and antiseptic properties. A soluble zinc salt, recommended for various different complaints as a non-irritant antiseptic, is *Nizin*,³ a zinc salt of sulphanilic acid, $(\text{NH}_2\text{—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—SO}_3)_2\text{Zn}$, $4\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

Zinc perhydrol combines the antiseptic properties of hydrogen peroxide with the astringent properties of zinc, and has already been mentioned (p. 180).

Aluminium.—The astringent properties of ordinary alum are well known. The aluminium salt of β naphthol-disulphonic acid, $[\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5\text{OH}(\text{SO}_3)_2]_3\text{Al}_2$, is an example of the various organic aluminium salts that have been prepared. It is known as *Alumnol*,⁴ and is recommended as a mild antiseptic, etc.

Iron.—Ferric salts resemble those of aluminium in many of their properties, and they are used as astringents and styptics. For use as a styptic, a double compound of ferric chloride and antipyrine has been introduced under the name of *Ferripyryn*, but it has no advantages compared with ferric chloride itself.

The chief therapeutic use of iron is, however, in anæmia and chlorosis. For this purpose, the ferrous salts are usually preferred, as they do not have so great a caustic action as the ferric, and hence do not disturb the stomach so much. The unpleasant by-effects of iron on the teeth and stomach have led to many attempts at obtaining compounds which should be free from these disadvantages.

¹ D. R. P., 118,353, 118,496.

² Ibid., 141,967, 146,792, 146,793.

³ *Apotheker Zeitung* (1908), 215.

⁴ D. R. P., 74,209; *Ber. klin. W.*, 46 (1892).

By the reduction of hæmoglobin, Kobert obtained a substance, *hæmol*, which contains the iron in the same form as hæmoglobin, and Bunge obtained from egg-yolk a substance from which the iron could not be precipitated by ammonium sulphide.¹ This substance was termed *hæmatogen* by Bunge, and a similar substance has been isolated from the liver.² A synthetic albuminate of iron was obtained by Schmiedeberg,³ but this differs from Bunge's hæmatogen in certain respects. Various other albuminates of iron have been prepared, and many of these, as well as some of the foregoing substances, have been placed upon the market (*Hæmol*, *Hæmatogen*, etc). None of these organic compounds are any more powerful agents in the treatment of anæmia than the simple inorganic salts, their advantage being simply that they are less irritant to the gastro-intestinal tract.

Compounds of arsenic and antimony, as well as certain bismuth preparations, are dealt with elsewhere.

¹ *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, **9** (1884), 49.

² *Ibid.*, **10** (1886), 453.

³ *A. e. P. P.*, **33** (1894), 101.

CHAPTER XIV

ARSENIC AND ANTIMONY COMPOUNDS

General Introduction (Serum Therapy, Chemico-Therapy, and Tissue Antisepsis)—Arsenious oxide and the salts derived from it have for many years been used as tonics and for anæmia, and the irritant properties of antimony have long been made use of in potassium antimonyl tartrate, $C_4H_8O_6KSbO$ (tartar emetic). In this chapter, however, it is proposed to deal mainly with a modern development of the therapeutics of arsenic and antimony, namely, with their use in the treatment of diseases of protozoal origin, such as trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness), syphilis, etc. For this purpose, the organic derivatives of arsenic, especially those containing an aromatic nucleus, have proved the most useful. In the case of antimony, its close pharmacological resemblance to arsenic indicates the probability of its useful application in the same way, but up to the present, antimony compounds analogous to the most successful arsenic compounds have not been prepared.

Many of the diseases caused by microbial infection can be successfully treated with a suitable serum, but there are a large number, especially those of protozoal origin, which do not lend themselves to serum-therapy. In these cases we must seek to effect a cure by chemical means, and at one time great hopes were entertained of curing many diseases of microbial origin by the use of general antiseptics, such as those which have proved so valuable in surgery. Generally speaking, however, the results obtained by the introduction of antiseptic methods into medicine have been disappointing when compared with the success that has attended their use in surgery. Various processes, such as the intravenous injection of formaldehyde solutions, the inhalation of antiseptic vapours such as creosote for consumption, and many others, have not fulfilled the hope

that was placed in them. This is not surprising when it is borne in mind that most antiseptics are quite as injurious to the tissues of the higher organism as they are to the bacteria (*cf.* Chapter X.). It has been pointed out by Cushny¹ that a greater measure of success may be hoped for in the case of those diseases which are caused by protozoa rather than by bacteria. The latter are probably amongst the oldest living organisms and have probably acquired a high degree of resistance, but the former do not appear to have been able to adapt themselves so successfully to their environment, and the diseases they give rise to are very likely of more recent date than those caused by bacteria.

In some of these diseases favourable results have been obtained by the use of a chemical specific, which is not equally fatal to all forms of life, but which reacts specifically with certain micro-organisms in a manner somewhat analogous to the action of the afore-mentioned curative sera. This is expressed by saying that a substance of this type should have a strong affinity for the parasites (parasitotrop), but should only be slightly active to the organism (organotrop). Instances of this are afforded by syphilis and malaria, which yield far more readily to specific antisepsis, the former to mercury and the latter to quinine, than do diseases of bacterial origin.

Within recent years it has been shown that the "sleeping sickness" of tropical Africa is caused by a protozoal parasite, the *Trypanosoma gambiense*, and this disease was found to react to various specifics, such as arsenic, although unfortunately their clinical use has not been completely successful. It was found that certain organic preparations, of which atoxyl is one of the best known examples, appeared to be more satisfactory than the older inorganic preparations, such as Fowler's solution (potassium arsenite). Nevertheless atoxyl is devoid of action on the trypanosomes *in vitro*, and it can only become specific for them when it undergoes some change in the body. Most of the atoxyl passes through the body unchanged, but the small portion which becomes changed is apparently capable of destroying a large proportion of the parasites. Probably the arsenic in this portion is changed into some compound of an unknown nature, the same or a similar compound being also formed

¹ Cushny, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 2 (Part IV.) (1909), 49-56.

from part of the arsenic in inorganic preparations. Although the active therapeutic agent is therefore probably the arsenic content, it is no doubt true that atoxyl possesses advantages over inorganic preparations by virtue of its physical properties, such as solubility. It is possible that it is able to penetrate into tissues which cannot be readily reached by inorganic arsenic.

Organic arsenic preparations of this type have also been used for the treatment of syphilis, but atoxyl does not appear to be so useful as mercury in this respect, although better results have been claimed for some of the newer preparations.

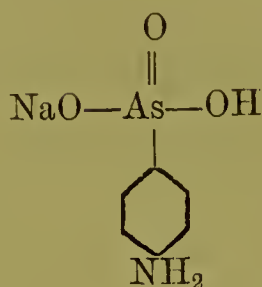
Antimony possesses somewhat similar pharmacological properties to arsenic, and on investigation antimony¹ was found to have an even stronger trypanocidal action than arsenic, but its inorganic preparations labour under the disadvantage of being strongly irritant, while organic preparations of antimony analogous to atoxyl have not yet been described.

Bismuth also has a powerful trypanocidal action, but it appears to be too toxic to the host to be of clinical value. All three metals, arsenic, antimony, and bismuth, appear to be fatal to trypanosomes in concentrations of one in two hundred thousand or even less, but Cushny has shown that a concentration of arsenic of one in three thousand four hundred is necessary to kill the harmless non-parasitic protozoa, such as *Paramœcium* and *Colipidium*, while still stronger solutions of antimony and bismuth, namely, $\frac{1}{970}$ and $\frac{1}{98}$ respectively, were necessary to effect the same result. These substances therefore appear to be true specifics against the trypanosomes, in the same way as quinine is a specific against the malaria organism.

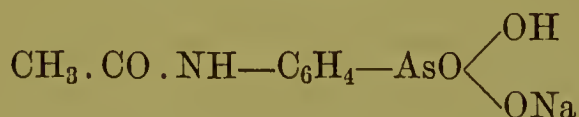
Some varieties of trypanosomes seem to be more sensitive to a given drug than others, and it therefore is desirable to use as many different specifics as possible in order that the parasites which resist one drug may be destroyed by another. It has also been established that the trypanosomes rapidly acquire a tolerance for these drugs, and therefore it is necessary to use large doses at the commencement of the treatment.

Arsenic Compounds.—As was stated above, it seems highly probable that atoxyl—

¹ Cushny, *loc. cit.*; Plimmer and Thomson, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, B 80 (1908), 1, 477.



does not of itself exert a trypanocidal action, but that it gives rise to other substances which have this specific property. This problem has been the subject of extended investigations by Ehrlich and others,¹ but the question still remains to be definitely settled. Atoxyl was first thought to be an anilide of arsenic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{—NH—AsO(OH)}_2$, but it was shown by Ehrlich and Berthelm to be a sodium salt of para-amino-phenyl-arsenic acid, $\text{NH}_2\text{—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—AsO(OH)}_2$, an observation of very great importance, as it opened up the way for the preparation of a series of different compounds, by which means it was hoped to obtain compounds of a lower toxicity to the host (slightly organotrop) and a higher toxicity to the parasites (highly parasitotrop). For example, the amino-group may be acetylated, benzoylated, etc., or replaced by halogen, hydroxyl, or other groups by means of the diazo reaction, whilst by starting with substituted amines instead of aniline, derivatives can be prepared containing groups of the types —NHR and —NR_2 , instead of NH_2 . Of the derivatives thus obtained, some are $\frac{1}{20}$ and some 60 or 70 times as toxic as atoxyl. The entrance of a sulphonic acid group in the molecule yielded a substance the toxicity of which is of the same order as sodium chloride, but it is also quite inert towards the parasites.² This is in accordance with the general physiological inertia of the sulphonic acids. The acetyl derivative—



which is known as arsacetin, has certain marked advantages compared with atoxyl, being more stable and less toxic to some animals, while equally toxic to the parasites. Other acid groups

¹ A general account is given by Ehrlich, *Ber.*, **42** (1909), 17–47.

² Ehrlich, *loc. cit.*

have no advantage over acetyl, and with increasing length of the side chain the toxicity becomes far greater.

In order to make a decided advance, it is necessary to gain some idea of *how* atoxyl and its derivatives act in the animal body, as it would obviously be an advantage to use a substance as nearly as possible identical with the product of the metabolism of the body. It is found that arsenious oxide, certain triphenylmethane dyes, etc., can kill parasites in blood serum *in vitro*, but that atoxyl and its derivatives do *not*, though in the body they exert a trypanocidal effect in very high dilutions, such as $\frac{1}{120,000}$. This difference between action *in vitro* and *in vivo* may be explained by various different hypotheses, such as—

(1) Atoxyl may be decomposed in the body into aniline and arsenic acid, the effect on the parasites being due to the inorganic arsenic.

(2) According to Uhlenhuth and Woithe, atoxyl and compounds of a similar type may stimulate the cells to the production of derivatives (amboceptors) which kill the parasites.

(3) The body may produce new products of a synthetic type leading to the production of more active compounds.

The first of these hypotheses is the simplest, and is in accordance with many of the observed facts, but its probability is weakened by the fact that no arsenic acid is excreted, and preparations have been obtained which are from ten to twenty times as active as inorganic arsenic. We have no knowledge of any actual facts in support of the second theory, and with regard to the third, it seems probable that some new highly active compounds are produced, but Ehrlich considers that such products of metabolism are simpler than the original compounds, and are not very complex synthetic bodies.

Some significant facts have been brought to light which seem to indicate something of the nature of these metabolic changes. For example, there seems to be a close connection between the therapeutic efficiency of atoxyl and the resistance offered to it by the organism. Thus, a mouse which can readily tolerate $\frac{1}{150}$ is no better influenced therapeutically by *this* dose than is an average mouse which can only stand $\frac{1}{300}$ by *that* dose. One which was very sensitive and was poisoned by $\frac{1}{400}$, showed a very marked trypanocidal effect. This seems






to indicate that the organism changes atoxyl into a more toxic substance, which also acts very strongly on the parasites. A change of this kind seems probably to be connected with the reduction of the arsenic from the pentavalent to the trivalent state.

Atoxyl, on reduction, gives p.-aminophenyl-arsenious oxide, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{AsO}$, and with stronger reducing agents p.-diaminoarsenobenzene, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{As}=\text{AsC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$. The reduction products of this type are generally more toxic and more active against trypanosomes than the corresponding derivatives containing pentavalent arsenic. The following table shows the dilutions at which one cubic centimetre will kill a mouse weighing twenty grams.

Group in para position to arsenic.	Form in which arsenic is present.		
	$\text{R}-\text{As}^{\text{V}}\begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{ONa} \end{matrix}$	$\text{R}-\text{As}^{\text{III}}=\text{O}$	$\text{R}-\text{As}^{\text{III}}=\text{As}^{\text{III}}-\text{R}$
$-\text{NH}_2$	1 : 200	1 : 15,000	1 : 6,000
$-\text{OH}$	1 : 75	1 : 13,000	1 : 1,000
$-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH}$	1 : 20	1 : 1,000	1 : 70

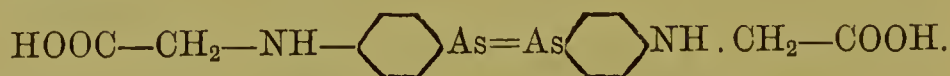
These reduction products show a *very marked* trypanocidal action, even *in vitro*. p-Hydroxy-phenyl-arsenious oxide, $\text{HO-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{As}=\text{O}$, is the strongest, and in a dilution of one in ten million kills trypanosomes in one hour. When it is realized that atoxyl does not kill trypanosomes even in five per cent. solution, and that the hydroxy compound, $\text{HO-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{AsO}(\text{OH})(\text{ONa})$, does not do so in one or two per cent. solutions, it will be seen what an enormous change is produced by reduction. This is an example of the increased toxicity of unsaturated compounds (*e.g.* carbon monoxide, hydrocyanic acid, acrolëin, etc., *cf.* Chapter II.). The increased trypanocidal action *in vitro* is accompanied by an increased action *in vivo*. One cubic centimetre of a one in forty thousand solution of p-hydroxyphenyl-arsenious-oxide caused the parasites to vanish from the blood of a mouse and for it to remain

free for seven days. In the other members of the series, action *in vivo* is parallel to action *in vitro*, and therefore it indicates that the action of the derivatives of phenyl-arsonic acid is due to a reduction process, and indeed most of the evidence from all sides points to the probability of the trypanocidal action of arsenic and antimony being dependent on the presence of these elements in the trivalent state.

Recently some of these trivalent aromatic arsenic compounds have been introduced into therapeutics. These are of the type $R-As=As-R$, rather than of the type $R-As=O$, and are distinguished by their very low toxicity. The reduction product of atoxyl itself, NH_2  $As=As$  NH_2 , has very high trypanocidal powers, but the derivatives that have had the greatest success are dihydroxy-diamino-arsenobenzene, HO  $As=As$  OH , and the reduction product from NH_2  NH_2 phenylglycine-arsenic acid—



namely,



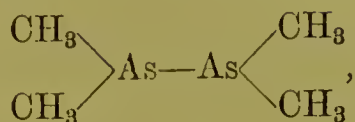
These compounds will be discussed in the next section.

Organic Arsenic Compounds.—Nomenclature: *Arsonic acid* denotes a derivative of arsenic acid, $AsO(OH)_3$, in which one of the hydroxyl groups is replaced by an organic radicle, $RAsO(OH)_2$. The salts are called *arsonates*, and those in which the organic radicle is of an aromatic nature are called *arylarsonates*.

Arsinic acid denotes a derivative of arsenic acid, $AsO(OH)_3$, in which two of the hydroxyl groups are replaced by organic radicles, $(R)_2=AsO-OH$. Most continental writers call both arsonic and arsinic acids by the latter name.

“*Arseno-*” is the term used to denote arsenic combined in the form $-As=As-$. Arsenobenzene is $C_6H_5-As=As-C_6H_5$, analogous to azobenzene, $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_5$.

The aliphatic arsenic compounds are, at the present day, of no very great therapeutic importance. Cacodyl—

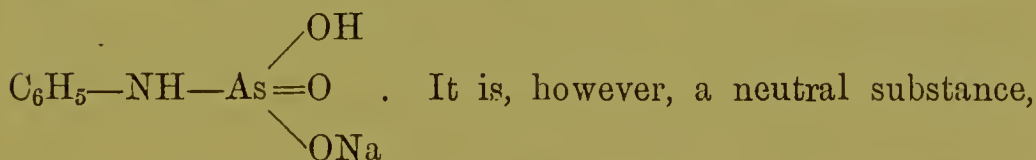


is poisonous, but the very soluble cacodylic acid, $(\text{CH}_3)_2=\text{As} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{array}$,

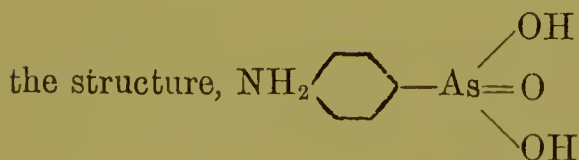
is comparatively harmless and inert. By reason of their excessive stability, its salts do not show a strong enough arsenical effect, and therefore do not find any therapeutic application. The same applies to "*new*"-cacodyl (*Arrhenal*), which is monomethyl-arsonic acid, $\text{CH}_3-\text{AsO}(\text{OH})_2$, all these aliphatic compounds having been practically superseded by the aromatic.

An account of most of these aliphatic arsenic compounds, and of the earlier aromatic ones, is given by Martindale in a paper communicated to the International Congress of Applied Chemistry, London, 1909. Section VIII. B., p. 28.

Aromatic Arsenic Compounds.—Atoxyl was the first aromatic arsenic compound to attain an extended use in therapeutics, and it is still the best known. By heating aniline arsenate, Béchamp¹ in 1863 obtained a substance which he took to be the anilide of arsenic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5-\text{NH}-\text{AsO}(\text{OH})_2$, and described the sodium, potassium, barium, and silver salts. A sodium derivative of this substance was introduced into therapeutics under the name of *atoxyl*, and its correct empirical formula was established by Fourneau,² who attributed to it the structure



and the sodium-free product obtained from it was found to be acid, and to be identical with the product obtained by Béchamp.³ It seemed unlikely that this compound, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_3\text{NAs}$, was really an anilide, and Ehrlich and Bertheim were able to show conclusively that it was para-amino-phenyl-arsonic acid, having



¹ Béchamp, *C. R.*, **56** (1863), 1173.

² Fourneau, *Journ. Pharm. Chim.*, 6 Series, **25** (1907), 332.

³ Ehrlich and Bertheim, *Ber.*, **40** (1907), 3292.

The following were the chief reasons in support of this view:—

(1) Atoxyl cannot be hydrolyzed into arsenic acid and aniline by any of the ordinary agents used to hydrolyze anilides.

(2) It contains a primary amino group, which is easily diazotized and coupled with phenols and amines. It is readily acetylated, yielding a stable acetyl derivative.

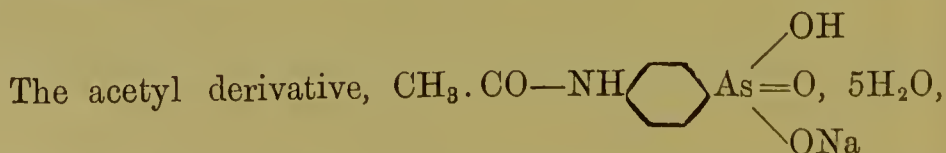
(3) Atoxyl corresponds in its properties with the arylarsonic acids of the type previously described by Michaelis and Reese.

(4) Hydriodic acid reacts with atoxyl, replacing the arsenic group by iodine with formation of para-iodo-aniline, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{I}$, thus proving that the arsenic and the amino group are in the para position to each other.

Atoxyl is prepared by heating arsenic acid with an excess of aniline at $180\text{--}190^\circ$, or by heating aniline with aniline arsenate. The sodium salt is then obtained by extracting with sodium carbonate and recrystallizing. The acid is often known as arsanilic acid, and its sodium salt as sodium arsanilate, by analogy to sulphanilic acid, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_2\text{—OH}$.

These terms, on account of their convenience, will hereafter be used to denote these compounds.

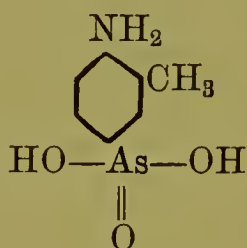
The sodium salt of this acid contains water of crystallization, the amount varying somewhat in the different commercial products. "*Soamin*" is the name given to a pure product of sodium arsanilate crystallized with five molecules of water. Other commercial products of this salt are known as *Arsamin*, *Atoxyl*, etc. These are used for the treatment of sleeping sickness, syphilis, and other diseases of protozoal origin, but unless they are used with caution, unpleasant and even dangerous by-effects, of which blindness is one of the worst, may arise.



is said to be less toxic to many animals than atoxyl itself, and has the advantage of being more stable, so that its solutions

can be sterilized by boiling. It is known as *Arsacetin* or *Acetyl-atoxyl*, and the acid is readily prepared by the action of acetic anhydride on arsanilic acid. Arsacetin is then obtained by neutralizing with soda.

Ortho-toluidine yields derivatives exactly analogous to those obtained from aniline. For example, 2-amino-tolyl-5-arsonic acid—

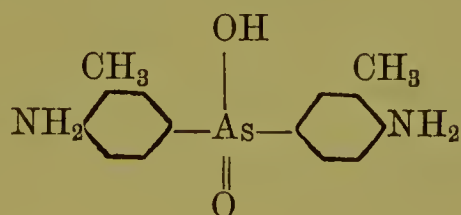


is obtained by heating *o*-toluidine arsenate with twice its weight of *o*-toluidine at 180°–185°. The sodium salt is then obtained by treatment with sodium carbonate.¹

The free acid can be acetylated, and the acetyl-compound yields a sodium salt, $\text{CH}_3-\text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{AsO}(\text{OH})(\text{ONa})$

analogous to arsacetin, and known by the trade name of "*Orsudan*." It is soluble in two and a half parts of water at body temperature, and resembles arsacetin in its action, being used in the same way for protozoal diseases.

Bis-2 amino-tolyl-5 arsinic acid—

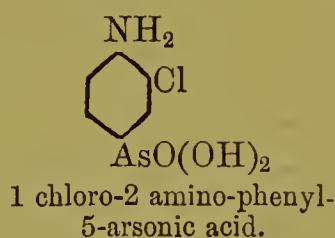
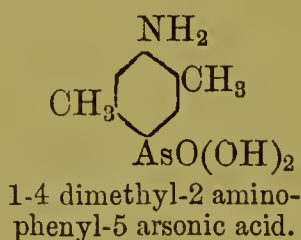
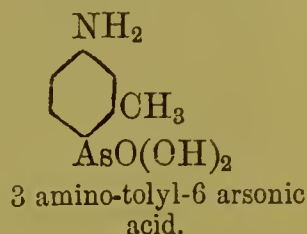
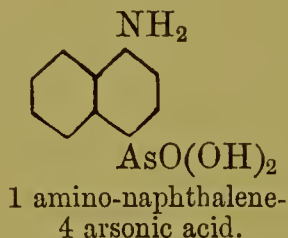
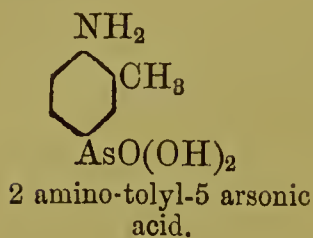


is obtained as a by-product of the action of *o*-toluidine on *o*-toluidine arsenate, and it also yields the corresponding symmetrical diacetyl derivative by treatment with acetic anhydride.² In the same way, *bis-p*-aminophenylarsinic acid

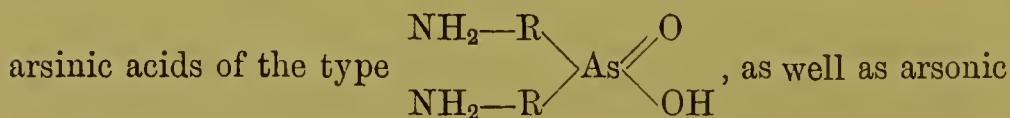
¹ Wellcome and Pyman, English Patent (1908), 855.

² Pyman and Reynolds, *J. C. S.*, **93** (1908), 1180.

is obtained as a by-product in the preparation of arsanilic acid, and this compound also yields a diacetyl derivative. By the preparation of the following compounds:—

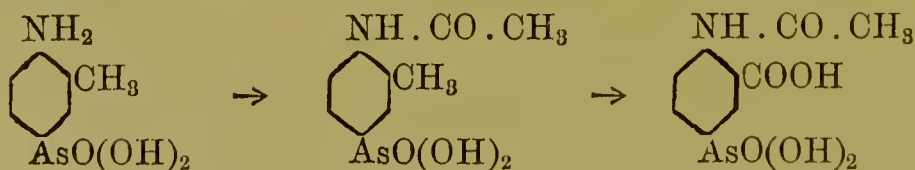


Benda and Kahn¹ showed that the reaction of arsenic acid with aromatic amines is a general one, if the para position to the amino-group is free. They also noticed the formation of



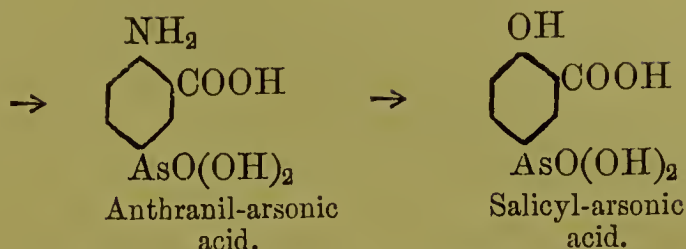
acids of the type $\text{NH}_2-\text{R}-\text{AsO}(\text{OH})_2$, but this had not been noticed by Béchamp or by A. and R. Adler, who had just previously prepared 2-aminotolyl-5 arsonic acid and 1-amino-naphthalene-4 arsonic acid.²

By acetylation and subsequent oxidation of the former they obtained acetyl-anthranil-arsonic-acid, which by hydrolysis yields anthranil-arsonic acid, which was then converted into salicylarsonic acid by the diazo reaction.



¹ Benda and Kahn, *Ber.*, **41** (1908), 1672.

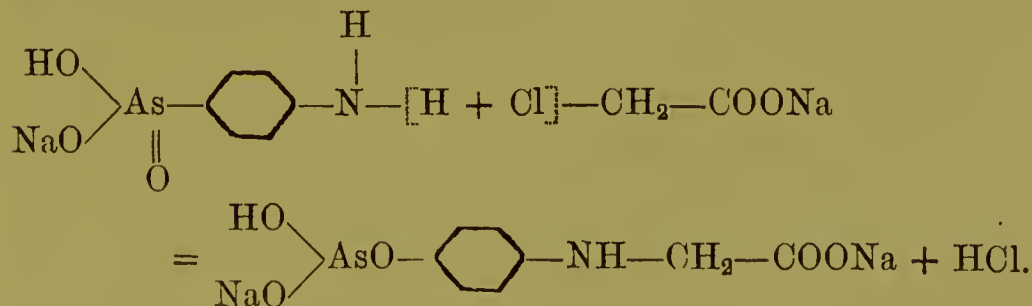
² A. and R. Adler, *Ber.*, **41** (1908), 931.



Para-hydroxyphenyl-arsonic acid, $\text{HO-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-AsO(OH)}_2$, is obtained from arsanilic acid by the diazo reaction,¹ and it has also been obtained by the action of phenol on arsenic acid at 150° , and the homologues of this acid may be obtained in a similar manner from ortho or meta cresol, or by the diazotization of the corresponding amino-acids.² Para-hydroxy-phenyl arsonic acid is not used therapeutically, but is the starting-point for the production of some very important derivatives.

The arsonic acids of the type $\text{R}_2\text{N-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-AsO(OH)}_2$ and $\text{RHN-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-AsO(OH)}_2$ do not appear to have found any therapeutic application. Para-dimethyl-amino-phenyl-arsonic acid, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{AsO(OH)}_2$, is obtained by the action of arsenic trichloride on dimethylaniline, whereby $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{AsCl}_2$ is formed, which is hydrolyzed, yielding the acid, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-As(OH)}_2$, which gives the arsonic acid by oxidation with hydrogen peroxide.³ It is also formed by the action of dimethyl sulphate on an alkaline solution of arsanilic acid.

An important derivative of arsanilic acid is phenylglycine-para-arsonic acid, which is obtained by mixing solutions of sodium arsanilate with chloracetic acid in hot aqueous solution—⁴



¹ Barrowcliff, Pyman, and Remfry, *J. C. S.*, 93 (1908), 1893; Bertheim, *Ber.*, 41 (1908), 1853.

² D. R. P., 205,616.

³ Michaelis, *Ber.*, 41 (1908), 1514; D. R. P., 200,605.

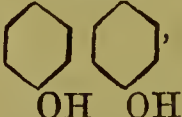
⁴ D. R. P., 204,664.

This substance is of importance, owing to the fact that its reduction product containing the arsenic in the trivalent condition is of great therapeutic value. This and other derivatives containing trivalent arsenic will be considered in the following section.

Of the numerous aromatic derivatives of pentavalent arsenic that have been prepared, the only ones that are of therapeutic importance are atoxyl, arsacetin, and the corresponding derivatives obtained from *o*-toluidine. Of these, the acetyl compounds (arsacetin, orsudan) are more stable and somewhat less toxic, but all of them are very similar in their action, and great care is necessary in their use, as harmful by-effects, such as optic atrophy, may otherwise occur.

Trivalent Arsenic Compounds (Derivatives of Arsenobenzene).

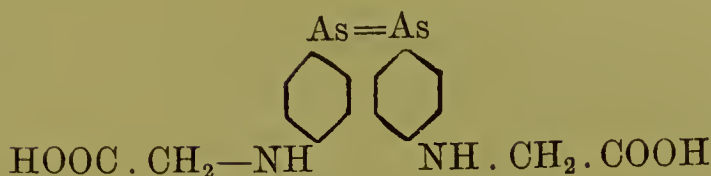
—The therapeutically valuable trivalent aromatic arsenic compounds are all of them obtained by reduction of the corresponding compounds containing pentavalent arsenic. Reducing agents convert arsanilic acid¹ into para-aminophenyl-arsenious oxide, $\text{NH}_2\text{—}\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—AsO}$, or into diamino-dihydroxy-arsenobenzene, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{As(OH)—As(OH)C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$, or into para-diamino-arsenobenzene, $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{As=AsC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$. The first is produced by weak reducing agents such as hydriodic acid, or sulphurous acid, the second by sodium amalgam and methyl alcohol, and the third by strong reducing agents, such as stannous chloride, etc.

Arsenophenol, As=As
, is obtained by the reduction of

para-hydroxyphenyl-arsonic acid with a solution of sodium hydrosulphite, caustic soda, and magnesium chloride.² The sodium derivative of this substance is soluble in water, from solutions in which it is precipitated by alcohol. Phenylglycine-arsonic acid when reduced in this way gives arseno-phenylglycine—

¹ M. L. B., English Patent, 17,619 of 1907; D. R. P., 206,057.

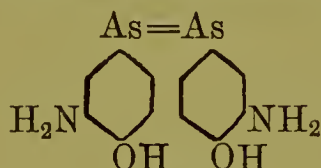
² D. R. P., 206,456.



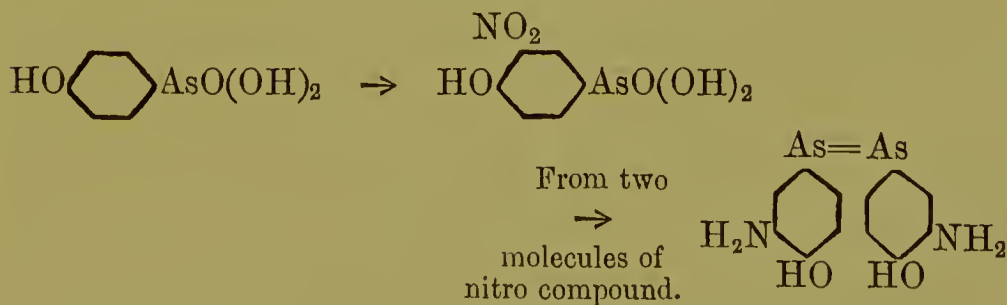
a reddish-brown powder, soluble in aqueous sodium carbonate.¹

Very favourable results are said to have been obtained with this substance in the treatment of trypanosomiasis in rats, but it is not so well tolerated by larger animals, such as the horse or the donkey.² Favourable results are also said to have attended its use in syphilis, and it is claimed that in all cases it is free from the danger of harmful effects on the eyes.

Very recently a new preparation, introduced by Ehrlich, has attained great notoriety, as it is said to have a marvellous efficiency in the treatment of syphilis. So far, there seems to be an almost unanimous verdict in its favour, but it is as yet too early to speak with certainty of its value. Up to the present it does not appear to have been tried in trypanosomiasis. This preparation is dihydroxy-diamino-arsenobenzene—



better known as “606.” It is prepared from *p*-hydroxy-phenyl-arsonic acid, $\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{AsO}(\text{OH})_2$, which on treatment with nitric and sulphuric acids yields a mono-nitro-compound, the nitro group entering into the ortho position to the hydroxyl and meta to the arsonic group. This compound, on reduction with caustic soda, sodium hydrosulphite, and magnesium chloride, gives dihydroxy-diamino-arsenobenzene—³



¹ D. R. P., 206,057.

² Breinl and Nierenstein, *Zeitschr. f. Immunitätsforsch* (1909), 169.

³ D. R. P., 224,953.

It is obtainable as the hydrochloride, under the trade name of *Salvarsan*, but before use it is generally transformed into the sodium salt by dissolving it in soda.* These solutions do not keep well.¹ A great many favourable reports have been published concerning the action of this compound, which has a very low toxicity. Its action *in vitro* is very weak, and it therefore presumably undergoes some change in the organism.²

Organic Antimony Compounds.—The trypanocidal action of antimony, compared with that of arsenic, has been discussed in the first section of this chapter. Unfortunately no antimony preparations analogous to the more successful of the arsenic compounds have yet been obtained, and none of the compounds which have been tried up to the present fulfil all the conditions necessary for a really efficient trypanocide. These conditions may be summed up as follows:—³

(1) The compound must be non-irritant, and capable of remaining in perfect solution at the temperature and alkalinity of the tissues.

(2) It must act quickly on the trypanosomes before they can acquire a tolerance to the drug.

(3) When the trypanosomes have been expelled from the blood by a single full therapeutic dose, there must be no recurrence in the majority of cases within some fixed time, which will depend to some extent on the particular host experimented with, and on the strain of parasites used.

Although the arsenic compounds which have been described do not perhaps fulfil the second and third of these conditions, yet the majority of them fulfil the first of these quite admirably, but in the case of antimony, difficulty has been experienced in obtaining derivatives to fulfil even this condition.

No compounds containing pentavalent antimony have been of any use, and of the trivalent compounds, those of a similar nature to ordinary tartar emetic (potassium antimonyl tartrate) have appeared to give the best results. Thomson and Cushny⁴ have experimented with many compounds of this type derived from various hydroxy acids, and the best results

* More recently the hydrochloride itself, in aqueous solutions or oily suspensions, has been used for injection.

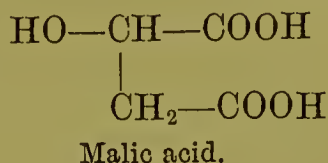
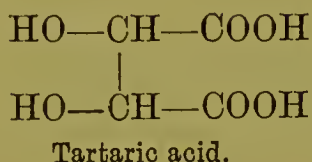
¹ McDonagh, *Lancet* (Sept. 3, 1910), 711.

² See McIntosh, *Lancet* (Sept. 3, 1910), 713.

³ Thomson and Cushny, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **82 B** (1910), 249.

⁴ *Ibid.*

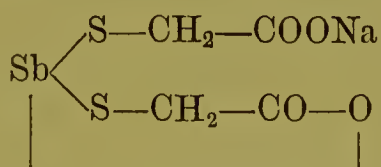
were obtained with the compounds prepared from tartaric and malic acids—



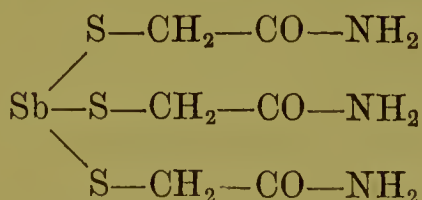
The sodium and potassium antimonyl tartrates seemed to be very nearly equal in their efficiency, but ethyl antimonyl tartrate appeared to have some advantage over these alkali salts.

None of these compounds are very effective, however, and there is still a great need for a compound which should have a really satisfactory effect in sleeping sickness. Numerous organic compounds of antimony have been prepared, but none of them are likely to be suitable for this purpose, for which, therefore, new compounds will need to be prepared. An investigation on aromatic antimony compounds has been begun by the present author,¹ with a view to preparing derivatives which should be of therapeutic value, but the work is as yet in the initial stage.

Quite recently, Rountree and Able² have described some experiments of the treatment of trypanosomiasis with antimony derivatives of thioglycollic acid. The compounds used were sodium antimony thioglycollate—³



and the triamide of antimony thioglycollic acid—

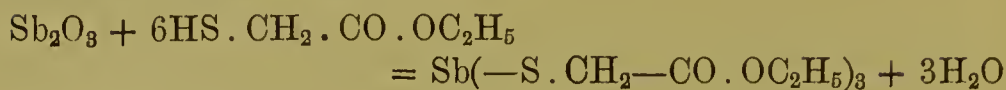


¹ May, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, **26** (1910), 142; *J. C. S.*, **97** (1910), 1956.

² *The Journal of Pharmacology* (Baltimore), **2** (Oct. 1910), 101-144.

³ Klason and Carlson, *Ber.*, **39** (1906), 732; Ramberg, *Ber.*, **39** (1906), 1356.

The latter was prepared by allowing antimony oxide to react with this glycollic ester,



and transforming the ester so obtained into the amide by means of ammonia in the usual way. The results of the treatment appear to be as good as any that have hitherto been recorded.

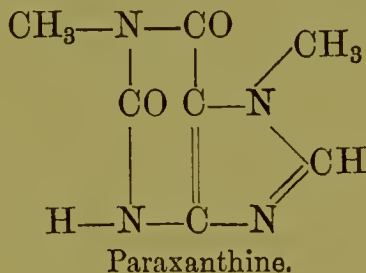
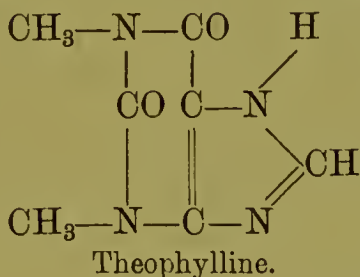
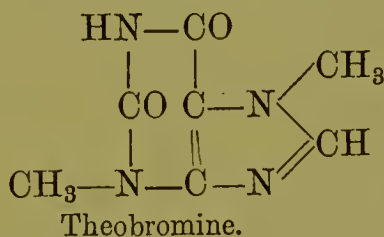
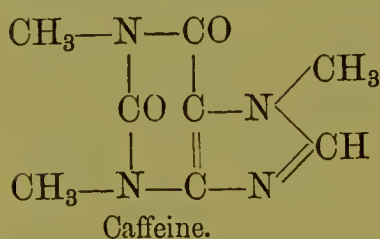
Quite recently, the injection of finely divided metallic antimony has been advocated as the most satisfactory treatment of trypanosomiasis.¹

¹ Plimmer and Fry, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **81 B** (1909), 334; Plimmer, Fry, and Ranken, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **83 B** (Dec., 1910), 140.

CHAPTER XV

PURINE DERIVATIVES (DIURETICS) AND URIC-ACID SOLVENTS

CAFFEINE, the best known drug of the purine group, is used as a cardiac tonic and cerebral excitant, but in addition it has a diuretic action, as also have other members of the purine group.



Although the action of theobromine on the nervous system is far weaker than that of caffeine, its diuretic action is as strong. Both substances suffer from the disadvantage of sparing solubility and small power of resorption. To overcome the drawback of slight solubility, double salts of the sodium derivatives of caffeine and theobromine, with sodium salicylate, benzoate, and acetate, have been prepared. Compounds of sodium theobromine with sodium salicylate and acetate are known as *Diuretin* and *Agurin* respectively. The acyl-amino-derivatives of caffeine are said to have a strong diuretic action without the by-effects of caffeine. Mono-acetyl-amino-caffeine, diacetyl-amino-caffeine, etc., have been prepared.¹

According to the investigations of Ach,² the dimethyl xanthines have a stronger diuretic action than trimethyl-xanthine (caffeine). Of these, theobromine (3-7 dimethyl)

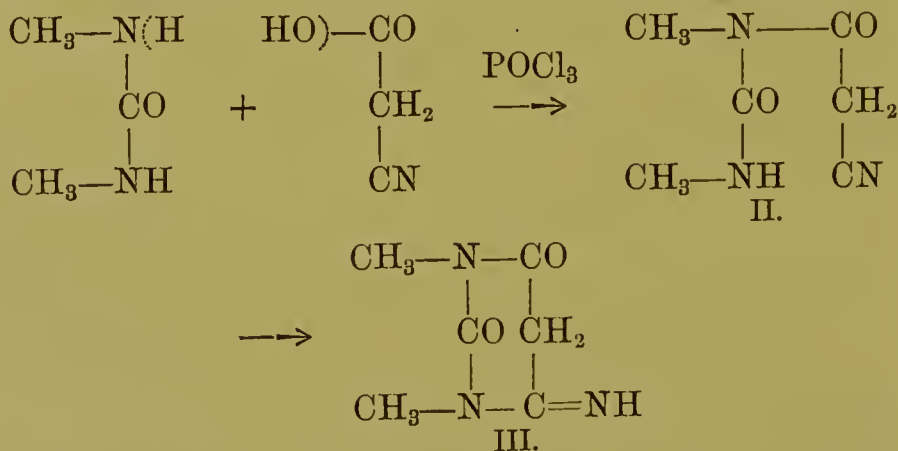
¹ D. R. P., 139,960.

² Ach, *A. e. P. P.*, 44 (1900), 319.

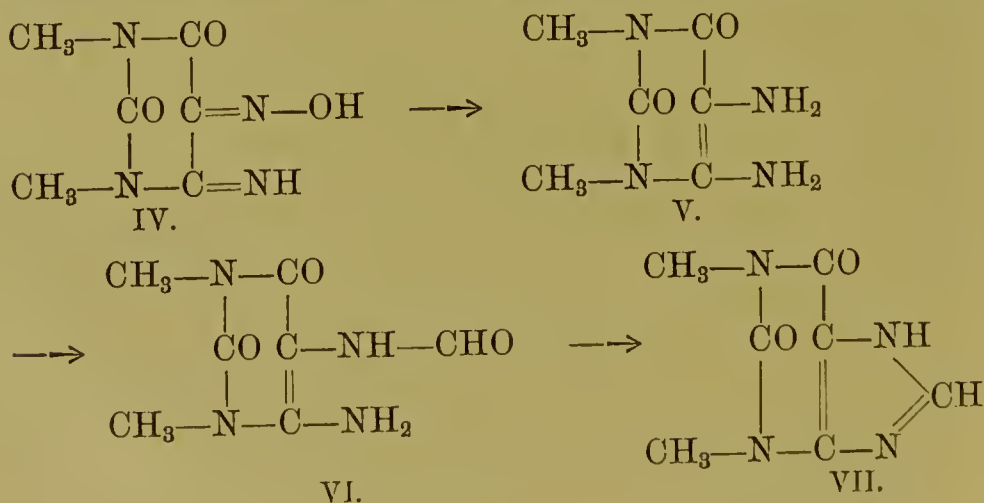
has the weakest, and theophylline (1-3 dimethyl) the strongest action, but that of paraxanthine (1-7 dimethyl) is the most persistent. *Theophylline*, which differs from caffeine in having less action on the heart, has been introduced into therapeutics under the name of *Theoeine*, in the form of its compound with sodium acetate. Its practical application is due to a synthetic process, as the natural alkaloid is far too expensive.

Theophylline has been synthesized by Fischer and by Traube,¹ the technical preparation being based on the latter method.²

The synthesis of theophylline was carried out by Traube according to the following method. Dimethyl urea was first condensed with cyanacetic acid by means of POCl_3 , and the resulting compound (II.) converted into the cyclic base (III.)



by the action of alkali. This base, when treated with sodium nitrite and acetic acid, yields the isonitroso compound (IV.)

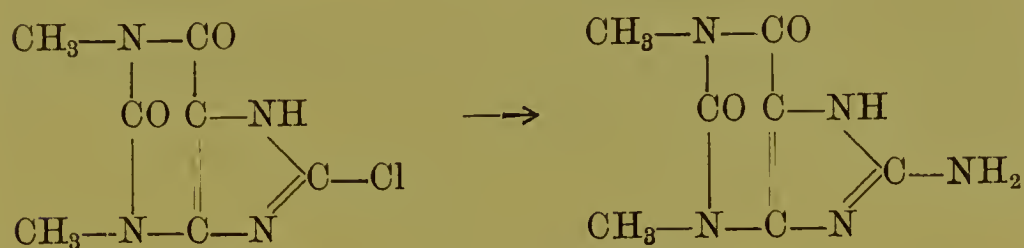


¹ W. Traube, *Ber.*, **33** (1900), 3053.

² D. R. P., 138,444.

which is reduced to the corresponding amine (V.) by means of ammonium sulphide. This amine is then converted, by formic acid, into its formyl derivative (VI.), which loses H_2O and yields theophylline (VII.) when heated with alkali.

8-Amino-theophylline is obtained by the action of ammonia



on 8-chloro-theophylline,¹ and has strong diuretic action. 8-Amino-paraxanthine and its alkyl derivatives have been obtained in a similar manner.²

3-Mono-methyl-xanthine has an appreciable diuretic action, but in 7-mono-methyl-xanthine it is vanishingly small. The diuretic action of xanthine itself is extremely small, and that of *iso*-caffeine (1-7-9 trimethyl-xanthine) is also very weak.

Uric Acid Solvents, etc.—The various compounds that have been advocated as remedies for gout may be divided into two classes—those which are designed to diminish the formation of uric acid in the body, and those which are intended to act as solvents for the uric acid after it has been formed. Of the latter class it may be said that many substances have been obtained, such as piperazine and urotropine, which are capable of dissolving uric acid *in vitro*, but are probably quite incapable of dissolving it in the highest possible concentrations that can be present in the body. Naturally many compounds have been prepared which are intended to combine both functions.

For example, quinic acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_7(\text{OH})_4 \cdot \text{COOH}$, which exists in cinchona bark and coffee beans, is said to diminish the formation of uric acid,³ and its lithium and piperazine salts have been introduced under the names of *Urosin* and *Sidonal* respectively. In these cases the lithium or piperazine is intended to act as a uric acid solvent.

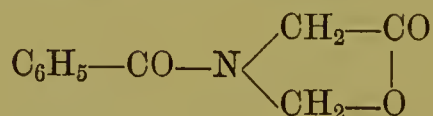
It has also been noticed that the presence of organic acids

¹ D. R. P., 156,900.

² Ibid., 156,901.

³ Weiss, *Berl. klin. W.*, 14 (1899).

in the organism generally decreases the amount of uric acid formed, and that this effect is greater in proportion to the number of carbon atoms present in the acid. For this reason the use of diphenyl tartrate has been suggested, $(\text{—CH(OH)—COOC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$, and salicylic acid has also been used, especially in the form of a condensation product of saligenin and tannic acid. A salicylate of urea has been recommended under the name of *Ursal*. Other compounds used for this purpose are hippuric acid, methylene-hippuric acid—



and its meta-nitro compound.¹

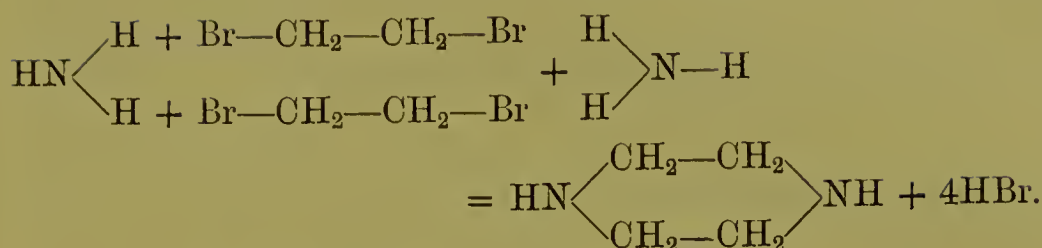
Drugs of the second class, namely those the function of which is to prevent the *deposition* of uric acid rather than to prevent its *formation*, are more numerous. The alkaline carbonates have been widely used for this purpose, and especially lithium carbonate, as it has been found that the lithium salt is by far the most soluble of all the inorganic salts of uric acid. The alkaline tartrates, citrates, etc., are also used as well as the carbonates. The bad effects of lithium on the nervous system have led to the introduction of various organic bases which form even more soluble salts with uric acid.

The employment of lithium and these bases as uric acid solvents is fallacious, because there is always sufficient sodium present in the body to form the sparingly soluble sodium urate, and a double decomposition between salts takes place with the formation of the least soluble. If we designate sodium urate for the sake of simplicity as NaU, then an equation such as $\text{LiU} + \text{NaCl} \rightleftharpoons \text{NaU} + \text{LiCl}$, will run from left to right under the conditions present in the organism. Nevertheless, some benefit may often be derived from these remedies, although it is not due to their solvent action on the uric acid.

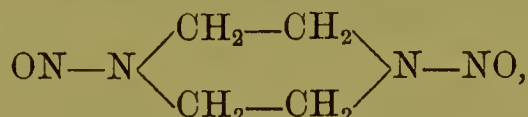
Of the various organic bases that have been used as substitutes for lithium, piperazine is the most important. It was obtained by Hofmann by the action of ammonia on ethylene dichloride or dibromide.²

¹ D. R. P., 148,669.

² Hofmann, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 10 (1860), 231; *Ber.*, 23 (1890), 3297.



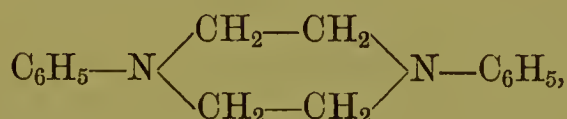
It is most readily purified by treating the reaction mixture with nitrous acid, whereby nitroso-piperazine—



is obtained, from which piperazine can be regenerated by the action of hydrochloric acid or reducing agents.¹

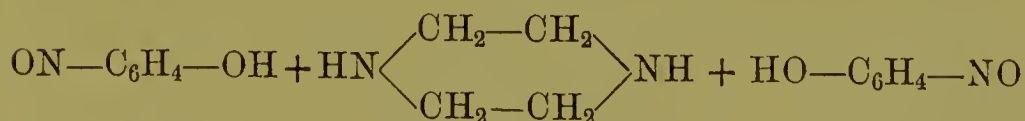
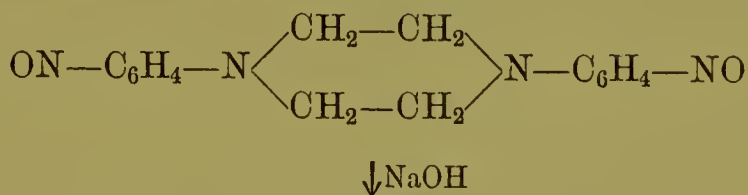
Many different modifications of this synthesis have been devised,² but only one of them calls for mention. By the action of aniline on ethylene dibromide, diethylenediphenyldiamine is obtained,³ which yields a nitroso compound on treatment with nitrous acid. It has been shown⁴ that this on treatment with alkalis yields piperazine and nitrosophenol.

Aniline with ethylene dibromide gives—



just as ammonia gives piperazine.

This with nitrous acid yields—

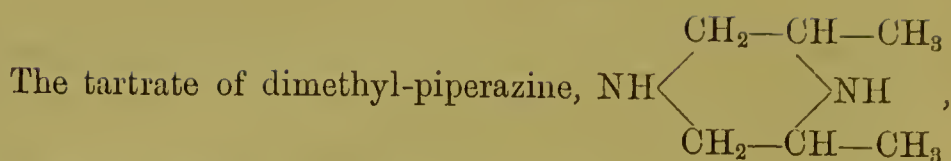


¹ D. R. P., 59,222.

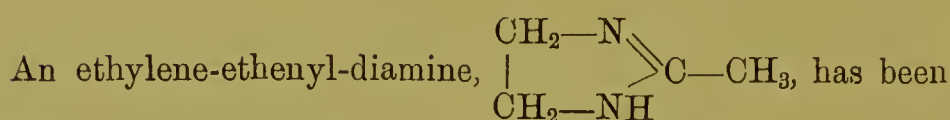
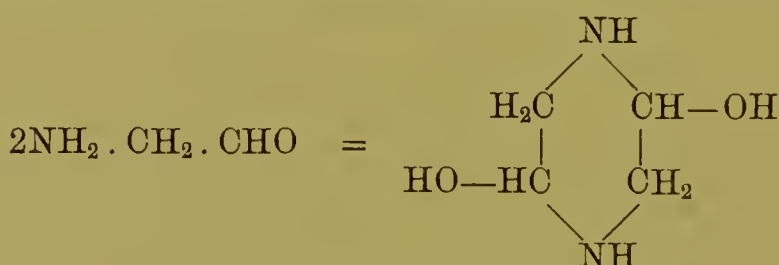
² Ibid., 60,547, 63,618, 66,461, 65,347, 70,055, 71,576, 83,524, 70,056, 73,125, 67,811, 73,354, 74,628, 98,031, 100,232. See Friedländer, *Fortschr.*, III. 948, IV. 1201.

³ Hofmann, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 9 (1858), 277.

⁴ Bischler, *Ber.*, 24 (1891), 717; and D. R. P., 60,547, etc.

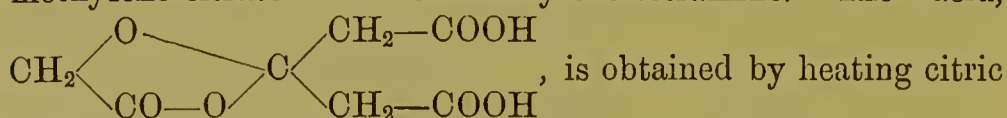


is known as *Lysetol*, and has the advantage of being non-poisonous and non-hygroscopic. Dihydroxypiperazine has also been investigated, and it resembles piperazine in its properties of a uric acid solvent. It is obtained by polymerizing amino-acetaldehyde with cold hydrobromic acid.¹



prepared² and introduced under the name of *Lysidin*. It is said to be eight times as strong as piperazine in its solvent action on uric acid *in vitro*.³ Similar propenyl and butenyl derivatives have been prepared.⁴

Urotropin (hexamethylenetetramine), *cf.* Chapter XI., has been recommended as a uric acid solvent, its salt with quinic acid being known as *Quinotropin*, and its salicyl derivatives as *Saliformin*. *Helmitol*, or *New-urotropin*, is the anhydro-methylene-citrate of hexamethylene-tetramine. The acid,



acid with paraformaldehyde, or in better yield by the action of chlor-methyl alcohol, $\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH}_2-\text{OH}$, on citric acid at $130^\circ-140^\circ\text{C}$.⁵

The sodium salt of the acid has also been used by itself as a uric acid solvent, under the name of *Citarin*.

According to Tunncliffe and Rosenheim, the solubility of uric acid in blood serum is raised by the presence of piperidine, and they suggested the use of piperidine tartrate.⁶

¹ E. Fischer, *Ber.*, **27** (1894), 169.

² Ladenburg, *Ber.*, **27** (1894), 2952.

³ *Deut. med. W.*, **1** (1894).

⁴ Klungenstein, *Ber.*, **28** (1895), 1173, 3068.

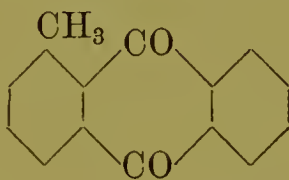
⁵ D. R. P., 129,255, 150,949.

⁶ *Lancet* (1898), 189.

CHAPTER XVI

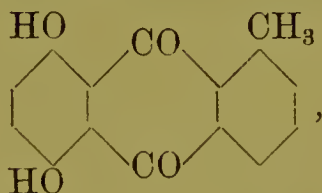
PURGATIVES AND OTHER SUBSTANCES ACTING ON THE GASTRO- INTESTINAL TRACT

Anthraquinone Derivatives.—Many aperient drugs, such as cascara, rheum (rhubarb), senna, and aloe, contain hydroxyl derivatives of methyl-anthraquinone. The position of the methyl group in these substances is not quite certain, but it is probable that most of them are derivatives of *α*-methyl-anthraquinone,



These substances are very valuable as purgatives, owing to the fact that they have but little effect on the stomach and do not cause inflammation of the intestine. On the other hand, some of the drug is absorbed from the intestine into the system, and is liable to have an undesirable action on the kidneys. This effect is usually very slight, however.

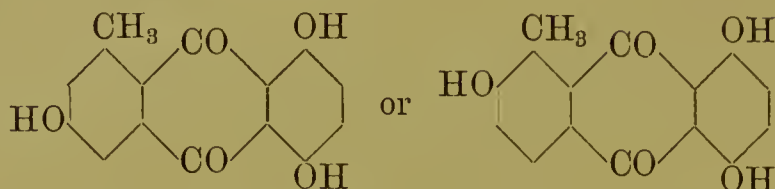
Chrysophanic acid, dihydroxy-methyl-anthraquinone ¹—



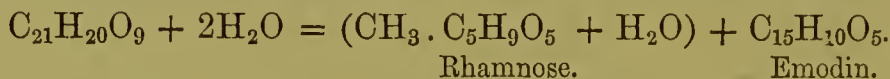
is one of the milder of the natural purgatives of this group, and is present in rhubarb and many other purgative drugs, usually as a glucoside, *chrysophan*. The number and position of the hydroxyl groups has a powerful influence on the physiological action of the substance. For example,

¹ Jowett and Potter, *J. C. S.*, **85** (1903), 1327.

emodin, trihydroxy-methyl-anthraquinone, $C_{15}H_{10}O_5$, probably having the constitution—⁴

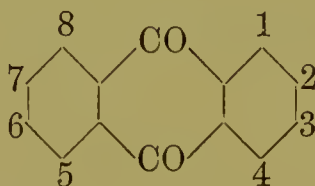


has a considerably more powerful action than chrysophanic acid. This substance is obtained together with rhamnose by the decomposition of the pentoside *frangulin*, obtained from the bark of *Rhamnus frangula*, and from other similar sources.



The active principles present in different varieties of aloes are known as aloin, $C_{17}H_{18}O_7 + \frac{1}{2} H_2O$, and barbaloin, $C_{16}H_{18}O_7$. The structure of these compounds is not known with certainty, but they are undoubtedly derivatives of poly-hydroxyanthraquinones.

The purgative action of the synthetic hydroxy-anthraquinones has been investigated by Vieth, and his results indicate that the number and position of the hydroxyl groups is of importance, but that the presence of the methyl group seems to have little influence on the physiological action. He found that the most active was *anthrapurpurin*, 1-2-7 trihydroxy-anthraquinone—



Substance.				Strength of Action.
Anthrapurpurin,	1-2-7 trihydroxy-anthraquinone	.	.	1
Flavopurpurin,	1-2-6 „ „	.	.	$\frac{1}{2}$
Anthragallol,	1-2-3 „ „	.	.	$\frac{1}{3}$
Purpuroxanthin,	1-3- dihydroxy- „	.	.	$\frac{1}{6}$
Alizarine-Bordeaux,	1-2-3-4 tetrahydroxy- „	.	.	$\frac{1}{10}$
Purpurin,	1-2-4 trihydroxy- „	.	.	$\frac{1}{20}$

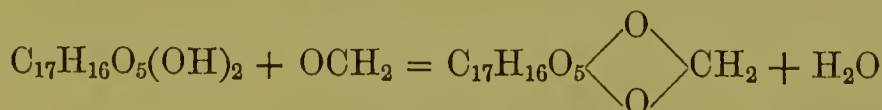
⁴ Hesse, *Annalen*, 309 (1899), 32.

A number of compounds, such as alizarin (1-2 dihydroxy-anthraquinone), rufigallic acid (hexa-hydroxy-anthraquinone), etc., are inactive. Some of the active compounds contain a methyl group, and others do not.

An important factor in determining the purgative action is the length of time that the substance remains in the intestine, for when it is absorbed it can no longer exert a purgative action.* The superiority of the glucosides and acetyl derivatives over the parent substances, and of the natural drugs over the synthetic, is due to the slower absorption of the former. Chrysophanic acid when quite pure is no longer a purgative, owing to its rapid absorption.¹ Rapid absorption also increases the risk of undesirable effects on the kidneys, and therefore it is to be avoided on this account also. For these reasons, synthetic substances such as anthrapurpurin are inferior to the natural compounds, but synthetic substances of a more complex nature which are slowly absorbed have also been obtained.

Anthrapurpurin diacetate has been tried as a mild laxative under the names *Purgatin* and *Purgatol*, but it is a kidney irritant. The acetyl derivatives of the tetra-alkyl ethers of rufigallic acid have been recommended as purgatives.² *Exodin* is said to be the tetramethyl ether of the diacetyl compound, but according to Zernik³ it is a mixture of several substances, of which the hexamethyl ether is the one to which the purgative action is due, the diacetyl tetramethyl ether being inert. *Exodin* is a mild purgative.

Many derivatives of aloin have been prepared which are intended to be free from the bitter taste of the parent substance whilst retaining its purgative action; these, being only slowly decomposed in the intestine, should be more active. A derivative of aloin and formaldehyde has been prepared in which the methylene group enters into two hydroxyl groups—⁴



* This statement of course only applies to substances such as these, which act locally. It does not apply to apomorphine, etc.

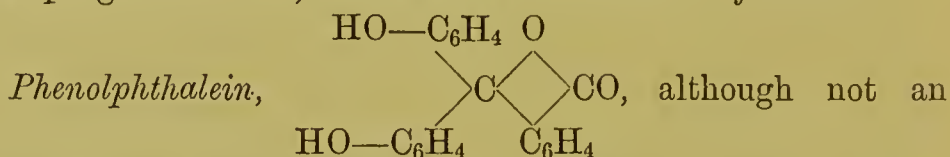
¹ Dixon, "Manual of Pharmacology,"

² D. R. P., 151,724.

³ Zernik, *Apoth. Zeitg.*, 19, 598.

⁴ D. R. P., 86,449.

Its action resembles that of aloin itself. H. Meyer has prepared *tribromaloïn*, $C_{17}H_{15}O_7Br_3$, which has a milder action than aloïn, and tri-acetyl-aloïn, $C_{17}H_{15}O_7(CO \cdot CH_3)_3$, which is as powerful as the parent substance in its action, and has the advantage of being tasteless and keeping well. An oxidation product obtained by the action of persulphate on aloïn¹ has a weak purgative action, and is free from harmful by-effects.

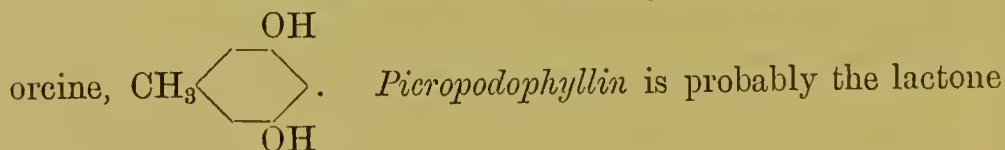


anthraquinone derivative, has a purgative action without harmful effects on the kidneys, and has attained wide use as a laxative under the names *Purgen* and *Laxin*. It sometimes causes griping, and to overcome this drawback its acetyl-valeryl derivative has been introduced, under the name of *Aperitol*.

Drastic Purgatives.—Very little is known of the chemical nature of these substances, which act by reason of their generally irritant properties. In large doses they give rise to bad effects, but in their specific doses they act more promptly than the anthraquinone derivatives, though they are apt to cause nausea and vomiting.

Croton oil contains a large number of substances, but its intense purgative action is probably due to a resin, $C_{13}H_{18}O_4$.² The action of jalap has also been attributed to a resin, which is, however, a mixture of several substances.³

The active principle of *podophyllin* is *podophylltoxin*, $C_{15}H_{14}O_6$, a neutral substance, which when heated with alkali forms podophyllinic acid, $C_{15}H_{16}O_7$. By loss of water this acid forms picropodophyllin, $C_{15}H_{14}O_6$, an isomeride of podophyllin, and on further treatment with alkali yields acetic acid and



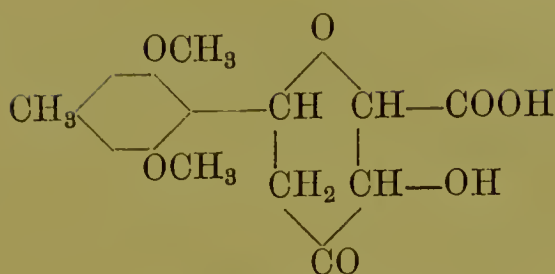
of *podophyllinic acid*, these substances being regarded as derivatives of γ -pyrone.⁴

¹ D. R. P., 134,987.

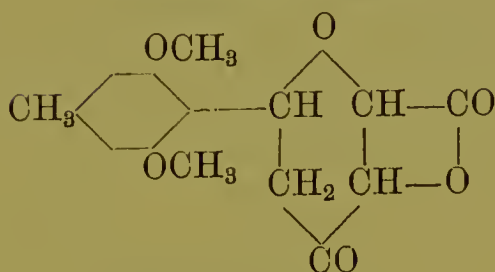
² Dunstan and Boole, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **58** (1895), 238.

³ Power and Rogerson, *Pharmaceutical Journal*, **29** (1909), 7; *Journ. of American Chem. Soc.*, **32** (1910), 80.

⁴ Dunstan and Henry, *J. C. S.*, **73** (1898), 209.



Podophyllinic acid.

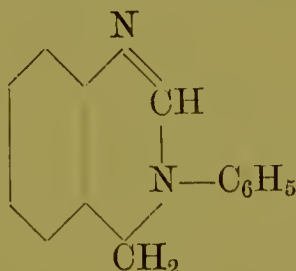


Picropodophyllin.

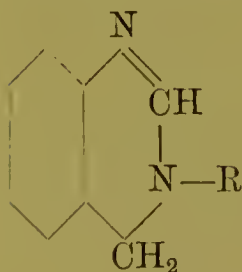
These two substances are without definite purgative action.¹

Other Substances acting on the Gastro-Intestinal Tract.—

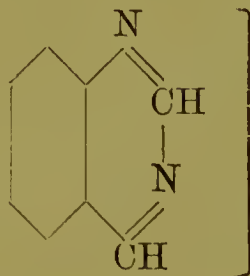
Phenyl-dihydroquinazoline was accidentally found to possess a bitter taste, and to produce an early feeling of hunger, and



hence it has been introduced as an aperitive,* under the name of *Orèxin*. Other substances of this type have also been investigated, but none of them are so satisfactory as this one. Dihydroquinazolines of the type—



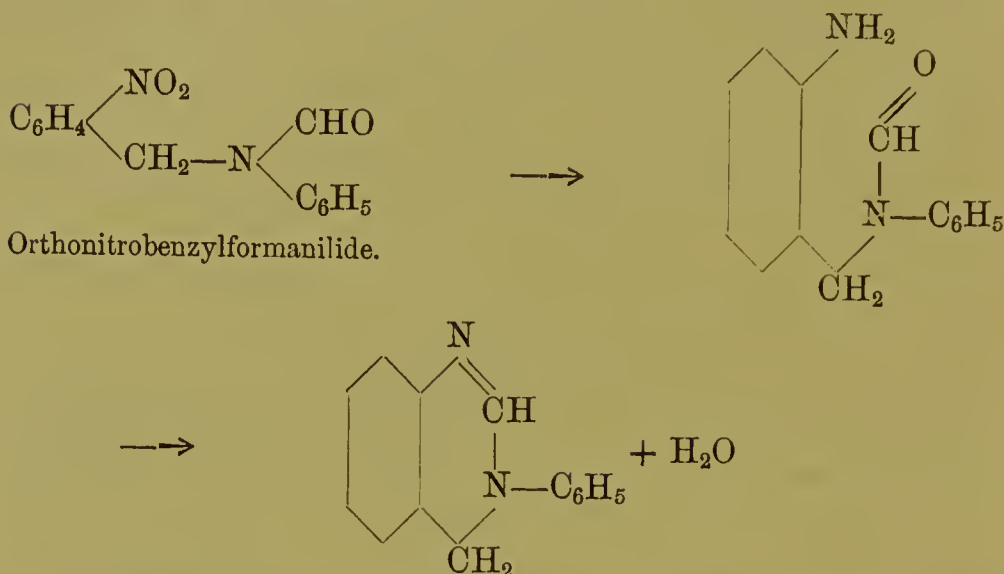
[Quinazoline is—



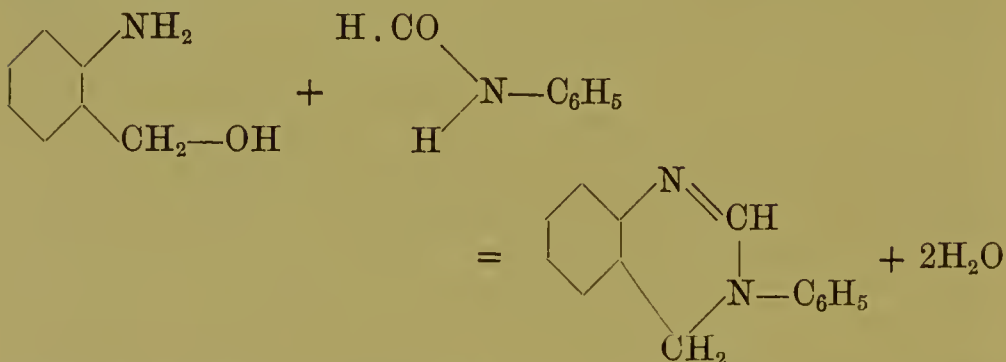
* Aperitive denotes a substance used to stimulate the appetite.

¹ Mackenzie and Dixon, *Edinburgh Med. Journ.* (1898), 134.

are formed by the reduction of orthonitrobenzylform-anilides, -toluides, etc.¹—



Orexin is also prepared by the action of formanilide on ortho-aminobenzyl alcohol ²—



Orexin is used in the form of the hydrochloride, owing to the bad taste of the free base. The *tannate* is insoluble in water (*cf.* quinine), and therefore is quite tasteless. It is soluble in hydrochloric acid, and therefore dissolves in the gastric contents, and can exert the required action. It is now largely used instead of the hydrochloride.

Coto-bark has a specific effect on the walls of the intestine, dilating them and helping resorption, which renders it of use in diarrhœa. Its active constituent is cotoïn, $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$, a derivative of benzophenone and phloroglucinol having the formula—



¹ D. R. P., 51,712.

² *Ibid.*, 113,163.

This substance has a sharp taste, and in order to overcome this disadvantage, various derivatives have been prepared, one of which, known as *Forctoïn*, is a methylene-dicotoïn, $\text{CH}_2(\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_4)_2$, formed by the action of formaldehyde on cotoïn.¹ It is free from the sharp taste of cotoïn, and is said to have a stronger action, having especially an enhanced bactericidal effect.

Condensation products of cotoïn with phenols have been prepared,² which have the antiseptic action of the phenols combined with the beneficial effects of cotoïn on the intestines.

¹ D. R. P., 104,362.

² Ibid., 104,903.

CHAPTER XVII

VARIOUS OTHER COMPOUNDS OF INTEREST

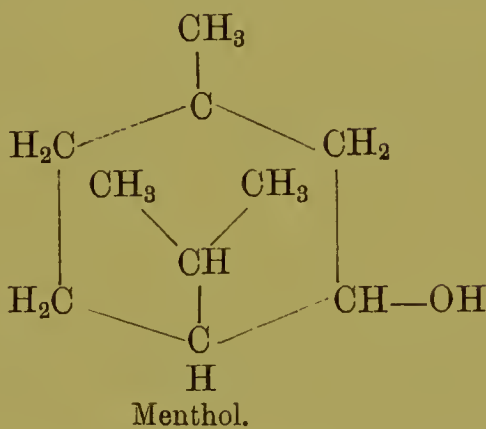
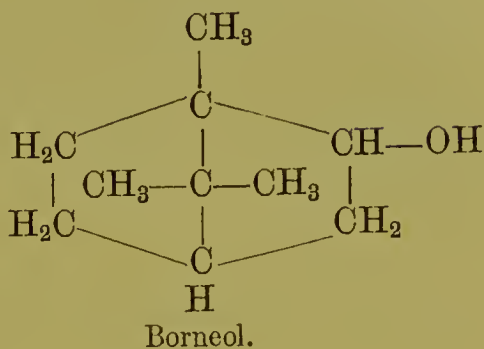
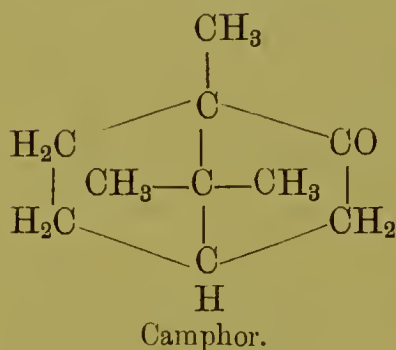
Glucosides.—Several glucosides which owe their physiological activity to their hydrolytic cleavage products have been mentioned in other parts of this volume. It will suffice to recall such compounds as salicin and chrysophan. Besides these, there are numerous glucosides which have a powerful and characteristic physiological action of their own. The most important of these are the active principles of digitalis and strophanthus, drugs having a powerful action in increasing the strength and diminishing the frequency of the heart-beat. *Digitalis* contains several active glucosides, but unfortunately very little is known of their chemical constitution beyond the fact that most of them are derivatives of substances allied to cholesterin. The most important are *digitalin* and *digitoxin*; the latter, on warming with caustic soda, yields the physiologically inert digitoxic acid. The active constituent of *strophanthus* is a glucoside, *strophanthin*, $C_{40}H_{66}O_{19}$, which on hydrolysis yields strophanthidin, $C_{27}H_{38}O_7$, and a carbohydrate, $C_{13}H_{24}O_{10}$. Strophanthidin contains two lactone groupings, a benzene nucleus, an unsaturated linkage, $—CH=CH—$, and probably three hydroxyl groups. The carbohydrate, $C_{13}H_{24}O_{10}$, is the methyl ether of a biose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{10}$.¹

Many other physiologically active compounds are “glucosides” derived from pentoses instead of hexoses. Frangulin (*cf.* p. 210) is an example of a pentose derivative, and quite recently it has been shown that the poisonous hæmolytic substance present in the fungus *Amanita phalloides* is a pentoside.

Camphor and the Terpenes.—The substances of the camphor

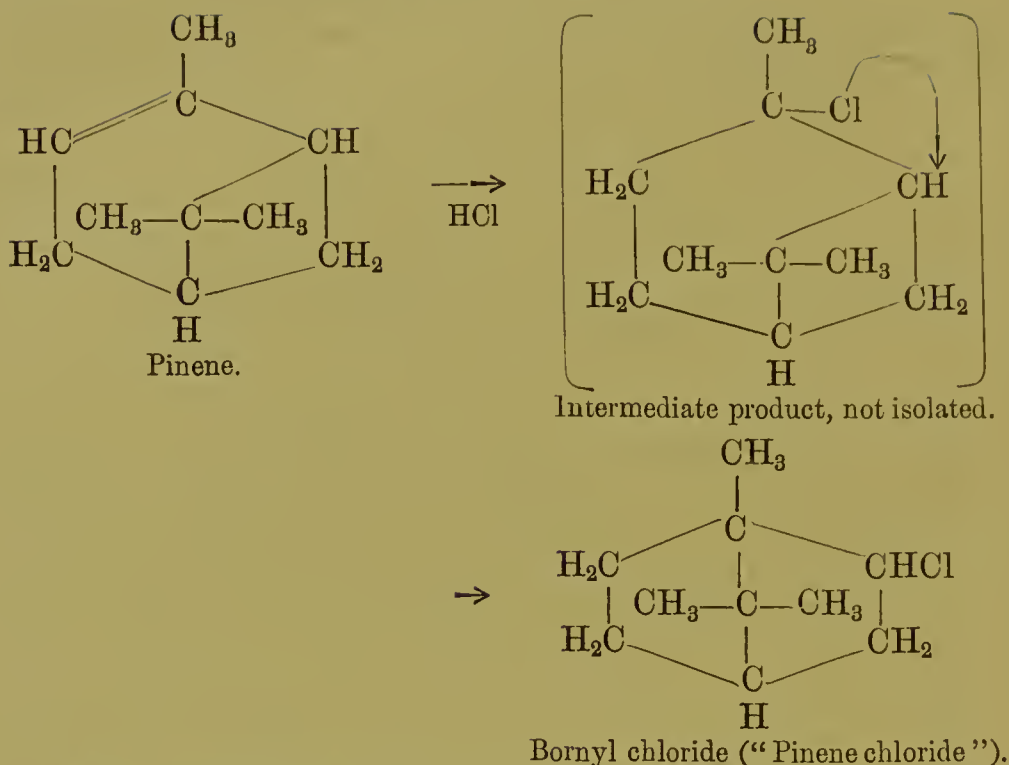
¹ Feist, *Ber.*, **33** (1900), 2061, 2069, 2091; Fraser, “*Strophanthus*,” Edinburgh (1887); Arnaud, *C. R.*, **107** (1888), 181, 1112.

group show a general resemblance to one another in their physiological action.

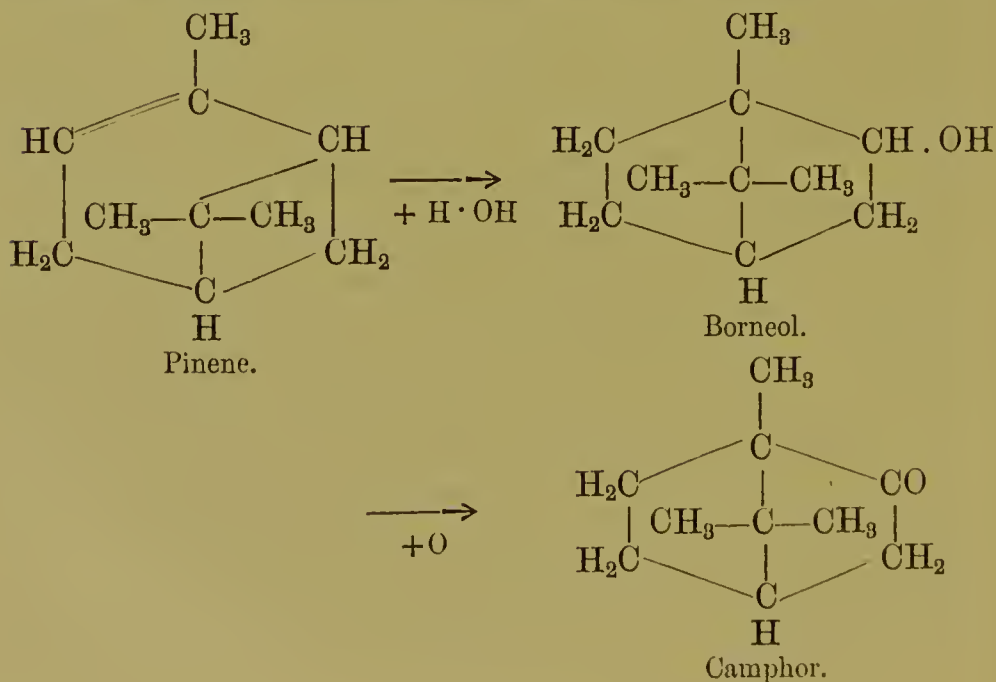


All three have an excitant, antiseptic, and slight local anæsthetic action. *Borneol*, known also as Borneo camphor, has less local irritant action, and can be tolerated in larger doses than camphor. *Menthol* is not much used internally, but it finds employment as a mild local anæsthetic. *Camphor* is the most important of these substances, and, as is well known, is obtained from the camphor-laurel, growing in China, Japan, and the East Indies, but within recent years it has also been produced artificially from turpentine.

It is necessary to distinguish between the so-called "artificial" or "synthetic camphor," and true camphor produced artificially. The former is in reality not camphor at all, but is "pinene hydrochloride," obtained by the action of dry hydrogen chloride on turpentine. Turpentine consists chiefly of pinene, and on treatment with dry hydrochloric acid, the crystalline "pinene hydrochloride" is formed. This substance, which resembles camphor in many of its properties, is bornyl chloride, an intramolecular change taking place when hydrogen chloride acts on pinene.



True camphor has been completely synthesized, but the synthesis is an extremely lengthy and laborious one, and is absolutely impracticable as a commercial process. Camphor can, however, be economically prepared from turpentine (pinene) by a simple series of reactions. Turpentine on heating with anhydrous oxalic acid at 120°–130° C., yields camphor, borneol, and the oxalic and formic esters of borneol.

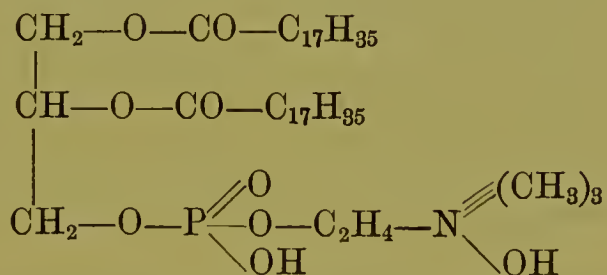


The borneol esters are hydrolyzed, and the resultant borneol oxidized to camphor by means of dichromate and sulphuric acid.

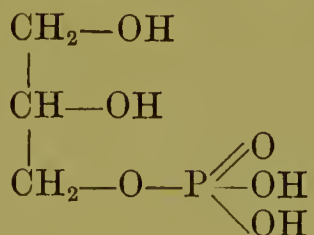
Various other methods of oxidizing borneol to camphor have been devised, using permanganate, nitric acid, chromic acid, Caro's acid, or ozone as the oxidizing agent.

The esters of borneol and menthol with isovalerianic acid, $\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CH} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{—CH—CH}_2\text{—COOH}$, are known as *Bornyval* and *Validol* respectively. *Valyl* is the diethyl-amide of the same acid, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH—CH}_2\text{—CO—N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$. All three are recommended as nervous sedatives.

Glycerophosphates.—One of the chief constituents of nervous tissue is lecithin, a complex ester of choline and distearyl-glycerophosphoric acid, the composition of which is indicated by some such formula as—



In reality it is somewhat more complex, for it contains also the corresponding derivatives of various other fatty acids such as palmitic, $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{32}\text{O}_2$, and of unsaturated acids such as oleic, $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}_2$, and linoleic, $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{32}\text{O}_2$, as well as that from stearic acid, $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{36}\text{O}_2$. On hydrolysis it yields glycerophosphoric acid—



and as lecithin is said ¹ to exert a favourable influence on growth and metabolism, glycerophosphoric acid and its salts have been introduced into therapeutics. It is, however, improbable that lecithin is built up in the body from glycerophosphoric acid,

¹ Danilewski, *C. R.*, 121 (1895), 1167; 123 (1896), 195.

and it is doubtful whether glycerophosphates have any advantage over the simple phosphates.

Glycerophosphoric acid is prepared by the action of phosphorus pentoxide on glycerol,¹ or by heating phosphoric acid with glycerol for six days.²

The sodium salt is very soluble in water, the calcium salt moderately soluble in cold water, but almost insoluble in hot. The ferric salt is soluble, and therefore can be used to combine the tonic properties of iron and phosphorus.

Bromo-lecithin is said to differ from lecithin in being absorbed in the intestine as such, without being split up into glycerophosphoric acid. It is prepared by saturating a chloroform solution of lecithin with bromine and drying *in vacuo*.³ Iodo-lecithin has also been prepared.⁴

¹ Pelouze, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, **36** (1845), 257.

² Portes. Prunier, *Bul.*, [3] **13** (1895), 96.

³ D. R. P., 156,110.

⁴ *Ibid.*, 155,629.

INDEX

- ACETALDEHYDE, 28, 50
 Acetanilide, 67, 68
 Acetone, 59
 behaviour of in organism, 38
 Acetone-chloroform. (*See* CHLOROTONE)
 Acetophenone. (*See* HYPNONE)
 Acetoxime, 26
 Acetozone, 180
p-Acetyl-amino-phenol, 70, 73, 162
 Acetylaminophenol acetamide, 77
 Acetylaminophenyl benzoate, 77
 Acetyl-atoxyl, 195
 Acetyl-ethylaminophenyl-acetate, 77
 Acetyl-*p*-hydroxyphenylethylamine, 147
 Acetyl-salicylic acid, 156, 157
 Acid groups, effect of, 29
 Adrenaline, 34, 127-134, 135, 140, 148
 methylene and methyl ethers of, 131-133
iso-Adrenaline, 132-133
 Adrenalone, 129, 147
 Agurin, 203
 Airol, 171, 173
 Albargin, 184
 Alcohol. (*See* ETHYL ALCOHOL)
 Alcohols, primary, secondary and tertiary, action of, 23, 55
 behaviour of in organism, 38
 Aldehyde groups, effect of, 28
 Alizarine-Bordeaux, 210
 Alkyl groups, effect of, 17, 19
 N-Alkyl-quinoline derivatives, 64
 Allyl-tri-methyl-ammonium hydroxide, 32
 Aloe, 209
 Aloin, 211
 Alum, 184
 Aluminium, compounds of, 184
 Alumnol, 184
 Aल्पine, 99, 100
 Amino-acetic acid. (*See* GLYCINE)
 Amino-aceto-catechol, 147
 Amino-acetopyrogallol, 149
 Amino-acetoveratrone, 118, 119
 Amino-acids, 38, 39, 42, 136
m.-Amino-benzoic acid, 30
γ-Amino-butyric acid, 79
 Amino-ethanolcatechol, 148
 Amino-ethyl-catechol, 147
 Amino-ethyl-pyrogallol, 149
 Amino-hydroxy-benzoic acid, esters of, 100, 101, 102
 1-Amino-naphthalene-4 arsonic acid, 196
 8-Amino-paraxanthine, 205
p-Amino-phenol, 36, 68, 69, 70-77
p-Aminophenyl-arsenious oxide, 191, 198
bis-p-Aminophenylarsinic acid, 195
p-Aminophenylarsonic acid, 189. (*See also* ATOXYL, and ARSANILIC ACID)
 8-Amino-theophylline, 205
 Amino-tolyl-arsonic acids, 195, 196
bis-2-Amino-tolyl-5 arsinic acid, 195
δ-Amino-valerianic acid, 79
 Ammonium bases, effect of, 5, 15
 Amygdophenine, 75
 Amylamine, 145
iso-Amylamine, 135
 Amylene, action of, 19
 Amyleno hydrate, 55
 tertiary Amyl urea, 56
 Anchoring groups, theory of, 6, 7, 10, 11
 Anilino, 63, 67
 oxidation of, in organism, 38, 68

- Anisio acid, 20
 Anisic aldehyde, 137, 138
o-Anisidine, 163
 Anthragallol, 210
 Anthranil-arsonic acid, 196-197
 Anthrapurpurin, 210, 211
 Anthraquinone derivatives, 209-211
 Antifebrin. (*See* ACETANILIDE)
 Antimony compounds, 200-202
 Antimony, finely divided metallic, 202
 Antipyrine, 20, 65, 66
 Antithermin, 67
 Aperitol, 212
 Apocodeine, 110, 111
 ψ -Apocodeine, 110
 Apomorphine, 106, 110
 Arecaidine, 11
 Arecoline, 11
 Argentamin, 183
 Argonin, 183
 Aristol, 174
 Aristoquinine, 84
 Arrhenal, 193
 Arsacetin, 189, 195, 198
 Arsamin, 194
 Arsanilic acid, 194, 196, 198. (*See also* ATOXYL)
 Arsenious oxide, 186
 aromatic derivatives of, 191
 Arsenobenzene derivatives, 191, 192, 198
 Arsenophenol, 198
 Arsenophenylglycine, 198, 199
 Arsinic acids, 192, 195, 196
 Arsonic acids, 192-196, 197, 198
 Arsonium bases, 15, 17
 Aseptol, 153
 Asparagine, 34
 Aspirin. (*See* ACETYL-SALICYLIC ACID)
 Asterol, 182
 Atoxyl, 187, 188, 189, 190, 193-194, 198
 Atrolactic acid, 89
 Atropine, 12, 34, 86, 88, 90

 BAGLIONI's theory of narcosis, 49
 Barbaloïn, 210
 Basic nitrogen groups, effect of, 26
 Benzanilido, 68
 Benzene, behaviour of in organism, 39
 Benzene, hydrocarbons, action of, 19
 Benzoic acid, behaviour of in organism, 43
 Benzophenone, 59
 Benzosol, 165
 Benzoyl-ecgonine, 92, 93
 esters of, 92, 93
 Benzoyl-phenylethylamine, 137
 Benzyl-morphine. (*See* PERONINE)
 Berberine, 115, 122-123
 Bismuth, 171
 Boric acid, 180
 Borneol, 217, 219
 carbonate, 164
 Bornyl chloride, 217, 218
 Bornyval, 219
 Bromal-hydrate, 46, 47, 54
 Bromides, alkaline, 178
 Bromipin, 178
 Bromoform, 51, 172
 Bromo-lecithin, 220
 Bromo-phenacetin, 77
 Butyl-chloral, 54
 Butyl-chloral hydrate, 46, 47
 tertiary Butyl-urea, 56

 CACODYL, 192
 Cacodylic acid, 193
 Cadaverine, 145
 Caffeine, 13, 203
 acetyl-amino derivatives of, 203
iso-Caffeine, 205
 Calomel. (*See* MERCUROUS CHLORIDE)
 Camphor, 168, 217, 218
 Canadine, 115
 Carbamic acid, 26
 "Carbon," 168
 Carbon-tetrachloride, 24, 50
 Carvone, 32
 Cascara, 209
 Catechol, 20, 128, 162
 carbonate, 164
 Changes in the organism and their relation to the activity of a drug, 12, 13
 Chinosol, 168
 Chloracetyl-catechol, 129
 Chloral, 50

- Chloral, behaviour of in organism, 37, 39, **42**
 Chloralamide, 53
 Chloral-ammonia, 53
 Chloral-formamide, 53
 Chloral-hydrate, 46, 47, **51**, 52
 Chloral-imide, 53
 Chloral-urethane, 54
 Chloretone, 54
 1 Chloro-2 amino-phenyl-5 arsonic acid, 196
 Chloroform, 24, **49**, 50, 172
 8-Chloro-theophylline, 205
 Choline, 32
 Chrysophan, **209**, 216
 Chrysophanic acid, 209, 211
 Cinchonine, **82**, 83, 84
 Cinnamic acid, 158
 Citarin, 208
 Citric acid derivatives, 170, 208
 Cocaine, 2, 11, 35, 86, **91**, 92, **93**, 94, 134
 α -Cocaine, 2, 35, 96
 Codeine, 103, **104-108**, 109, 120
 Codethyline. (*See* ETHYLMORPHINE)
 Collidine, 33
 Colloidal mercury, 181
 Colloidal silver, 183
 Colloidal silver chloride, 183
 Coniine, 80
 Cordal. (*See* TRIBROMSALOL)
 Corydaline, 115, **123**
 Cosäprin, 68
 Cotarnine, 115, 121, 122, **124**, 125, 126
 Coto-bark, 214
 Cotoïn, 214
 o-Coumaric acid, 158
 Creolin, 151
 Creosoform, 167
 Creosol, 162, 163
 Creosol carbonate, 164
 Creosote-carbonate, 164
 Creosote-phosphite, 165
 o-, m- and p-Cresols, **151**, 157, 158
 Cresotinic acid, 152, 167
 Cresylic acid, 151
 Croton-oil, 212
 Crum Brown and Fraser, law of, 5, **80**, 146
 Cupreine, **82**, 84
 Curare, 5, 147
 Cyanacetic acid, 28
 Cyanogen chloride, 28
 Cyanogen radicle, effect of, 28
 Cyclic ureides, 56
 DERMATOL, 171
 Dextroform, 169
 Diacetin, 46, 47
 Diacetoneamine, 97
 Diacetyl-morphine, 108, 109
 Diacetyl-phenetidine, 74
 p-Diamino-arsenobenzene, 198, **198**
 p-Diamino-dihydroxyarsenobenzene, 198
 sym-Diamyl urea, 56
 Diethyl-barbituric acid. (*See* VERONAL)
 Diethyl-ketone, 59
 Diethyl-malonyl urea. (*See* VERONAL)
 Diethyl-sulphone-methane, 46
 Digitalin, 216
 Digitalis, 216
 Digitoxin, 216
 Dihydro-papaverine, 117
 2-4 Dihydroxy- ω -amino-acetophenone, 148
 Dihydroxy-diamino-arsenobenzene, 192, **199**, **200**
 3-4 Dihydroxyphenylethylamine, 138, **139**, 141, 147, 148
 3-4 Dihydroxyphenylethylmethamine, 139, **140**, 147, 148
 Dihydroxypiperazine, 208
 4-5 Dimethoxy-2 β -methylaminoethylbenzaldehyde, 126
 6-7 Dimethoxy-2methyl-3-4-dihydroisoquinolinium chloride, 126. (*See* LODAL)
 4-Dimethyl-amino antipyrine. (*See* PYRAMIDON)
 1-4 Dimethyl-2 amino-phenyl-5 arsonic acid, 196
 p-Dimethylamino-phenyl arsonic acid, 197
 Dimethyl-piperazine, 208
 Dimethyl-sulphone-diethylmethane ("reversed" sulphonol), 60
 Dimethyl-sulphone-dimethyl-methane, 46
 Dimethyl-sulphone ethyl-methane, 60

Dimethyl-sulphone methyl-ethyl-methane, 60
 Dionine, 109. (*See also* ETHYL-MORPHINE)
 Diphenyl, 19
 Diphenyl tartrate, 206
 Dipropyl-malonyl urea, 57
 Distribution-coefficient, 46
 Diuretin, 203
 Dormiol, 53
 Dulcin, 21
 Duotal, 163-164

ECGONINE, 88, 91, 92
 Ecgonine methyl ester, 92, 93
 α -Ecgonine, 96
 Ehrlich's theory of the action of drugs, 6, 7
 Emodin, 210
 Epicarin, 153
 Epinephrine, 127, 134. (*See also* ADRENALINE)
 Epinine. (*See* 3-4 DIHYDROXY PHENYL-ETHYLMETHYLAMINE)
 Epiosine, 115
 Ergot, 127, 136
 Ergotoxine, 136
 Erythrol-tetra-nitrate, 25
 Ether. (*See* ETHYL ETHER)
p-Ethoxy-phenyl urethane, 75
 Ethyl alcohol, 23
 Ethylamino-acetocatechol, 147
 Ethylamino-ethylcatechol, 148
 Ethyl antimonyl tartrate, 201
 Ethyl bromide, 50, 51
 Ethyl chloride, 50, 51
 Ethylene-dibromide, 51
 Ethylene-diethyl-sulphone, 60
 Ethyl ether, 51, 55
 Ethylidene diethyl sulphone, 60
 Ethylidene dimethyl sulphone, 60
 Ethylmorphine, 108, 109
 N-Ethyl-phenacetin, 73
 (di)-Ethyl pinacone, 59
 α -Ethyl-piperidine, 80
 Ethyl-propyl-malonyl urea, 56
 Ethyl salicylate, 160
 Ethyl-urethane, 46, 47, 58
 α -Eucaine, 96, 97, 134
 β -Eucaine, 97, 98, 134

β -Eucaine lactate, 97
iso-Eugenol, 165
 Eugenol, 160
 Eugenol carbonate, 164
 Eugenol methyl ether, 139
 Euphorin, 69, 75
 Eupyrin, 76
 Euquinine, 85
 Europhen, 175
 Exalgin, 69
 Exodin, 211

FERRIPYRIN, 184
 Flavopurpurin, 210
 Formaldehyde, 15, 169, 170, 171
 Formamint, 169
 Formanilide, 68
 Fortoin, 215
 Fowler's solution, 187
 Frangulin, 210, 216
 Fumaric acid, 33, 34

GALLACETOPHENONE, 41
 Gallic acid, 170
 Gentisinic acid, 40
 Glucosides, 1, 216
 Glutol, 169
 Glycerol, 21, 161
 esters of with salicylic acid, etc., 161
 Glycerophosphoric acid, 219-220
 Glyceryl-ether, 22
 Glycine, 42, 43
 Glycosal, 161
 Glycuronic acid derivatives, 40, 41, 42
 Griserin, 176
 Guaiacetin, 167
 Guaiacol, 20, 154, 162, 163
 Guaiacol carbonate, 163
 Guaiacol carboxylic acid, 167
 Guaiacol phosphite, 165
 Guaiamar, 166
 Guaiaperol, 166
 Guaiathol, 163
 Guanidine, 26

HAEMATOGEN, 185
 Haemoglobin, 185

- Haemol, 185
 Halogen in organic compounds, effect of, 23
 Hedonal, 58
 Helmitol, 170, 208
 Hemisine, 134. (*See also* ADRENALINE)
 Hermophenyl, 183
 Heroin, 109. (*See also* DIACETYLMORPHINE)
 Hetocresol, 158
 Hetol, 158
 Hexamecoll, 167, 169
 Hexamethylenetetramine, 169-170
 Hexylamine, 145
 Hippuric acid, 43, 206
 Histidine, 136
 Holocaine, 98
 Homatropine, 90
 Homogentisinic acid, 40
 Homoprotocatechuic acid, 119
 Homoveratraldehyde, 139
 Homoveratric acid, 119
 Homoveratroyl chloride, 118, 119
 Hordenine, 143, 146
 methiodide, 143, 146, 148, 149
 Hydracetin, 67
 Hydrargyrol, 182
 Hydrastine, 115, 122, 126
 Hydrastinine, 125, 126
 Hydrazine, 8, 26
 Hydrazoic acid, 26
 Hydrocarbons, action of, 17
 Hydrocyanic acid, 15
 Hydrogen peroxide, 180
 Hydropirin, 156
 Hydroquinone, 39, 160
p-Hydroxy- ω -amino-acetophenone, 141, 142
m- and *p*-Hydroxybenzoic acids, 155
o-Hydroxybenzoic acid. (*See* SALICYLIC ACID)
m-Hydroxy-benzoyl tropeine, 89
p-Hydroxy- ω -chloro-acetophenone, 142
 Hydroxylamine, 26
 Hydroxyl groups, effect of, 21-23
p-Hydroxyphenylacetonitrile, 137
p-Hydroxyphenyl-arsenious oxide, 191
p-Hydroxyphenyl-arsonic acid, 191, 197, 198, 199
p-Hydroxyphenylethanolamine, 141, 142
o-Hydroxyphenylethylamine, 147
p-Hydroxyphenylethylamine, 127, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 146
p-Hydroxyphenylethylethylamine, 144
p-Hydroxyphenylethylmethylaniline, 143, 144
p-Hydroxyphenyl-urethane, 75
 α -Hydroxy- β -2-pyridyl-propionyl tropeine, 89
 Hyoscyamine, 34, 84. (*See also* ATROPINE)
 Hypnal, 53
 Hypnone (acetophenone), 29, 59
 behaviour of in organism, 41
 Hypodermic purgative. (*See* APOCDEINE)
 β -IMINAZOLYL-ETHYLAMINE, 136, 137
 Indophenol reaction, 72
 Indoxyl, formation of in organism, 39
 Iodalbin, 177
 Iodides, alkaline, 177
 Iodipin, 177
 Iodival, 177
p-Iodo-aniline, 194
 Iodoform, 172, 173, 174, 177
 Iodoformal, 173
 Iodoformin, 173
 Iodoglidine, 178
p-Iodo-guaiacol, 177
 Iodol, 173, 174
 Iodo-lecithin, 220
 Iodophenol, 174
 Iodo-thyrine, 177
p-Iodoxy-anisole, 176
 Ionization, effect of, 16, 17
 Iron, derivatives of, 184-185
 Isoform, 176
 Isomerism, effect of, 33
 Isomorphous groups, behaviour of, 16
 JALAP, 212
 KAIRINE (Hydroxy-N-ethyl-tetrahydro-quinoline), 64

- Kairolina A (N-Ethyl tetrahydroquinoline), 64
 Kairolina B (N-Methyl tetrahydroquinoline), 64
 Ketones, effect of, 29, 59
- LACTOPHENIN, 74
 Lactyl-aminophenyl, 162
 Lactylaminophenyl-ethyl-carbonate, 77
 "Ladenburg's Rule," 89
 Laudanine, 104
 Laudanosine, 103, 104, 120, 125, 126
 Laxin, 212
 Lecithin, 219
 Leucine, 135
 Liminal-values, 46
 Lithium salts, 206
 Lodal, 126, 140
 Loew's theory of poisons, 8
 Loretin, 176
 Losophan, 175
 Lutidine, 33
 Lysetol, 208
 Lysidin, 208
 Lysol, 151, 152
- MAGNESIUM-PERHYDROL, 180
 Malakin, 76
 Malarin, 76
 Maleic acid, 33, 34
 Malic acid, antimony derivatives of, 201
 Mandelic acid, 89
 Martius yellow, 29
 Meconine, 121, 122
 Medinal, 57
 Menthol, 165, 217, 219
 Menthol carbonate, 164
 Menthone, 32
 Mercuric chloride, 17, 181
 Mercuric cyanide, 17
 Mercurous chloride, 17
 Mercury, colloidal, 181
 Mercury, derivatives of, 180-183
 Mercury, organic derivatives of, 181, 182, 183
 Mesotan, 161
 Metaldehyde, 28
- Methacetin, 70, 73
 Methane, 18, 50
p-Methoxyphenylethylamine, 138, 143
p-Methoxyphenyl-trimethylammonium iodide, 144
 Methoxy quinoline, 63
 Methoxy-tetrahydroquinoline, 63
 Methyl acetanilide. (*See* EXALGIN)
 β -Methyl-adrenaline, 133
 Methylamino-acetocatechol. (*See* ADRENALONE)
 Methylamino-ethyl-catechol, 147. (*See also* 3-4 DIHYDROXYPHENYLETHYL-METHYLAMINE)
 α -Methyl-anthraquinone, 209
 Methyl-chloride, 24, 50
 Methyl-chloroform, 51
 Methylene-citric acid, 170
 Methylene-dichloride, 24, 50
 Methylene diethyl sulphone, 60
 Methylene dimethyl sulphone, 60
 Methylene-hippuric acid, 206
 Methyl-ethyl ether, 51
 Methyl-ethyl pinacone, 59
 Methyl-isoeugenol, 133
 2-Methyl-pheno-morpholine, 114
 Methyl-phenyl-pyrazoline, 20
 Methyl-pinacone, 58
N-Methyl-pyrrolidine, 83
 Methyl salicylate, 160
 behaviour of in organism, 41
 (*See also* OIL OF WINTERGREEN)
N-Methyl-triacetone-alkamine, 90, 96
 Methyl-urethane, 46, 47
N-Methyl-vinyl-diacetone-alkamine, 90, 91
 Meyer's theory of narcosis, 45
 Microcidin, 153
 Mitscherlich's law, 16
 Molecular weight, effect of, 33
 Monacetin, 46, 47
 3-Mono-methyl-xanthine, 13, 14, 205
 7-Mono-methyl-xanthine, 205
 Moore and Roaf's theory of narcosis, 48
 Morphigenine, 115
 Morphine, 103, 104-108, 109, 111, 114, 120
 Morphine, acyl derivatives of, 108, 109
 Morphine-sulphuric acid, 6, 10, 29
 Morpholine, 111, 112

- NAPHTHALENE, 19, 168
 α -Naphthol, 153
 β -Naphthol, 153
 Naphthol-carboxylic acids, 156, 157
 β -Naphthol salicylate, 162
 Naphthol yellow S, 29
 β -Naphthylamine, 78
 Narceine, 103, 123-124
 Narcosis, theories of, 44-49
 Narcotine, 103, 104, 115, 116, 120, 121-122, 126
 Narcotine, methochloride of, 124
 Neurine, 32
 Neurodin, 75
 New-Cacodyl, 193
 New-Orthoform, 101
 New-Urotropin, 170
 Nicotine, 34, 80, 83, 84, 147
 Nirvanine, 101
 Nitriles and isonitriles, effect of, 28
 Nitrites, physiological action of, 25
 Nitro and nitroso groups, effect of, 24
 Nitro-benzaldehydes, behaviour of in organism, 39
 p -Nitro-benzoic acid, 25, 29
 Nitro-glycerin, 25
 p -Nitro-hippuric acid, 25
 Nitro-phenacetol, 114
 o -Nitro-phenol, 163
 p -Nitro-phenol, 70
 o -Nitro-phenyl-propionic acid, 39
 Nitroso-piperazine, 207
 p -Nitro-toluene, 25
 Nizin. (*See* ZINC SULPHANILATE)
 Nosophen, 176
- OIL OF WINTERGREEN, 160, 164
 Orexin, 213-214
 Orsudan, 195, 198
 Orthin, 67
 Orthoform, 100
 Osmotic permeability, 48
 Overton's theory of narcosis, 45-47
 Oxalic acid, 4, 33
 Oxynarcotine, 103
- PAEONOL, 41
 Papaverine, 103, 104, 115, 116-119, 120
 Papaverine, methochloride of, 120
- Paraldehyde, 28
 Paraxanthine, 13, 14, 203-204
 8-amino-, 205
 Parvoline, 33
 Pentabrom-phenol, 153
 Pentachlor-phenol, 153
 Pentamethylene diamine, 79
 Perhydrol, 180
 Peronine, 109
 "Pharmacophore," 7
 Phenacetin, 5, 70, 71, 72, 73
 Phenanthrene, 103, 105, 114
 p -Phenetidine, 70, 71, 72
 Phenocoll, 77
 Phenol, 22, 151, 181
 behaviour of in organism, 40
 formation from benzene in organ-
 ism, 39
 Phenolphthalein, 175, 212
 Phenyl-alanine, 38, 135
 p -Phenylene-diamene, 9
 Phenylethanolamine, 141, 146
 Phenylethyl alcohol, 143
 Phenylethylamine, 135, 146
 Phenyl-ethyl ketone, 59
 Phenylglycine-arsonic acid, 191, 192,
 197, 198
 Phenylhydrazine, 8
 Phenyl-sulphuric acid, 29, 40, 153
 Phenyl-urethane. (*See* EUPHORIN)
 Phesin, 74
 Phloroglucinol, 152
 Phosphatol, 165
 Phosphonium bases, 15, 17
 Phosphorus, action of yellow and red,
 3
 Phthalic acid, behaviour of in organ-
 ism, 38
 Phthalimide, behaviour of in organ-
 ism, 38
 Picoline, 33
 Picric acid, behaviour of in organism,
 39
 Picropodophyllin, 212
 Pilocarpine, 33, 81
 iso-Pilocarpine, 33, 81
 Pinacones, 58-59
 Pinene, 217, 218
 "Pinene hydrochloride," 217, 218
 Pipecoline, 80
 Piperazine, 205, 206, 207, 208

- Piperidine, 78, 79, 208
 tartrate, 208
 Piperidone, 79
 Piperonal, 131, 132
 Podophyllin, 212
 Podophyllinic acid, 212-213
 Podophyllotoxin, 212
 Potassium ferrocyanide, 16
 Potassium sulphocyanide, 28
 Propion. (*See* DIETHYL KETONE)
 Propylamino-acetocatechol, 147
 Propylamino-ethylcatechol, 148
 Protargol, 183
 Protocatechuic aldehyde, 130
 Protocatechuric acid, 128
 behaviour of in organism, 41
 Purgatin, 211
 Purgatives, 208-213
 Purgatol, 211
 Purgin, 212
 Purpurin, 210
 Purpuroxanthin, 210
 Pyramidon, 66
 Pyrantin, 74
 Pyrazole, 65
 Pyridine, 33, 78, 105
 behaviour of in organism, 43
 Pyrogallol, 152
 Pyrrol, 19, 105, 173
 Pyrrolidine, 83
 α -Pyrrolidone, 79
- QUINAZOLINE derivatives, 213
 Quinic acid, 205
 Quinine, 82, 83, 84, 85
 Quinoline derivatives, 168
 Quinone, 39
 Quinotropin, 208
- REACTIVITY, connection between toxicity and, 8
 Resacetophenone, 41
 Resorcinol, 20, 152
 "Reversed" sulphonol, 60
 Rhamnose, 210
 Rheum (rhubarb), 209
- iso-Safrole, 31
 Salacetol, 161
 Salicin, 157, 216
 Salicyl-acetic acid, 156
 Salicyl-amide, 162
 Salicyl-anilide, 68
 Salicyl-arsonic acid, 197
 Salicylic acid, 152, 154, 155, 206
 behaviour of in organism, 40
 Salicylide, 50
 Salicyl-pheretidine, 75
 Salicyl-tropeine, 89
 Saliformin, 208
 Saligenin, 157, 206
 Salocoll, 77
 Salol, 154, 158-160
 Salophen, 162
 Salvarsan. (*See* DIHYDROXY-DIAMINO-ARSENOBENZENE)
 Schmiedeberg's rules of the action of aliphatic compounds, 17
 Senna, 209
 Sidonal, 205
 Silver compounds, 183-184
 Soamin, 194
 Sodium ferrocyanide, 28
 Sodium nitroprusside, 28
 Sodium phenate, 155
 Sodium phenyl carbonate, 155
 Sodium platincyanide, 28
 Solveol, 152, 167
 Somnal, 54
 Somnoform, 50
 Spatial configuration, effect of, 15
 Stereo-isomerides, action of, 3, 33
 Stovaine, 99
 Strophanthidin, 216
 Strophanthin, 216
 Strophanthus, 216
 Strychnine, 12, 81
 Stypticine, 125
 Styptol, 125
 Sulphonol, 46, 37, 59, 60, 61
 Sulphones, 59-62
 Sulphonic esters, formation of by organism, 40
 Sulphonium bases, 15, 17
 Suprarenine, 127, 134. (*See also* ADRENALINE)
 Sympathomimetic action, 127, 145
- SACCHARIN, 9, 35
 Safrole, 31

- TANNIC acid, 170-171, 206
 Tannigen, 171
 Tannoform, 171
 Tartar emetic, 186, 200
 Terpenes, 217-219
 Tetrabromocresol, 154
 Tetrachlorophenol, 153
 Tetra-ethylammonium iodide, 145
 Tetrahydro-naphthalene-morpholine, 112, 113
ac-Tetrahydro- β -naphthylamine, 27, 78, 146
 Tetra-iodo-phenolphthalein, 175, 176,
 Tetra-iodo pyrrol, 173, 174
 Tetronal, 46, 47, 60, 61
 Thalline, 64
 Thebaine, 103, 107-108, 120
 Theobromine, 13, 203
 Theocine, 204
 Theophylline, 13, 14, 203, 204, 205
 " , 8 amino-, 205
 " , 8 chloro-, 205
 Thermodin, 75
 Thiocoll, 167
 Thioglycollic acid, antimony deriva-
 tives of, 201, 202
 Thymatol, 152
 Thymol, 152, 158
 Toluene, behaviour of in organism, 39
 Toluidine, 68
 Toluidine arsenate, 195
 Traube's theory of narcosis, 48
 Triacetin, 22, 46, 47
 Triacetoneamine, 90, 96
 Triacetone-alkamine-carboxylic acid, 97
 Triacetyl-aloïn, 212
 Tribromaloïn, 212
 Tribromophenol, 153
 Tribromsalol, 55
 Trichloroacetic acid, 52
 Trichlorophenol, 153
 Trigemin, 54
 Tri-iodo-meta-cresol, 174, 174
 Trimethylamine, 105, 145
 Trimethylamino-acetocatechol chlor-
 ide, 147
 Trimethylamino-ethylcatechol chlo-
 ride, 148
 Trional, 46, 47, 60, 61, 62
 Trioxymethylene, 169
 Triphenin, 74
 Tropacocaine, 88, 94, 95
 Tropeines, 86, 88, 89, 94
 Tropic acid, 86, 87
 Tropine, 86, 87
 ψ -Tropine, 88, 94, 95
 Tropinone, 88, 94, 95
 Truxilline, 93
 Trypsin, action of on drugs, 37
 Tylmarin, 158
 Tyramine, 138. (*See also p*-HYDROXY-
 PHENYLETHYLAMINE)
 Tyrosine, 12, 30, 135
 behaviour of in organism, 38
 Tyrosine ethyl ester, 147

 UNSATURATION, effect of, 31
 Uric acid, 206
 Urosin, 205
 Urotropin, 170, 205, 208
 Ursal, 206
 Uvitonic acid, 168

 VALERIANIC acids, 24, 179, 219
 Valerobromine, 177, 178
 Validol, 219
 Valyl, 219
 Vanillic acid, behaviour of in organ-
 ism, 41, 42
 Vanilline, 118,
 behaviour of in organism, 42
 Veratraldehyde, 119, 125, 131
 Veratric acid, 41, 128
 Veratrole, 20, 166
 Veronal, 56, 57
 Vinyl-diacetonamine, 97, 98
 Vinyl-diacetone-alkamine, 90, 98
 Vioform, 176

 XANTHINE, 13
 Xanthine derivatives, 13, 203-205
 Xaxa. (*See* ACETYL-SALICYLIC ACID)

 ZINC-PERHYDROL, 180, 184
 Zinc Sulphanilate, 184

PRINTED BY
WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON AND BECCLES

A LIST OF WORKS ON
MEDICINE, SURGERY AND
GENERAL SCIENCE

CONTENTS

	PAGE
ANATOMY	3
BACTERIOLOGY	18
BIOLOGY	13
CHEMISTRY	20
HEALTH AND HYGIENE	16
INDEX	2
MEDICINE	3
MISCELLANEOUS	10
<i>MONOGRAPHS ON BIOCHEMISTRY</i>	24
OPTICS	19
PHOTOGRAPHY	19
PHYSIOLOGY	13
<i>PROCEEDINGS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE</i>	12
SURGERY	3
<i>TEXT-BOOKS OF PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY</i>	23
VETERINARY MEDICINE	12
ZOOLOGY	13

LONGMANS GREEN & CO.
39 PATERNOSTER ROW LONDON E.C.
FOURTH AVE. & THIRTIETH ST. NEW YORK
8 HORNBY ROAD BOMBAY
303 BOWBAZAR STREET CALCUTTA
1910

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Abney's Photography	19	Macalister's Zoology of the Invertebrate Animals	14
Aikin's The Voice	10	----- Vertebrate Animals ...	14
Armitage's A History of Chemistry ...	20	Macdougall's Elementary Plant Physiology ...	14
Armstrong's Simple Carbohydrates and the Glucosides	24	----- Text-book of Plant Physiology ...	14
Arrhenius's Text-book of Electro-Chemistry ...	20	Marshall's Physiology of Reproduction ...	15
----- Theories of Chemistry	20	Mees' Atlas of Absorption Spectra	19
Ashby's Health in the Nursery	16	Mellor's Chemical Statics and Dynamics ...	23
----- Notes on Physiology	13	Mendeléeff's Principles of Chemistry ...	20
----- and Wright's The Diseases of Children ...	3	Meyer's Outlines of Theoretical Chemistry ...	20
Baly's Spectroscopy	19, 23	Monographs on Biochemistry	24
Barnett's Making of the Body	13	Moon's Relation of Medicine to Philosophy ...	11
Bayliss' Nature of Enzyme Action	24	Moore's Elementary Physiology	15
Beddard's Elementary Practical Zoology ...	13	Morgan's Animal Biology	15
Bell's Principles of Gynæcology	4	Muir's Course of Practical Chemistry ...	20
Bennett's Abdominal Hernia	3	Newth's Chemical Lecture Experiments ...	21
----- On the Use of Massage	3	----- Elementary Practical Chemistry ...	21
----- On Varix: Its Causes and Treatment ...	3	----- Manual of Chemical Analysis ...	21
----- Recurrent Effusion into the Knee-Joint after Injury	3	----- Smaller Chemical Analysis	21
----- Treatment of Simple Fractures	3	----- Text-book of Inorganic Chemistry ...	21
----- Varicose Veins	3	Notter and Firth's Hygiene	17
Bidgood's Practical Elementary Biology ...	13	----- Practical Domestic Hygiene	17
Bose's Comparative Electro-Physiology ...	13	Osborne's Vegetable Proteins	24
----- Plant Response	13	Ostwald's Principles of Chemistry	21
----- Response in Living and Non-Living ...	13	Paget's Memoirs and Letters	11
Brodie's Essentials of Physiology	13	Perkin's Methods of Electro-Chemistry ...	21
Bull's Hints to Mothers	16	----- Qualitative Chemical Analysis ...	21
----- Maternal Management of Children ...	16	Pettigrew's Design in Nature	11
Bunge's Organic Chemistry for Medical Students	20	Plimmer's Constitution of the Proteins ...	24
Butterworth's Manual of Household Work ...	16	----- Physiological Chemistry	21
Cabot's Clinical Examination of the Blood ...	4	Pollok's Practical Spectrographic Analysis ...	19, 23
Campbell's Practical Motherhood	16	Poole's Cookery for the Diabetic	11
Chapman's The Foraminifera	13	Poore's Colonial and Camp Sanitation ...	17
Charities Register and Digest	10	----- Essays on Rural Hygiene	17
Cheyne and Burghard's Manual of Surgical Treatment	4	----- The Dwelling House	17
Coats' Manual of Pathology	5	----- The Earth in Relation to Contagia ...	17
Colyer's Dental Surgery and Pathology ...	5	Porter's Sanitary Law	17
Cooke's Aphorisms in Applied Anatomy ...	5	----- School Hygiene	17
----- Tablets of Anatomy	5	Price and Twiss' Organic Chemistry	21
Corfield's Laws of Health	16	Probyn-Williams' The Administration of Anaesthetics	7
Creighton's Economics of the Household ...	16	Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine ...	12
Crookes' Methods in Chemical Analysis ...	20	Quain's Dictionary of Medicine	7
Curtis' Practical Bacteriology	18	----- Elements of Anatomy (10th Edition) ...	8
Dakin's Handbook of Midwifery	5	----- (11th Edition)	9
Desch's Metallography	23	Radcliffe and Sinnatt's Practical Organic Chemistry	21
Dickson's The Bone Marrow	5	Raffety's Science of Radio Activity	11
Donnan's Thermodynamics	23	Reynolds' Experimental Chemistry	21
Drude's Theory of Optics	19	Robinson's Health of our Children in the Colonies	17
Ellis' Outlines of Bacteriology	18	Schäfer's Essentials of Histology	9
Findlay's Phase Rule and its Application ...	23	----- Practical Physiology	15
----- Practical Physical Chemistry	20	Schryver's Characters of the Proteins ...	24
Fitzwygram's Horses and Stables	12	Sheppard and Mees' Photographic Process ...	19
Frankland's Bacteria in Daily Life	18	Sheppard's Actinchemistry	23
Friend's Theory of Valency	23	Smiles' Chemical Constitutions and Physical Properties	23
Furneaux's Human Physiology	14	Smith and Hall's Teaching of Chemistry and Physics in Secondary School ...	21
----- Practical Hygiene	16	----- Handbook for Midwives	9
Gaskell's The Origin of the Vertebrates ...	10	Steel's Diseases of the Ox	12
Glazebrook's Physical Optics	19	Stevenson's Wounds in War	9
Goadby's Mycology of the Mouth	18	Stewart's Physical and Inorganic Chemistry ...	22
Godfrey's Elementary Chemistry	20	----- Recent Advances in Organic Chemistry	22
Goodsall and Miles' Diseases of the Anus and Rectum	6	----- Stereochemistry	23
Gray's Anatomy, Descriptive and Applied ...	6	Sutherland-Gower's Cleanliness <i>versus</i> Corruption	11
Halliburton's The Essentials of Chemical Physiology	14	Symington and Rankin's Atlas of Skiagrams ...	10
Hanson's and Dodgson's Intermediate Course of Laboratory Work in Chemistry ...	20	Text-Books of Physical Chemistry	23
Harden's Alcoholic Fermentation	24	Thomsen's Thermochemistry	23
Hardy's Colloids	24	Thornton's Elementary Biology	15
Hare's The Food Factor in Disease	6	----- Practical Physiology	15
Hayes' Training and Horse Management ...	12	----- Human Physiology	15
Hobart's Medical Language of St. Luke ...	10	Thorpe's Dictionary of Applied Chemistry ...	22
Hopf's Human Species	10	Tilden's Chemical Philosophy	22
Hopkins' Development and Present Position of Biological Chemistry	24	----- Practical Chemistry	22
Hudson and Gosse's The Rotifera	14	----- Progress of Scientific Chemistry ...	22
Influence of Heredity on Disease	6	Vaccine Therapy	10
Inquiry into the Phenomena attending Death by Drowning	11	Vanderpoel's Colour Problems	19
James's Ball Games and Breathing Exercises ...	16	Watt's Dictionary of Chemistry	22
Kidd's Urinary Surgery	7	Webbs' The State and the Doctor	11
King's College Hospital Cooking Recipes ...	11	West's How to Nurse Sick Children ...	17
Klöcker's Fermentation Organisms	18	Weston's Detection of Carbon Compounds ...	22
Leathes' The Fats	24	Whitely's Chemical Calculations	22
Lehfeldt's Electro-Chemistry	23	----- Organic Chemistry	22
Ling's The Polysaccharides	24	Williams' Rhinology	10
Lloyd and Bigelow's Teaching of Biology ...	14	Wilsmore's Electro-Chemistry	23
Luff's Text-book of Forensic Medicine	7	Wright's Optical Projection	19
Macalister's Systematic Zoology of the Vertebrate Animals	14	Youatt's The Dog	12
		----- The Horse	12
		Young's Stoichiometry	23

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.

ASHBY AND WRIGHT. THE DISEASES OF CHILDREN, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D. Lond., F.R.C.P., late Physician to the Manchester Children's Hospital; and G. A. WRIGHT, B.A., M.B. Oxon., F.R.C.S. Eng., Surgeon to the Manchester Royal Infirmary; Consulting Surgeon to the Manchester Children's Hospital. With 15 Plates (1 Coloured) and 241 Illustrations in the Text. Fifth Edition. Thoroughly Revised, 1905. 8vo, 21s. net.

BENNETT.—*WORKS by Sir WILLIAM H. BENNETT, K.C.V.O., F.R.C.S., Surgeon to St. George's Hospital.*

RECURRENT EFFUSION INTO THE KNEE-JOINT AFTER INJURY, WITH ESPECIAL REFERENCE TO INTERNAL DERANGEMENT, COMMONLY CALLED SLIPPED CARTILAGE: an Analysis of 750 Cases. A Clinical Lecture delivered at St. George's Hospital. With 13 Illustrations. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

CLINICAL LECTURES ON VARICOSE VEINS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITIES. With 3 Plates. 8vo, 6s.

CLINICAL LECTURES ON ABDOMINAL HERNIA: chiefly in relation to Treatment, including the Radical Cure. With 12 Diagrams in the Text. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

ON VARIX, ITS CAUSES AND TREATMENT, WITH ESPECIAL REFERENCE TO THROMBOSIS. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

LECTURE ON THE USE OF MASSAGE AND EARLY MOVEMENTS IN RECENT FRACTURES AND OTHER COMMON SURGICAL INJURIES: SPRAINS AND THEIR CONSEQUENCES: RIGIDITY OF THE SPINE, AND THE MANAGEMENT OF STIFF JOINTS GENERALLY. With 23 Illustrations. 8vo, 6s.

THE PRESENT POSITION OF THE TREATMENT OF SIMPLE FRACTURES OF THE LIMBS: an Address delivered to the British Medical Association. To which is appended a Summary of the Opinions and Practice of about 300 Surgeons. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—continued.

BELL. THE PRINCIPLES OF GYNÆCOLOGY. By W. BLAIR BELL, B.S., M.D., Assistant Gynæcological Surgeon, Royal Infirmary, Liverpool. With 6 Coloured Plates (4 by H. K. MAXWELL) and over 350 other Illustrations. 8vo, 21s. net.

A concise, yet complete account of the development, anatomy and physiology of the female genital organs. The methods of physical examination are fully described. The diseases of the special organs and the allied morbid conditions are discussed, special attention being paid to the pathology which is illustrated by numerous photomicrographs and drawings of actual specimens, each of which is carefully described.

CABOT. A GUIDE TO THE CLINICAL EXAMINATION OF THE BLOOD FOR DIAGNOSTIC PURPOSES. By RICHARD C. CABOT, M.D., Physician to Out-Patients, Massachusetts General Hospital. With 3 Coloured Plates and 28 Illus. in Text. 8vo, 16s.

CHEYNE AND BURGHARD. A MANUAL OF SURGICAL TREATMENT. By Sir W. WATSON CHEYNE, Bart., C.B., M.B., F.R.C.S., F.R.S., D.Sc., Professor of Clinical Surgery in King's College, London; Surgeon to King's College Hospital, and the Children's Hospital, Paddington Green, etc.; and F. F. BURGHARD, M.D. and M.S. Lond., F.R.C.S., Teacher of Practical Surgery in King's College, London; Surgeon to King's College Hospital, and the Children's Hospital, Paddington Green, etc.

PART I. The treatment of General Surgical Diseases, including inflammation, suppuration, ulceration, gangrene, wounds and their complications, infective diseases and tumours; the administration of anæsthetics. With 66 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 9s. net.

PART II. The treatment of the Surgical Affections of the Tissues, including the skin and subcutaneous tissues, the nails, the lymphatic vessels and glands, the fasciæ, bursæ, muscles, tendons and tendon-sheaths, nerves, arteries and veins; deformities. With 141 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 12s. net.

PART III. The treatment of the Surgical Affections of the Bones. Amputations. With 100 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 10s. 6d. net.

PART IV. The treatment of the Surgical Affections of the Joints (including excisions) and the spine. With 138 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 12s. net.

PART V. The treatment of the Surgical Affections of the head, face, jaws, lips, larynx and trachea; and the Intrinsic Diseases of the nose, ear and larynx, by H. LAMBERT LACK, M.D. (Lond.), F.R.C.S., Surgeon to the Hospital for Diseases of the Throat, Golden Square, and to the Throat and Ear Department, the Children's Hospital, Paddington Green. With 145 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 15s. net.

PART VI.—Section 1. The Surgical Affections of the tongue and floor of the mouth, the pharynx, neck, œsophagus, stomach and intestines. With an Appendix on the Examination of the Blood in Surgical Condition. By W. ESTE EMERY, M.D., D.Sc. (Lond.). With 124 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 15s. net.

Section 2. The Surgical Affections of the rectum, the liver, pancreas and spleen, and genito-urinary organs, the breast and the thorax. With 113 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 18s. net.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

COATS. A MANUAL OF PATHOLOGY. By JOSEPH COATS, M.D., late Professor of Pathology in the University of Glasgow. Fifth Edition, 1903. Revised throughout and Edited by LEWIS R. SUTHERLAND, M.D., Professor of Pathology, University of St. Andrews. With 729 Illustrations and 2 Coloured Plates. 8vo, 28s. net.

COLYER. DENTAL SURGERY AND PATHOLOGY. By J. F. COLYER, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., L.D.S., Dental Surgeon to Charing Cross Hospital and the Royal Dental Hospital. Being the Third Edition of "Diseases and Injuries of the Teeth," by MORTON SMALE and J. P. COLYER. With Illustrations. 8vo. 25s. net.

COOKE.—*WORKS* by THOMAS COOKE, F.R.C.S. Eng., B.A., B.Sc., M.D. Paris, late Senior Assistant Surgeon to the Westminster Hospital.

TABLETS OF ANATOMY. Being a Synopsis of demonstrations given in the Westminster Hospital Medical School. Eleventh Edition in three Parts, thoroughly brought up to date, and with over 700 Illustrations from all the best sources, British and Foreign. Post 4to. Part I. The Bones, 7s. 6d. net; Part II. Limbs, Abdomen, Pelvis, 10s. 6d. net; Part III. Head and Neck, Thorax, Brain, 10s. 6d. net.

APHORISMS IN APPLIED ANATOMY AND OPERATIVE SURGERY. Including 100 Typical *vivâ voce* Questions on Surface Marking, etc. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

DAKIN. A HANDBOOK OF MIDWIFERY. By WILLIAM RADFORD DAKIN, M.D., F.R.C.P., Obstetric Physician and Lecturer on Midwifery at St. George's Hospital, Examiner in Midwifery and Diseases of Women on the Conjoint Board of the Royal Colleges of Physicians and Surgeons in England, etc. With 400 Illustrations. Large crown 8vo, 18s.

DICKSON. THE BONE-MARROW: a Cytological Study. Forming an Introduction to the Normal and Pathological Histology of the Tissue, more especially with regard to Blood Formation, Blood Destruction, etc. Together with a short account of the Reactions and Degenerations of the Tissue in Disease. By W. E. CARNEGIE DICKSON, M.D., B.Sc. Edin., F.R.C.P. Edin., Lecturer on Pathological Bacteriology and Senior Assistant to the Professor of Pathology in the University of Edinburgh; Assistant Pathologist to the Edinburgh Royal Infirmary. With 12 Coloured Plates and 51 Micro-Photographs by Richard Muir. Medium 4to, £2 2s. net.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

GOODSALL AND MILES. DISEASES OF THE ANUS AND RECTUM. By D. H. GOODSALL, F.R.C.S., late Senior Surgeon Metropolitan Hospital, Senior Surgeon St. Mark's Hospital; and W. ERNEST MILES, F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon to the Cancer Hospital, Surgeon (out-patients) to the Gordon Hospital, etc. (In Two Parts).

PART I.—Anatomy of the Ano-rectal Region—General Diagnosis—Abscess—Ano-rectal Fistula—Recto-urethral, Recto-vesical and Recto-vaginal Fistulæ—Sinus over the Sacro-coccygeal Articulation—Fissure—Hæmorrhoids (External and Internal). With 91 Illustrations. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

PART II.—Prolapse of the Rectum—Invagination of the Rectum—Ulceration—Stricture of the Anus and of the Rectum—Malignant Growths of the Anus and Rectum—Benign Tumours of the Anus and Rectum—Foreign Bodies in the Rectum—Pruritus Ani—Syphilis of the Anus and Rectum. With 44 Illustrations. 8vo, 6s. net.

GRAY. ANATOMY, DESCRIPTIVE AND APPLIED. By HENRY GRAY, F.R.S., late Lecturer on Anatomy at St. George's Hospital Medical School. Seventeenth Edition. Edited by ROBERT HOWDEN, M.A., M.B., C.M., Professor of Anatomy in the University of Durham. Notes on Applied Anatomy, revised by A. J. JEX-BLAKE, M.A., M.B., M.R.C.P., Assistant Physician to St. George's Hospital; and W. FEDDE FEDDEN, M.S., F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon and Lecturer on Surgical Anatomy, St. George's Hospital. With 1,032 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 32s. net.

HARE. THE FOOD FACTOR IN DISEASE: Being an investigation into the humoral causation, meaning, mechanism and rational treatment, preventive and curative, of the Paroxysmal Neuroses (migraine, asthma, angina pectoris, epilepsy, etc.), bilious attacks, gout, catarrhal and other affections, high blood-pressure, circulatory, renal and other degenerations. By FRANCIS HARE, M.D., late Consulting Physician to the Brisbane General Hospital; Visiting Physician at the Diamantina Hospital for Chronic Diseases, Brisbane; Inspector-General of Hospitals for Queensland. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, 30s. net.

INFLUENCE OF HEREDITY ON DISEASE (THE), WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO TUBERCULOSIS, CANCER, AND DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. A Discussion opened by SIR WILLIAM S. CHURCH, Bt., K.C.B., M.D., SIR WILLIAM R. GOWERS, M.D., F.R.S. (Diseases of the Nervous System), ARTHUR LATHAM, M.D. (Tuberculosis), and E. F. BASHFORD, M.D. (Cancer). [From the Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine, 1909, Vol. II., No. 3.] 4to, 4s. 6d. net.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

KIDD. URINARY SURGERY : A REVIEW. By FRANK KIDD, M.B., B.C. (Cantab.), F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon to the London Hospital. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

LUFF. TEXT-BOOK OF FORENSIC MEDICINE AND TOXICOLOGY. By ARTHUR P. LUFF, M.D., B.Sc. Lond., Physician in Charge of Out-Patients and Lecturer on Medical Jurisprudence and Toxicology in St. Mary's Hospital; Examiner in Forensic Medicine in the University of London; External Examiner in Forensic Medicine in the Victoria University; Official Analyst to the Home Office. With 13 full-page Plates (1 in colours) and 33 Illustrations in the Text. 2 vols., Crown 8vo, 24s.

PROBYN-WILLIAMS. A PRACTICAL GUIDE TO THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANAESTHETICS. By R. J. PROBYN-WILLIAMS, M.D., Senior Anaesthetist and Instructor in Anaesthetics at the London Hospital, etc. With 44 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d. net.

QUAIN. QUAIN'S (SIR RICHARD) DICTIONARY OF MEDICINE. By Various Writers. Edited by H. MONTAGUE MURRAY, M.D., F.R.C.P., Joint Lecturer on Medicine, Charing Cross Medical School, and Physician to Charing Cross Hospital, and to the Victoria Hospital for Children, Chelsea; Examiner in Medicine to the University of London. Assisted by JOHN HAROLD, M.B., B.Ch., B.A.O., Physician to St. John's and St. Elizabeth's Hospital, and Demonstrator of Medicine at Charing Cross Medical School, and W. CECIL BOSANQUET, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P., Assistant Physician, Charing Cross Hospital, etc. Third and Cheaper Edition, largely Rewritten, and Revised throughout. With 21 Plates (14 in Colour) and numerous Illustrations in the Text. 8vo, 21s. net.. buckram.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

QUAIN. QUAIN'S (JONES) ELEMENTS OF ANATOMY.

The TENTH EDITION. Edited by EDWARD ALBERT SCHÄFER, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology and Histology in the University of Edinburgh; and GEORGE DANCER THANE, Professor of Anatomy in University College, London.

* * The several parts of this work form COMPLETE TEXT-BOOKS OF THEIR RESPECTIVE SUBJECTS. They can be obtained separately as follows:—

VOL. I., PART I. EMBRYOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S. With 200 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 9s.

VOL. I., PART II. GENERAL ANATOMY OR HISTOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S. With 491 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 12s. 6d.

VOL. II., PART I. OSTEOLOGY—ARTHROLOGY. By G. D. THANE. With 224 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 11s.

VOL. II., PART II. MYOLOGY—ANGEIOLOGY. By G. D. THANE. With 199 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 16s.

VOL. III., PART I. THE SPINAL CORD AND BRAIN. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 139 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 12s. 6d.

VOL. III., PART II. THE NERVES. By G. D. THANE. With 102 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 9s.

VOL. III., PART III. THE ORGANS OF THE SENSES. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S. With 178 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 9s.

VOL. III., PART IV. SPLANCHNOLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER, F.R.S., and JOHNSON SYMINGTON, M.D. With 337 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 16s.

APPENDIX. SUPERFICIAL AND SURGICAL ANATOMY. By Professor G. D. THANE and Professor R. J. GODLEE, M.S. With 29 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, 6s. 6d.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

QUAIN. QUAIN'S ELEMENTS OF ANATOMY. The ELEVENTH EDITION. Edited by EDWARD ALBERT SCHÄFER, F.R.S., Professor of Physiology and Histology in the University of Edinburgh; JOHNSON SYMINGTON, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Anatomy in Queen's College, Belfast; and THOMAS HASTIE BRYCE, M.A., M.D., Regius Professor of Anatomy in the University of Glasgow.

IN FOUR VOLUMES. Royal 8vo.

VOL. I. EMBRYOLOGY. By T. H. BRYCE, M.A., M.D. Illustrated by more than 300 Engravings, many of which are coloured. 10s. 6d. net.

VOL. III. NEUROLOGY. By E. A. SCHÄFER and J. SYMINGTON.

Part I. Containing the General Structure of the Nervous System and the Structure of the Brain and Spinal Cord. With 361 Illustrations, many of which are coloured. 15s. net.

Part II. Containing the Descriptive Anatomy of the Peripheral Nerves and of the Organs of Special Sense. With 321 Illustrations, many of which are coloured. 15s. net.

* * *The other Volumes are in preparation.*

This work has been completely re-edited and brought up to date. The volumes will comprise respectively Embryology; General and Visceral Anatomy; the Nervous System and Sense Organs; and the Bones, Ligaments, Muscles, and Blood-vessels. Each volume will be complete in itself, and will serve as a text-book for the particular subject or subjects with which it deals. Thus the first volume is intended to form a complete text-book of Human Embryology, the second a text-book of Histology and Visceral Anatomy, the third a text-book of Neurology, the fourth dealing with the systems which are not included in the second and third volumes.

SCHÄFER. THE ESSENTIALS OF HISTOLOGY: Descriptive and Practical. By E. A. SCHÄFER, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology and Histology in the University of Edinburgh. With 645 Illustrations some of which are Coloured. Eighth Edition Enlarged, 1910. 8vo, 10s. 6d. net.

SMITH. THE HANDBOOK FOR MIDWIVES. By HENRY FLY SMITH, B.A., M.B., Oxon., M.R.C.S. Second Edition. With 41 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo, 5s.

STEVENSON. WOUNDS IN WAR: The Mechanism of their Production and their Treatment. By Colonel W. F. STEVENSON, C.B., K.H.S., R.A.M.C., B.A., M.B., M.Ch. Dublin University; late Surgeon-General and Professor of Military Surgery, Royal Army Medical College, London. With 137 Illustrations, 8vo, 16s. net.

MEDICINE, SURGERY, ANATOMY, ETC.—*continued.*

VACCINE THERAPY ; ITS ADMINISTRATION, VALUE, AND LIMITATIONS : a Discussion held by the Royal Society of Medicine. Opening Address by Sir ALMROTH WRIGHT, M.D., F.R.S., with Contributions by Dr. W. HALE WHITE, Dr. WILLIAM BULLOCH, Sir WILLIAM LEISHMAN, Dr. KINGSTON FOWLER, Dr. ARTHUR LATHAM, and many others. 8vo, 4s. 6d. net.

SYMINGTON AND RANKIN. AN ATLAS OF SKIAGRAMS, ILLUSTRATING THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH. With Explanatory Text. By JOHNSON SYMINGTON, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Anatomy, Queen's College, Belfast; and J. C. RANKIN, M.D., Physician in charge of the Electrical Department, Royal Victoria Hospital, Belfast. With 12 Plates. Demy 4to. 10s. 6d. net.

WILLIAMS. RHINOLOGY : a Text-book of Diseases of the Nose and the Nasal Accessory Sinuses. By PATRICK WATSON WILLIAMS, M.D. (London). With 3 Coloured Plates and 44 Black and White Plates (of which 26 are Stereoscopic) and 140 Illustrations in the Text. 8vo, 12s. 6d. net. With Stereoscope, 15s. net.

MISCELLANEOUS.

ANNUAL CHARITIES REGISTER AND DIGEST : being a Classified Register of Charities in or available for the Metropolis, together with a Digest of Information respecting the Legal, Voluntary, and other Means for the Prevention and Relief of Distress and the Improvement of the Condition of the Poor. With an elaborate Index, and an Introduction, "How to Help Cases of Distress". By C. S. LOCH, Secretary to the Council of the Charity Organisation Society, London. 8vo, 5s. net.

GASKELL. THE ORIGIN OF VERTEBRATES. By WALTER H. GASKELL, M.A., M.D. (Camb.), LL.D. (Edinburgh and McGill Univ., Montreal), F.R.S., Fellow of Trinity Hall and University Lecturer in Physiology, Cambridge. With 168 Illustrations. 8vo, 21s. net.

HOBART. THE MEDICAL LANGUAGE OF ST. LUKE. By the Rev. WILLIAM KIRK HOBART, LL.D. 8vo, 16s.

HOPF. THE HUMAN SPECIES : CONSIDERED FROM THE STANDPOINTS OF COMPARATIVE ANATOMY, PHYSIOLOGY, PATHOLOGY AND BACTERIOLOGY. By Dr. LUDWIG HOPF. Authorised English Translation. With 7 Plates and 217 Illustrations in the Text. 8vo, 10s. 6d. net.

MISCELLANEOUS—*continued.*

INQUIRY (AN) INTO THE PHENOMENA ATTENDING DEATH BY DROWNING AND THE MEANS OF PROMOTING RESUSCITATION IN THE APPARENTLY DROWNED. Report of a Committee appointed by the Royal Medical and Chirurgical Society. With 2 Diagrams and 26 Plates. 8vo, 5s. net.

KING'S COLLEGE HOSPITAL BOOK OF COOKING RECIPES: being a Collection of Recipes contributed by Friends of the Hospital and Published in aid of the Fund for the Removal of King's College Hospital to South London. Crown 8vo, 1s. net.

MOON. THE RELATION OF MEDICINE TO PHILOSOPHY. By R. O. MOON, M.A., M.D. (Oxon.), F.R.C.P., Physician to the National Hospital for Diseases of the Heart, etc. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d. net.

PAGET. MEMOIRS AND LETTERS OF SIR JAMES PAGET, Bart., F.R.S., Sergeant-Surgeon to Her late Majesty Queen Victoria. Edited by STEPHEN PAGET, F.R.C.S. With Portrait. 8vo, 6s. net.

PETTIGREW. DESIGN IN NATURE: Illustrated by Spiral and other Arrangements in the Inorganic and Organic Kingdoms as exemplified in Matter, Force, Life, Growth, Rhythms, etc., especially in Crystals, Plants, and Animals. With Examples selected from the Reproductive, Alimentary, Respiratory, Circulatory, Nervous, Muscular, Osseous, Locomotory, and other Systems of Animals. By J. BELL PETTIGREW, M.D., LL.D., F.R.S., F.R.C.P.; Laureate of the Institute of France; late Chandos Professor of Anatomy and Medicine in the University, St. Andrews; Fellow of the Royal Botanical, Medico-Chirurgical, Royal Medical, Literary and Philosophical, Harveian and other Societies. Illustrated by nearly 2,000 Figures, largely original and from nature. In 3 vols. 4to. 63s. net.

POOLE. COOKERY FOR THE DIABETIC. By W. H. and Mrs. POOLE. With Preface by Dr. PAVY. Fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

RAFFETY. AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SCIENCE OF RADIO-ACTIVITY. By CHARLES W. RAFFETY. With 27 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

SUTHERLAND-GOWER. CLEANLINESS *VERSUS* CORRUPTION. By Lord RONALD SUTHERLAND-GOWER. With 11 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, paper covers, 6d.

A plea for the more general adoption of cremation for human bodies.

WEBB. THE STATE AND THE DOCTOR. By SIDNEY and BEATRICE WEBB. 8vo, 6s. net.

THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE.

The Royal Society of Medicine was formed in June, 1907, by the amalgamation of the following London Medical Societies :—

The Royal Medical and Chirurgical Society.	The Neurological Society.
The Pathological Society.	The British Laryngological, Rhinological, and Otological Association.
The Epidemiological Society.	The Laryngological Society.
The Odontological Society of Great Britain.	The Dermatological Society of Great Britain and Ireland.
The Obstetrical Society.	The Otological Society of the United Kingdom.
The Clinical Society.	The British Electro-therapeutic Society.
The Dermatological Society.	The Therapeutical Society.
The British Gynæcological Society.	

The "Proceedings" of the Royal Society of Medicine are published monthly from November to July inclusive. The numbers contain the papers of, and the discussions read at each of the Sections during the previous month, and are so arranged that each Section can, if desired, be detached and bound separately at the end of the year.

The Annual Subscription is £3 3s. net, which may be paid through any bookseller.

The price of each monthly number is 7s. 6d. net.

VETERINARY MEDICINE, ETC.

FITZWYGRAM. HORSES AND STABLES. By Lieutenant-General Sir F. FITZWYGRAM, Bart. With 56 pages of Illustrations. 8vo, 3s. net.

HAYES. TRAINING AND HORSE MANAGEMENT IN INDIA. With Hindustanee Vocabulary. By M. HORACE HAYES, F.R.C.V.S. (late Captain, "The Buffs"). With Portrait. Crown 8vo, 8s. net.

STEEL. A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF THE OX ; being a Manual of Bovine Pathology. Especially adapted for the use of Veterinary Practitioners and Students. By JOHN HENRY STEEL, F.R.C.V.S., F.Z.S., A.V.D., late Professor of Veterinary Science and Principal of Bombay Veterinary College. With 2 Plates and 117 Woodcuts. 8vo, 15s.

YOUATT.—WORKS by WILLIAM YOUATT.

THE HORSE. Revised and Enlarged by W. WATSON, M.R.C.V.S. With 52 Wood Engravings. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

THE DOG. Revised and Enlarged. With 33 Wood Engravings. 8vo, 6s.

PHYSIOLOGY, BIOLOGY, ZOOLOGY, ETC.

ASHBY. NOTES ON PHYSIOLOGY FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS PREPARING FOR EXAMINATION. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D. (Lond.), F.R.C.P., late Physician to the General Hospital for Sick Children, Manchester; Lecturer and Examiner in Diseases of Children in the Victoria University. Revised by HUGH T. ASHBY, B.A., M.B., B.C. (Camb.), M.R.C.P. (Lond.). With 147 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 5s.

BARNETT. THE MAKING OF THE BODY: a Children's Book on Anatomy and Physiology. By Mrs. S. A. BARNETT. With 113 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 1s. 9d.

BEDDARD. ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL ZOOLOGY. By FRANK E. BEDDARD, M.A. (Oxon.). With 93 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

BIDGOOD. A COURSE OF PRACTICAL ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By JOHN BIDGOOD, B.Sc., F.L.S. With 226 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

BOSE.—*WORKS* by JAGADIS CHUNDER BOSE, M.A. (Cantab.), D.Sc. (Lond.), Professor, Presidency College, Calcutta.

RESPONSE IN THE LIVING AND NON-LIVING. With 117 Illustrations. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

PLANT RESPONSE AS A MEANS OF PHYSIOLOGICAL INVESTIGATION. With 278 Illustrations. 8vo, 21s.

COMPARATIVE ELECTRO-PHYSIOLOGY: A PHYSICO-PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDY. With 406 Illustrations and Classified List of 321 new Experiments. 8vo, 15s. net.

BRODIE. THE ESSENTIALS OF EXPERIMENTAL PHYSIOLOGY. For the use of Students. By T. G. BRODIE, M.D., Lecturer on Physiology, St. Thomas's Hospital Medical School. With 2 Plates and 177 Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

CHAPMAN. THE FORAMINIFERA: an Introduction to the Study of the Protozoa. By FREDERICK CHAPMAN, A.L.S., F.R.M.S. With 14 Plates and 42 Illustrations in the Text. 8vo, 9s. net.

PHYSIOLOGY, BIOLOGY, ZOOLOGY, ETC.—continued.

FURNEAUX. HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. By W. FURNEAUX, F.R.G.S. With 223 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

HALLIBURTON. THE ESSENTIALS OF CHEMICAL PHYSIOLOGY. For the Use of Students. By W. D. HALLIBURTON, LL.D., M.D., F.R.S., F.R.C.P., Professor of Physiology in King's College, London. With 71 Illustrations. 8vo, 4s. 6d. net.

HUDSON AND GOSSE. THE ROTIFERA OR "WHEEL ANIMALCULES". By C. T. HUDSON, LL.D., and P. H. GOSSE, F.R.S. With 30 Coloured and 4 Uncoloured Plates. In 6 Parts. 4to, price 10s. 6d. each; Supplement, 12s. 6d. Complete in Two Volumes, with Supplement, 4to, £4 4s.

* * The Plates in the Supplement contain figures of almost all the Foreign Species, as well as of the British Species, that have been discovered since the original publication of Vols. I. and II.

LLOYD AND BIGELOW. THE TEACHING OF BIOLOGY IN THE SECONDARY SCHOOL. By FRANCIS E. LLOYD, A.M., and MAURICE A. BIGELOW, Ph.D., Professors in Teachers' College, Columbia University. Crown 8vo, 6s. net.

MACALISTER.—WORKS by ALEXANDER MACALISTER, M.D.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SYSTEMATIC ZOOLOGY AND MORPHOLOGY OF VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 41 Diagrams. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

ZOOLOGY OF THE INVERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 77 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

ZOOLOGY OF THE VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. With 59 Diagrams. Fcp. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

MACDOUGALL.—WORKS by DANIEL TREMBLY MACDOUGALL, Ph.D.

TEXT-BOOK OF PLANT PHYSIOLOGY. With 159 Illustrations. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

ELEMENTARY PLANT PHYSIOLOGY. With 108 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s.

PHYSIOLOGY, BIOLOGY, ZOOLOGY, ETC.—*continued.*

MARSHALL. THE PHYSIOLOGY OF REPRODUCTION.

By FRANCIS H. A. MARSHALL, M.A. (Cantab.), D.Sc. (Edin.), Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge, and University Lecturer in Agricultural Physiology. With Preface by Professor E. A. SCHÄFER, Sc.D., LL.D., F.R.S., and Contributions by WILLIAM CRAMER, Ph.D., D.Sc., and JAMES LOCHHEAD, M.A., M.D., B.Sc., F.R.C.S.E. With 154 Illustrations. 8vo, 21s. net.

MOORE. ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY AND ANATOMY.

By BENJAMIN MOORE, D.Sc., Professor of Bio-Chemistry in the University of Liverpool. With 125 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

MORGAN. ANIMAL BIOLOGY. An Elementary Text-Book. By

C. LLOYD MORGAN, F.R.S., Principal of University College, Bristol. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

SCHÄFER. DIRECTIONS FOR CLASS WORK IN PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY :

Elementary Physiology of Muscle and Nerve and of the Vascular and Nervous Systems. By E. A. SCHÄFER, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Edinburgh. With 48 Diagrams. 8vo, 3s. net.

THORNTON.—*WORKS by JOHN THORNTON, M.A.*

HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. With 284 Illustrations, some of which are Coloured. Crown 8vo, 6s.

ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY, Descriptive and Experimental. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY. With 178 Illustrations (6 of which are Coloured). Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

HEALTH AND HYGIENE, ETC.

ASHBY. HEALTH IN THE NURSERY. By HENRY ASHBY, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to the General Hospital for Sick Children, Manchester; Lecturer and Examiner in Diseases of Children in the Victoria University. With 25 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. net.

CAMPBELL. PRACTICAL MOTHERHOOD. By HELEN Y. CAMPBELL, L.R.C.P. and S. (Edin.); L.F.P. and S. (Glas.). 8vo, 7s. 6d.

BULL.—WORKS by THOMAS BULL, M.D. *Thoroughly Revised by ROBERT W. PARKER, M.R.C.S. Eng.*

HINTS TO MOTHERS ON THE MANAGEMENT OF THEIR HEALTH DURING THE PERIOD OF PREGNANCY, AND HINTS ON NURSING. Fcp. 8vo, sewed, 1s. 6d.; cloth, gilt edges, 2s. net.

THE MATERNAL MANAGEMENT OF CHILDREN IN HEALTH AND DISEASE. Fcp. 8vo, sewed, 1s. 6d.; cloth, gilt edges, 2s. net.

BUTTERWORTH. MANUAL OF HOUSEHOLD WORK AND MANAGEMENT. By ANNIE BUTTERWORTH. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

CORFIELD. THE LAWS OF HEALTH. By W. H. CORFIELD, M.A., M.D. Fcp. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

CREIGHTON. THE ECONOMICS OF THE HOUSEHOLD. Six Lectures given at the London School of Economics during the Winter of 1906. By LOUISE CREIGHTON. Crown 8vo, 1s. 4d.

FURNEAUX. ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL HYGIENE. Section I. By WILLIAM S. FURNEAUX. With 146 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

JAMES. BALL GAMES AND BREATHING EXERCISES. By ALICE R. JAMES. With Preface by HARRY CAMPBELL, M.D., B.S. (London), F.R.C.P. With 17 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.

HEALTH AND HYGIENE, ETC.—*continued.*

NOTTER AND FIRTH.—*WORKS* by J. LANE NOTTER, M.A., M.D.,
and R. H. FIRTH, F.R.C.S.

HYGIENE. With 99 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

PRACTICAL DOMESTIC HYGIENE. With 84 Illustrations.
Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

POORE.—*WORKS* by GEORGE VIVIAN POORE, M.D., F.R.C.P.

THE EARTH IN RELATION TO THE PRESERVATION
AND DESTRUCTION OF CONTAGIA: being the Milroy
Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Physicians in 1899, together
with other Papers on Sanitation. 13 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 5s.

ESSAYS ON RURAL HYGIENE. With 12 Illustrations. Crown
8vo, 6s. 6d.

THE DWELLING HOUSE. With 36 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

COLONIAL AND CAMP SANITATION. With 11 Illustrations.
Crown 8vo, 2s. net.

PORTER.—*WORKS* by CHARLES PORTER, M.D., B.Sc., M.R.C.P.

SCHOOL HYGIENE AND THE LAWS OF HEALTH: a Text-
Book for Teachers and Students in Training. With 121 Illustrations.
Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

SANITARY LAW IN QUESTION AND ANSWER. For the use
of Students of Public Health. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. net.

This book is primarily intended to assist candidates for Diplomas in Public Health and the certificates of the various examining bodies granting qualifications to Sanitary Inspectors, in their study of the Sanitary Laws of England and Wales. As many of the queries in the book are such as have to be dealt with almost daily in practice, the volume should prove of value also to those already in the Public Health Service, as a reference book and guide to Sanitary Legislation.

ROBINSON. THE HEALTH OF OUR CHILDREN IN THE
COLONIES: a Book for Mothers. By LILIAN AUSTEN ROBIN-
SON, M.D. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. net.

WEST. HOW TO NURSE SICK CHILDREN. By CHARLES
WEST, M.D., Founder of and late Physician to the Hospital for Sick
Children, Great Ormond Street, London. With Preface by GEORGE F.
STILL, M.D., Physician to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond
Street. Crown 8vo, 1s. net.

BACTERIOLOGY, ETC.

CURTIS. THE ESSENTIALS OF PRACTICAL BACTERIOLOGY: an Elementary Laboratory Work for Students and Practitioners. By H. J. CURTIS, B.S. and M.D. Lond., F.R.C.S., formerly Surgeon to the North-Eastern Hospital for Children; Assistant Surgeon, Royal Hospital for Children and Women, Waterloo Road; Surgical Registrar and Assistant to the Professor of Pathology, University College, London. With 133 Illustrations. 8vo, 9s.

ELLIS. OUTLINES OF BACTERIOLOGY (Technical and Agricultural). By DAVID ELLIS, Ph.D. (Marburg), D.Sc. (London), F.R.S.E., Lecturer in Bacteriology and Botany to the Glasgow and West of Scotland Technical College, Glasgow. With 134 Illustrations. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

FRANKLAND. BACTERIA IN DAILY LIFE. By Mrs. PERCY FRANKLAND, F.R.M.S. Crown 8vo, 5s. net.

GOADBY. THE MYCOLOGY OF THE MOUTH: A TEXT-BOOK OF ORAL BACTERIA. By KENNETH W. GOADBY, L.D.S. Eng., D.P.H. Camb., L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., Bacteriologist and Lecturer on Bacteriology, National Dental Hospital, etc. With 82 Illustrations. 8vo, 8s. 6d. net.

KLÖCKER. FERMENTATION ORGANISMS. A Laboratory Handbook. By ALB. KLÖCKER, Assistant in the Carlsberg Laboratory, Copenhagen. Translated from the German by G. E. ALLAN, B.Sc., Lecturer in the University of Birmingham, and J. H. MILLAR, F.I.C., formerly Lecturer in the British School of Malting and Brewing, and revised by the Author. With 146 Illustrations. 8vo, 12s. net.

OPTICS, PHOTOGRAPHY, ETC.

ABNEY. A TREATISE ON PHOTOGRAPHY. By Sir WILLIAM DE WIVELESLE ABNEY, K.C.B., F.R.S. With 134 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 5s.

BALY. SPECTROSCOPY. By E. C. C. BALY, F.I.C., Professor of Chemistry in the University of Liverpool. With 163 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

DRUDE. THE THEORY OF OPTICS. By PAUL DRUDE, Professor of Physics at the University of Giessen. Translated from the German by C. RIBORG MANN and ROBERT A. MILLIKAN, Professors of Physics at the University of Chicago. With 110 Diagrams. 8vo, 15s. net.

GLAZEBROOK. PHYSICAL OPTICS. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, M.A., F.R.S. With 183 Woodcuts of Apparatus, etc. Crown 8vo, 6s.

MEES. AN ATLAS OF ABSORPTION SPECTRA. By C. E. KENNETH MEES, D.Sc. Crown 8vo, 6s. net.

POLLOK. PRACTICAL SPECTROGRAPHIC ANALYSIS. By J. H. POLLOK, D.Sc. Crown 8vo.

SHEPPARD AND MEES. INVESTIGATION ON THE THEORY OF THE PHOTOGRAPHIC PROCESS. By S. E. SHEPPARD, D.Sc. (Lond.), 1851 Exhibition Scholar of University College, London, and C. E. KENNETH MEES, D.Sc. (Lond.). With 65 Illustrations and Diagrams. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d. net.

VANDERPOEL. COLOUR PROBLEMS: A Practical Manual for the Lay Student of Colour. By EMILY NOYES VANDERPOEL. With 117 Plates in Colour. Square 8vo, 21s. net.

WRIGHT. OPTICAL PROJECTION: A Treatise on the Use of the Lantern in Exhibition and Scientific Demonstration. By LEWIS WRIGHT, Author of "Light: a Course of Experimental Optics". With 243 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s.

CHEMISTRY, ETC.

ARMITAGE. A HISTORY OF CHEMISTRY.

By F. P. ARMITAGE, M.A., F.C.S. Crown 8vo, 6s.

ARRHENIUS.—WORKS by SVANTE ARRHENIUS, Director of the Nobel Institute, Stockholm.

THEORIES OF CHEMISTRY: being Lectures delivered at the University of California, in Berkeley. Edited by T. SLATER PRICE, D.Sc., Ph.D., F.I.C. 8vo, 5s. 6d. net.

A TEXT-BOOK OF ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. Translated from the German Edition by JOHN McCRAE, Ph.D. With 58 Illustrations. 8vo, 9s. 6d. net.

BUNGE. TEXT-BOOK OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS. By Dr. G. VON BUNGE, Professor of Physiology in the University of Basel. Translated by R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc. 8vo, 6s. net.

CROOKES. SELECT METHODS IN CHEMICAL ANALYSIS (chiefly inorganic). By Sir W. CROOKES, O.M., F.R.S. With 68 Illustrations. 8vo, 21s. net.

FINDLAY. PRACTICAL PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY By ALEX. FINDLAY, M.A., Ph.D., D.Sc. With 92 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

GODFREY. ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY. By HOLLIS GODFREY, Head of the Department of Science, Girls' High School of Practical Arts, Boston, Mass. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d. net.

HANSON AND DODGSON. AN INTERMEDIATE COURSE OF LABORATORY WORK IN CHEMISTRY. By EDWARD KENNETH HANSON, M.A. (Cant.), F.I.C., Teachers' Diploma (Lond.); Lecturer in Chemistry, University College, Reading; Lecturer to the Cambridge University Local Lecture Syndicate, and JOHN WALLIS DODGSON, B.Sc. (Lond.); Director of Evening Classes and Lecturer in Chemistry, University College, Reading. With Illustrations. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

MENDELEEFF. THE PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY. By D. MENDELÉEFF. Translated from the Russian (Seventh Edition) by GEORGE KAMENSKY, A.R.S.M., and Edited by THOMAS H. POPE, B.Sc., F.I.C. With 110 Illustrations. 2 vols. 8vo, 32s. net.

MEYER. OUTLINES OF THEORETICAL CHEMISTRY. By LOTHAR MEYER. Translated by Professors P. PHILLIPS BEDSON, D.Sc., and W. CARLETON WILLIAMS, B.Sc. 8vo, 9s.

MUIR. A COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.

By M. M. PATTISON MUIR, M.A., F.R.S.E.

Part I. Elementary. Cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d. Part II. Intermediate. Cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY, ETC.—continued.

NEWTH.—*WORKS* by G. S. NEWTH, F.I.C., F.C.S.

CHEMICAL LECTURE EXPERIMENTS. With 230 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s.

MANUAL OF CHEMICAL ANALYSIS, QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE. With 102 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

SMALLER CHEMICAL ANALYSIS. Crown 8vo, 2s.

A TEXT-BOOK OF INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With 15 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. With 108 Illustrations and 254 Experiments. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

OSTWALD. THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF CHEMISTRY. An Introduction to all Text-Books of Chemistry. By WILHELM OSTWALD. Authorised Translation by HARRY W. MORSE. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

PERKIN.—*WORKS* by F. MOLLWO PERKIN, Ph.D.

QUALITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS (ORGANIC AND INORGANIC). With 16 Illustrations and Spectrum Plate. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

PRACTICAL METHODS OF ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. 8vo, 6s. net.

PLIMMER. PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc., Assistant Professor of Physiological Chemistry, University College, London. With Coloured Plate of Absorption Spectra and 49 Illustrations in the Text. Royal 8vo, 6s. net.

PRICE AND TWISS. A COURSE OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By T. SLATER PRICE, D.Sc., Ph.D., F.I.C., Head of the Chemical Department of the Birmingham Municipal Technical School, and D. F. TWISS, M.Sc., A.I.C., Lecturer in Chemistry at the Birmingham Municipal Technical School. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

RADCLIFFE AND SINNATT. A SYSTEMATIC COURSE OF PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By LIONEL GUY RADCLIFFE, F.C.S. With the assistance of FRANK STURDY SINNATT, F.C.S. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

REYNOLDS. EXPERIMENTAL CHEMISTRY for Junior Students. By J. EMERSON REYNOLDS, M.D., F.R.S. Fcap. 8vo, with numerous Illustrations.

PART I.—*Introductory*, 1s. 6d. PART III.—*Metals and Allied Bodies*, 3s. 6d.

PART II.—*Non-Metals*, 2s. 6d. PART IV.—*Chemistry of Carbon Compounds*, 4s.

SMITH AND HALL. THE TEACHING OF CHEMISTRY AND PHYSICS IN THE SECONDARY SCHOOL. By ALEXANDER SMITH, B.Sc., Ph.D., Associate Professor of Chemistry in the University of Chicago, and EDWIN H. HALL, Ph.D., Professor of Physics in Harvard University. With 21 Woodcuts, Bibliographies, and Index. Crown 8vo, 6s. net.

CHEMISTRY, ETC.—*continued.*

STEWART.—*WORKS by A. W. STEWART, D.Sc.*

RECENT ADVANCES IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With an Introduction by J. NORMAN COLLIE, Ph.D., LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Organic Chemistry in University College, London. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

RECENT ADVANCES IN PHYSICAL AND INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With an Introduction by Sir WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

THORPE. A DICTIONARY OF APPLIED CHEMISTRY. By Sir T. E. THORPE, C.B., D.Sc. Vict., Ph.D., F.R.S. Assisted by Eminent Contributors. 3 vols. 8vo. Vols. I. and II., £2 2s. each (Postage, 3s. 4d.); Vol. III., £3 3s.

TILDEN.—*Works by Sir WILLIAM A. TILDEN, D.Sc. London, F.R.S.*

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE PROGRESS OF SCIENTIFIC CHEMISTRY IN OUR OWN TIMES. Crown 8vo, 5s. net.

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF CHEMICAL PHILOSOPHY. The Principles of Theoretical and Systematic Chemistry. With 5 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 5s. With ANSWERS to Problems. Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. The Principles of Qualitative Analysis. Fcp. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

WATTS' DICTIONARY OF CHEMISTRY. Revised and entirely Re-written by H. FORSTER MORLEY, M.A., D.Sc., Fellow of, and lately Assistant-Professor of Chemistry in, University College, London; and M. M. PATTISON MUIR, M.A., F.R.S.E. Assisted by Eminent Contributors. 4 vols. 8vo, £5 net.

WESTON. A SCHEME FOR THE DETECTION OF THE MORE COMMON CLASSES OF CARBON COMPOUNDS. By FRANK E. WESTON, B.Sc., London (First Class Honours), F.C.S., Lecturer in Chemistry at the Polytechnic, Regent Street, W. 8vo, 2s.

WHITELEY.—*WORKS by R. L. Whiteley, F.I.C., Principal of the Municipal Science School, West Bromwich.*

CHEMICAL CALCULATIONS. With Explanatory Notes, Problems, and Answers, specially adapted for use in Colleges and Science Schools. With a Preface by Professor F. CLOWES, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. Crown 8vo, 2s.

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY: the Fatty Compounds. With 45 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

TEXT-BOOKS OF PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY.

Edited by Sir WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S., D.Sc.

Crown 8vo.

- STOICHIOMETRY. By SYDNEY YOUNG, D.Sc., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the University of Dublin; together with AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY, by Sir WILLIAM RAMSAY, K.C.B., F.R.S., Editor of the Series. 7s. 6d.
- CHEMICAL STATICS AND DYNAMICS, INCLUDING THE THEORIES OF CHEMICAL CHANGE, CATALYSIS, AND EXPLOSIONS. By J. W. MELLOR, D.Sc., B.Sc. 7s. 6d.
- THE PHASE RULE AND ITS APPLICATIONS. By ALEX. FINDLAY, M.A., Ph.D., D.Sc., Lecturer and Demonstrator in Chemistry, University of Birmingham. With 134 Figures in the Text. 5s.
- SPECTROSCOPY. By E. C. C. BALY, F.I.C., Professor of Chemistry in the University of Liverpool. With 163 Illustrations. 10s. 6d.
- THERMOCHEMISTRY. By JULIUS THOMSEN, Emeritus Professor of Chemistry in the University of Copenhagen. Translated by KATHARINE A. BURKE, B.Sc. (Lond.), Assistant in the Department of Chemistry, University College, London. 9s.
- ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. PART I.—GENERAL THEORY. By R. A. LEHFELDT, D.Sc., Transvaal University College, Johannesburg. Including a Chapter on the Relation of Chemical Constitution to Conductivity, by T. S. MOORE, B.A., B.Sc., Lecturer in the University of Birmingham. 5s.
- ELECTRO-CHEMISTRY. PART II.—APPLICATIONS TO ELECTROLYSIS, PRIMARY AND SECONDARY BATTERIES, ETC. By N. T. M. WILSMORE, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]
- STEREOCHEMISTRY. By A. W. STEWART, D.Sc., Carnegie Research Fellow of University College, London. With 87 Illustrations. 10s. 6d.
- THE THEORY OF VALENCY. By J. NEWTON FRIEND, Ph.D. (Würz), D.Sc. (Birmingham). 5s.
- METALLOGRAPHY. By CECIL H. DESCH, D.Sc. (Lond.), Ph.D. (Würzb.); Graham Young Lecturer in Metallurgical Chemistry in the University of Glasgow. With 14 Plates and 108 Diagrams in the Text. 9s.
- THE RELATIONS BETWEEN CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION AND SOME PHYSICAL PROPERTIES. By SAMUEL SMILES, D.Sc., Fellow of University College, and Assistant Professor of Organic Chemistry at University College, London University. 14s.
- THERMODYNAMICS. By F. G. DONNAN, M.A., Ph.D. [*In preparation.*]
- ACTINOCHEMISTRY. By S. E. SHEPPARD, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]
- PRACTICAL SPECTROGRAPHIC ANALYSIS. By J. H. POLLOK, D.Sc. [*In preparation.*]

MONOGRAPHS ON BIOCHEMISTRY.

Edited by R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc., and F. GOWLAND HOPKINS,
D.Sc., F.R.S.

Royal 8vo.

In these volumes an attempt is being made to make the subject of Biochemistry more accessible by issuing a series of monographs upon the various chapters of the subject, each independent of and yet dependent upon the others, so that from time to time, as new material and the demand therefor necessitate, a new edition of each monograph can be issued without reissuing the whole series. The expenses of publication and the expense to the purchaser will thus be diminished, and by a moderate outlay it will be possible to obtain a full account of any particular subject as nearly current as possible.

THE DEVELOPMENT AND PRESENT POSITION OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By F. GOWLAND HOPKINS, M.A., M.B., D.Sc., F.R.S., Prælector in Biochemistry in the University of Cambridge. *[In preparation.]*

THE NATURE OF ENZYME ACTION. By W. M. BAYLISS, D.Sc., F.R.S., Assistant Professor of Physiology, University College, London. 3s. net.

THE CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION OF THE PROTEINS. By R. H. ADERS PLIMMER, D.Sc., Teacher of Chemistry at University College, London. In 2 Parts. Part 1, 3s. net; Part 2, 2s. 6d. net.

THE GENERAL CHARACTERS OF THE PROTEINS. By S. B. SCHRYVER, D.Sc., Ph.D., Lecturer on Physiological Chemistry, University College, London. 2s. 6d. net.

THE VEGETABLE PROTEINS. By THOMAS B. OSBORNE, Ph.D., Research Chemist in the Connecticut Agricultural Experiment Station, New Haven, Connecticut; Research Associate of the Carnegie Institution of Washington, D.C. 3s. 6d. net.

THE SIMPLE CARBOHYDRATES AND THE GLUCOSIDES. By E. FRANKLAND ARMSTRONG, D.Sc., Ph.D., Associate of the City and Guilds of London Institute. 3s. 6d. net.

THE FATS. By J. B. LEATHES, D.Sc., Professor of Chemical Pathology in the University of Toronto. 4s. net. *[In the press.]*

THE POLYSACCHARIDES. By ARTHUR R. LING, F.I.C. *[In preparation.]*

COLLOIDS. By W. B. HARDY, M.A., F.R.S. *[In preparation.]*

ALCOHOLIC FERMENTATION. By H. HARDEN, D.Sc., F.R.S. *[In preparation.]*

